

HP 9000
Series 200 and 300
Computers

Pascal 3.2
Graphics Techniques

Pascal 3.2 Graphics Techniques

HP 9000 Series 200 and 300 Computers



HP Part No. 98615-90037
Printed in USA December 1991

Third Edition
E1291

©copyright 1980, 1984, 1986 AT&T Technologies, Inc.

UNIX is a registered trademark of Unix System Laboratories Inc. in the USA and other countries.

©copyright 1979, 1980, 1983, 1985-90 Regents of the University of California

This software is based in part on the Fourth Berkeley Software Distribution under license from the Regents of the University of California.

Use of this manual and flexible disc(s) or tape cartridge(s) supplied for this pack is restricted to this product only. Additional copies of the programs can be made for security and back-up purposes only. Resale of the programs in their present form or with alterations is expressly prohibited.

Warranty. The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

HEWLETT-PACKARD MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Hewlett-Packard shall not be liable for errors contained herein or direct, indirect, special, incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this material.

Hewlett-Packard assumes no responsibility for the use or reliability of its software on equipment that is not furnished by Hewlett-Packard.

A copy of the specific warranty terms applicable to your Hewlett-Packard product and replacement parts can be obtained from your local Sales and Service Office.

This document contains information which is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

Restricted Rights Legend. Use, duplication or disclosure by the U.S. Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in paragraph (c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 for DOD agencies, and subparagraphs (c) (1) and (c) (2) of the Commercial Computer Software Restricted Rights clause at FAR 52.227-19 for other agencies.

HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY
3000 Hanover Street
Palo Alto, California 94304 U.S.A.

Printing History

New editions of this manual will incorporate all material updated since the previous edition. The manual printing date and part number indicate its current edition. The printing date changes when a new edition is printed. (Minor corrections which are incorporated at reprint do not cause the date to change.)

November 1986	Edition 1.
May 1988	Update. Updated to include information for Pascal 3.21 support of new display interfaces (HP98548, 98549, and 98550).
March 1989	Edition 2. This edition includes information for the Pascal 3.21 update plus 3.22 additions and changes.
May 1990	Update. Updated to include additions and changes for the Pascal 3.23 release.
December 1991	Edition 3. This edition includes additions and changes for the Pascal 3.24 and 3.25 releases.

Table of Contents

Chapter 1: Introduction to Graphics

Welcome	1-1
Manual Objectives	1-1
Prerequisites	1-1
Example Programs on Discs	1-1
Why Graphics?	1-2
Using the Graphics Library	1-4
INCLUDE files	1-5
The Graphics Programs	1-6
Customizing the Programs for Your System	1-6
Drawing Lines	1-7
Scaling	1-9
Setting the Aspect Ratio	1-11
Defining a Viewpoint	1-13
Virtual Coordinates and World Coordinates	1-13
Specifying the Viewpoint	1-14
Labelling a Plot	1-15
Setting Character Size	1-16
Centering Labels	1-17
Setting the Label's Direction	1-17
Bold Labels	1-19
Axes and Tick Marks	1-20
Clipping Lines	1-23
A User-Defined Clipping Algorithm	1-24
Labelling Axes	1-25

Chapter 2: Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

Setting the Display Limits	2-1
More on Defining a Viewpoint	2-2
Calculating Window Limits	2-4
Drawing a Window Frame	2-5
Turning Displays On and Off	2-7
Conversion Between Coordinate Systems	2-8
More on Labelling a Plot	2-11
The Character Cell	2-11
Setting Character Size	2-13
Setting the Label's Direction	2-16
Justifying Labels	2-18

Monochromatic CRT Drawing Modes	2-23
Faster Drawing Procedures	2-24
Selecting Line Styles	2-25
Isotropic Scaling	2-27
Axes and Grids	2-30
Logarithmic Plotting	2-32
Homemade Mathematical Functions	2-32
Taking a Number to a Power	2-32
The Logarithm to Any Base	2-33
Back to Logarithmic Axes	2-33
Storing and Retrieving Images	2-36
Data-Driven Plotting	2-39
Many Lines in One Step	2-39
Drawing Multi-Line Objects	2-40
What's in a Polygon?	2-42
When to Use Which Polygon	2-42
Polygon Filling	2-43
Shading Graphs	2-46
Highlighting Data Curves	2-47
 Chapter 3: External Graphics Displays and Plotters	
Selecting a Plotter	3-1
Dumping Raster Images	3-2
External Color Displays	3-4
External Plotter Control	3-5
Controlling Pen Speed	3-5
Controlling Pen Acceleration	3-6
Controlling Pen Force	3-6
 Chapter 4: Interactive Graphics	
Introduction	4-1
A Simple Example	4-1
A More Elaborate Example	4-2
Characterizing Graphic Interactivity	4-3
Selecting Input Devices	4-4
Single Degree of Freedom	4-4
Non-Separable Degrees of Freedom	4-7
Separable Degrees of Freedom	4-7
All Continuous	4-7
All Quantizable	4-8
Mixed Modes	4-8
Echoes	4-9
The Built-In Echo	4-9
Rubber Echoes	4-12
Tablets and Aspect Ratios	4-13

Chapter 5: Color Graphics

Color!	5-1
The DGL Color System	5-1
Color as an Attribute	5-1
The Color Table	5-2
Default Colors	5-2
The Primary Colors	5-2
The Business Colors	5-2
Monochromatic Default	5-3
If You Don't Like the Defaults	5-3
Models for Color Specification	5-4
The RBG Model (Red, Blue, Green)	5-4
The HSL Model Hue, Saturation, Luminosity)	5-5
Which Model?	5-9
Color Spaces	5-11
Primaries and Color Cubes	5-11
The RBG Color Cube	5-12
The CMY Color Cube	5-13
The HSL Color Cylinder	5-14
Reality Intrudes	5-16
Plotters	5-16
Frame Buffers	5-17
Frame Buffer Depth	5-17
Faking More Colors From a Frame Buffer	5-19
Dithering	5-20
Creating a Dithered Color	5-21
If You Need More Colors	5-24
Frame Buffer Contents	5-24
Series 200/300 Color Graphics System	5-25
Color Map (Model 236 Color Computer)	5-25
True User-Definable Color	5-26
Retroactive Color Changes	5-26
If You Need More Colors	5-26
Optimizing for Dithering	5-27
Resolution and Color Models	5-29
RGB Resolution	5-29
HSL Resolution	5-29
Writing Modes and Color	5-30
Dominant Writing	5-31
Non-Dominant Writing	5-31
Erasing	5-31
Complementary Writing	5-31
Making Sure Echoes are Visible	5-32
Drawing Modes and the Frame Buffer	5-32
Special Considerations	5-35
Text	5-35
Polygons	5-35

Effective Use of Color	5-36
Seeing Color	5-36
It's All Subjective, Anyway	5-36
Mixing Colors	5-37
Designing Displays	5-37
Objective Color Use	5-38
Color Blindness	5-38
Subjective Color Use	5-38
Choosing Colors	5-38
Psychological Color Temperature	5-39
Cultural Conventions	5-39
Reproducing Color Graphics	5-40
Color Gamuts	5-40
Color Hard copy	5-40
Photographing the CRT	5-41
Plotting and the CRT	5-41
Color References	5-42

Appendix A: Listings of Example Programs

AxesGrid	A-2
BAR_KNOB	A-9
BAR_KNOB2	A-12
CharCell	A-17
COLOR	A-18
CsizeProg	A-25
DataPoint	A-26
DrawMdPrg	A-26
FillProg	A-29
FillGraph	A-30
GstorProg	A-31
IsoProg	A-40
JustProg	A-46
LdirProg	A-50
LOCATOR	A-51
LogPlot	A-54
MarkrProg	A-56
PLineProg	A-57
PolyProg	A-58
SinAspect	A-59
SinAxes1	A-60
SinAxes2	A-64
SinClip	A-69
SinLabel1	A-73
SinLabel2	A-74
SinLabel3	A-75
SinLine	A-76
SinViewpt	A-76
SinWindow	A-77

Appendix B: Graphics Procedure Reference

Graphics Procedures Quick-Reference

Concerning HP-HIL	B-1
HP-HIL Touchscreen	B-2
HP-HIL Relative Locator	B-3
AWAIT_LOCATOR	B-4
CLEAR_DISPLAY	B-10
CONVERT_WTODMM	B-11
CONVERT_WTOLMM	B-12
DISPLAY_FINISH	B-13
DISPLAY_INIT	B-17
DISPLAY_TERM	B-23
GRAPHICSERROR	B-24
GRAPHICS_INIT	B-26
GRAPHICS_TERM	B-27
GTEXT	B-28
INPUT_ESC	B-30
INQ_COLOR_TABLE	B-34
INQ_PGN_TABLE	B-36
INQ_WS	B-38
INT_LINE	B-45
INT_MOVE	B-47
INT_POLYGON	B-49
INT_POLYGON_DD	B-52
INT_POLYLINE	B-56
LINE	B-58
LOCATOR_INIT	B-59
LOCATOR_TERM	B-64
MAKE_PIC_CURRENT	B-65
MARKER	B-66
MOVE	B-67
OUTPUT_ESC	B-68
POLYGON	B-75
POLYGON_DEV_DEP	B-78
POLYLINE	B-82
SAMPLE_LOCATOR	B-84
SET_ASPECT	B-86
SET_CHAR_SIZE	B-88
SET_COLOR	B-89
SET_COLOR_MODEL	B-92
SET_COLOR_TABLE	B-94
SET_DISPLAY_LIM	B-98
SET_ECHO_POS	B-102
SET_LINE_STYLE	B-104
SET_LINE_WIDTH	B-108
SET_LOCATOR_LIM	B-109
SET_PGN_COLOR	B-113
SET_PGN_LS	B-116

SET_PGN_STYLE	B-120
SET_PGN_TABLE	B-121
SET_TEXT_ROT	B-124
SET_TIMING	B-125
SET_VIEWPORT	B-127
SET_WINDOW	B-129
Module Dependency Table	B-131

Subject Index

Introduction to Graphics

Chapter

1

Welcome

One of the most exciting features of your Series 200/300 computer is its graphics capabilities. It is much easier to grasp the trends, relative sizes or quantities represented by data if it is presented in a graphical form, as opposed to tabular form.

Manual Objectives

This manual will introduce you to the set of graphics routines in the Series 200/300 Device-independent Graphics Library (DGL) graphics package. The goals of the DGL package are:

1. As its name implies, it is a device-independent package. Thus, programs running on one computer or implementation should transport to another computer or implementation of DGL with a minimum of conversion effort.
2. It is reasonably small. DGL is not meant to be an exhaustive library containing routines to do all conceivable graphics operations, but it gives you enough capability to develop them yourself.

Prerequisites

This manual is meant to teach you how to use the routines incorporated into DGL to produce highly readable and visually acceptable output. The manual assumes you are familiar with the Pascal programming language, and that you have access to a *Pascal Workstation System* manual, a *Pascal Procedure Library* manual, and the textbook *An Introduction to Programming and Problem Solving With Pascal*, and that you will look up any programming/syntactic topics you don't understand.

Example Programs on Discs

Most of the demonstration programs and routines in the next three chapters of this manual are stored for your convenience on the DGLPRG: disc which was shipped with this manual. For those systems that were shipped with double-sided 3½ inch discs, the programs are on the DOC: disc. You are encouraged to run these programs as you are reading the manual, as they will make understanding the concepts much easier.

Note

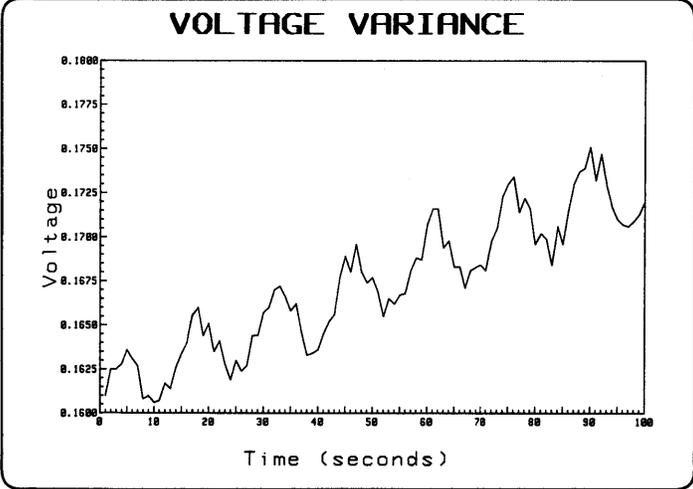
The demonstration programs and routines on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc are for the purpose of instruction only. They are not part of the DGL package, and as such, they are not covered by any warranty, expressed or implied. Hewlett-Packard shall not be liable for incidental or consequential damages in connection with, or arising out of, the furnishing, performance, or use of these routines.

Why Graphics?

Below is some data. As quickly as you can, determine if its overall trend is steady, rising or falling. Are there any periodic motions to it? If so, how many cycles are represented in the one hundred points?

Voltage Variance Time (sec) Voltage	Voltage Variance Time (sec) Voltage
1	0.1610
2	0.1625
3	0.1625
4	0.1628
5	0.1636
6	0.1631
7	0.1627
8	0.1608
9	0.1610
10	0.1606
11	0.1607
12	0.1617
13	0.1614
14	0.1626
15	0.1634
16	0.1640
17	0.1656
18	0.1660
19	0.1644
20	0.1651
21	0.1635
22	0.1641
23	0.1628
24	0.1619
25	0.1630
26	0.1624
27	0.1627
28	0.1644
29	0.1644
30	0.1657
31	0.1660
32	0.1670
33	0.1672
34	0.1666
35	0.1658
36	0.1662
37	0.1646
38	0.1633
39	0.1634
40	0.1636
41	0.1645
42	0.1652
43	0.1656
44	0.1677
45	0.1689
46	0.1680
47	0.1696
48	0.1680
49	0.1674
50	0.1677
51	0.1669
52	0.1655
53	0.1665
54	0.1662
55	0.1667
56	0.1668
57	0.1681
58	0.1688
59	0.1687
60	0.1707
61	0.1716
62	0.1716
63	0.1694
64	0.1698
65	0.1683
66	0.1683
67	0.1671
68	0.1681
69	0.1683
70	0.1684
71	0.1681
72	0.1698
73	0.1705
74	0.1723
75	0.1730
76	0.1734
77	0.1714
78	0.1722
79	0.1716
80	0.1696
81	0.1702
82	0.1699
83	0.1684
84	0.1706
85	0.1696
86	0.1715
87	0.1730
88	0.1737
89	0.1739
90	0.1751
91	0.1732
92	0.1747
93	0.1729
94	0.1717
95	0.1710
96	0.1707
97	0.1706
98	0.1709
99	0.1713
100	0.1720

A wise old computer programmer once said, "A graphical output is equivalent to 1K words of text." He was right. Unless both hemispheres of your brain are hyperdeveloped, it probably took a minute or two to answer each of the previous questions. Below is a graph of the data in the table. Observe that the graphical nature of the output makes what the data is doing much clearer. This clarity and understandability at a glance is what computer graphics is all about.



A progressive example of how this plot was created is given through the rest of this chapter. Each installment demonstrates more of the graphics routines available. The successive plots, all representing the same data, become clearer and clearer as we learn some of the concepts of computer graphics and how to implement them with the routines available to us.

Using the Graphics Library

To run the demonstration programs in this manual, you must use the DGL routines contained in the GRAPHICS library file on the LIB: disc. The first step, then, is to make these libraries accessible to the demonstration programs at the appropriate times.

There are two times when the GRAPHICS modules need to be accessible:

- When the program is compiled, and
- When the program is loaded.

The simplest way to make the GRAPHICS library accessible during compilation and loading is to use the **What** command to make GRAPHICS the system library. To do this:

1. At the Main Command Level, press **W** to invoke the **What** command.
2. Press **B** to indicate you want to change the system library setting, and type the complete file specification for the GRAPHICS library file. Be sure to type a period after the file name, to prevent the system from appending a suffix to the name. For example, if the GRAPHICS file is still on the GRAPH: disc, you would type:

```
GRAPH:GRAPHICS. Return
```
3. Press **Q** to exit from the **What** command. When you begin compiling and running the demonstration programs, make sure the GRAPHICS library file is on-line¹.

Note

If you have plenty of memory in your computer, you can speed *compilation* by copying the GRAPHICS file into a memory (RAM:) volume of about 400 blocks. Be sure to use the **What** command to change the system library to RAM:GRAPHICS if you do this. You can also speed program *execution* by permanently loading the GRAPHICS file with the **Permanent** command.

¹ "On-line" means that it is accessible at that moment. This could mean either that the library is in a memory volume, or the library is on a disc and the disc is currently in a drive.

INCLUDE files

In many of the following programs, there is a compiler directive called INCLUDE. This causes the compiler to access the specified file, compile the contents as if it were in the original file, and when the end of the file is reached, return to the original file and continue compilation.

One advantage to INCLUDE files is that many programs can use the *same* file, not merely copies of the file. This makes it much easier to make modifications to the routines, because only one copy of the routine need be changed. If the routine had been physically copied into each program that used it, every occurrence of it would have to be individually changed.

The INCLUDE directives used in the program files assume there is a volume on-line which contains the text files for all the necessary inclusions. Again, if you have enough memory, the INCLUDE process could be speeded up tremendously by placing the necessary files in a memory volume.

Here is some information to help you define how large the “enough memory,” referred to in the previous paragraph, is. Below is a list of files at least some of which you will probably want to permanently load (the main advantage to permanently loading is very fast access) and the amount of memory they consume. The approximate file sizes are expressed in 256-byte blocks.

File Name	Approximate File Size
EDITOR (subsystem)	236 blocks
FILER (subsystem)	228 blocks
COMPILER (subsystem)	928 blocks
LIBRARIAN (subsystem)	288 blocks
LIBRARY (library)	64 blocks
IO (library)	240 blocks
GRAPHICS (library)	876 blocks
FTLIB (library)	968 blocks

You must also take into account any memory volumes you have defined, and the size of the program you are dealing with, etc.

The Graphics Programs

All of the following plots use Cartesian (rectangular) coordinates: “X” specifies the left-right distance (with values increasing as you go to the right), and “Y” specifies the down-up distance (with values increasing as you go up).

In the programs in this chapter and the next, each program name is identical to the file name which contains it. It is not mandatory that the program name is the same as the file name, but it helps to find the file.

All the examples that follow get the Y-value from a function called `DataPoint`. This function, given an X value, merely returns the appropriate Y value each time it is invoked. You could just as well be reading values from a voltmeter, temperature sensor, anemometer, or any other device that you can connect to a computer. Since this function does not change from example to example, and since it represents any generic data-defining process, the function will not be listed at each update of the plotting program. For reference, though, it is listed in the appendix.

Customizing the Programs for Your System

The demonstration programs on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc send graphics to the current console of a Series 200/300 Computer. The “current console” is the CRT where alpha is displayed after the system is booted; i.e., the CRT where the Pascal system command lines appear. Graphics display device selection is performed by the `DISPLAY_INIT` procedure. If you would like to use a different CRT (or other graphics device) as your display device, you must change the `DISPLAY_INIT` procedure call accordingly.

The first parameter in the `DISPLAY_INIT` procedure call is called the **device selector**. It specifies which display device you would like to use for graphics output. The demonstration programs declare the device selector as a constant with the name `CrtAddr`. Graphics display devices are selected as follows:

- A device selector of 3 specifies the current console as the graphics display device (again, this is where the command line appears). This is the value used in all of the demonstration programs. If the current console has no graphics hardware, the system may search for another display that *does* have graphics hardware and make it the graphics display device.
- A device selector of 6 specifies any other internal CRT as the graphics display device (if one exists). Internal refers to any display whose frame buffer resides in the system’s “internal space,” i.e., any CRT which does not require a select code and/or bus address to access it.
- A device selector in the range 8 through 31 specifies the select code of the interface to which the desired graphics display device is attached.
- A device selector in the range 700 through 3199 specifies the composite HP-IB select code/bus address of the desired HP-IB graphics display device.

The second parameter is the DISPLAY_INIT procedure call is called the **control value**. It is used to specify device-dependent characteristics of the graphics display device. The demonstration programs declare the control value as a constant called `ControlWord`. For complete details on this value, refer to the DISPLAY_INIT section of Appendix B. However, there are two cases that are worth discussing:

- If you have a Model 237 (or Series 300 with bit-map display) and are using the bit-mapped display as your current console, you may remove the type-ahead buffer echo at the bottom of the screen (and use the entire display for graphics) by specifying a device selector (CRTADDR) of 3 and a control value (CONTROLWORD) of 256:

```
CrtAddr=      3;
ControlWord=  256;
```

The value of 0 (used in the demonstration programs) retains the type-ahead buffer.

- If you have an HP 98627A- RGB interface connected to a 60 Hz, non-interlaced color monitor¹, you can designate it as the graphics display device by specifying the interface's select code as the device selector (CRTADDR), and a control value (CONTROLWORD) of 256 (specifying US STD, 512 x 390, 60Hz refresh). See the table in the DISPLAY_INIT section of Appendix B for details.

The control values are not merely “magic numbers”. Bits 10, 9, and 8 in the control value allow you to specify what kind of CRT you wish to interface to (in the case of an HP 98627A RGB interface), or to set characteristics of the display (in the case of the bit mapped-display). The value of 256 is not necessary if you are plotting on a U.S. Standard display (see the “External Color Displays” section in this chapter); 0 defaults to the same characteristics as does 256.

The final parameter in the DISPLAY_INIT procedure call is an integer variable that will be assigned 0 if the display device was successfully initialized, or a non-zero value if initialization failed. For more details, refer to the DISPLAY_INIT section of Appendix B.

By modifying the device address and/or the control value, images which were drawn on one device can be drawn on another device with a minimum of effort.

There are some limitations, though. If you are doing an operation on one display device, and attempt to send the image to another device which does not support that operation, it won't work.

Drawing Lines

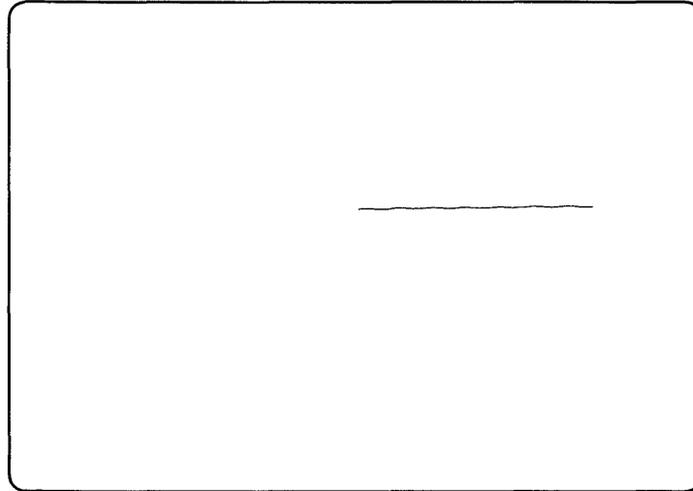
You are encouraged to compile and run the following programs on your computer as they are presented. Turn on your machine and load the Pascal operating system (if you don't know how to do this, see Chapter 2 of the *Pascal User's Guide*). This program, as most of the following programs, use the compiler directive INCLUDE. Compile and run the following program; it is on the file “SinLine” on your DGLPRG: or DOC: disc.

Note

Examples that include files on “DGLPRG:” may require modification. If your system was shipped on double-sided 3½ inch discs, all of the example programs are found on the “DOC:” disc. Statements such as \$INCLUDE 'DGLPRG:FILE'\$ should read \$INCLUDE 'DOC:FILE'\$.

¹ Depending on your choice of color monitor, there may be more specification necessary in the control value variable of the DISPLAY_INIT procedure. See the “External Color Displays” section in Chapter 3.

To move the pen somewhere, you call the procedure `MOVE`, and to draw lines, you call the procedure `LINE`. Both of these procedures have two parameters: the X and Y coordinates of the point you want to move or draw to. The following program does just that.



```

Program SinLine(output);
import dgl_lib;                               {get graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=    3;                               {address of internal CRT}
  Control=    0;                               {device control; 0 for CRT}
var
  ErrorReturn: integer;                       {variable for initialization outcome}
  X:           integer;
  Y:           real;
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint'$                  {function: y:=f(x) }
$PAGE$ {*****}
begin                                          {body of program "SinLine"}
graphics_init;                               {initialize graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,Control,ErrorReturn);   {which output device?}
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin                 {output device initialization OK?}
  for X:=1 to 100 do begin                  {100 points total}
    Y:=DataPoint(X);                       {get a point from the function}
    if X=1 then move(X/100,Y)              {move to the first point...}
    else line(X/100,Y);                    {...and draw to all the rest}
  end; {for X:=1 to 100}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term;                               {terminate the graphics package}
end.                                          {program "SinLine"}

```

Probably the first reaction you had when looking at the previous plot was that the plot doesn't show you anything. But as you can see, this simple program is all you need to draw a rudimentary plot.

You must always execute the procedure `GRAPHICS_INIT` before any other graphics routine; if you don't, almost every graphics routine called will either be ignored or will cause an error. As its name implies, it initializes the graphics system; that is, it sets various graphics parameters to their default values. These are the operations performed by the `GRAPHICS_INIT` routine:

- Sets the aspect ratio to 1;
- Sets the virtual coordinates and viewport limits to range from 0.0 to 1.0 in both the X and Y directions;
- Sets the world coordinate limits to range from -1.0 to +1.0 in both the X and Y directions;
- Sets the starting position to 0,0 in world coordinates; and
- Sets all attributes to their default values.

In case there were any unfamiliar concepts referred to above, don't panic. We will soon cover all the above topics, and more.

The following lines comprise the real guts of the `SinLine` program:

```
if X=1 then move(X/100,Y)
else line(X/100,Y);
```

In a loop, the statement moves to the first point returned by the `DataPoint` function, and draws to all the rest. Each successive point is determined by the loop control variable `X` for the X direction and the value returned by the function `DataPoint` for the Y direction.

The call to the routine `GRAPHICS_TERM` should be the last graphics routine called. It terminates the graphics package.

Scaling

Probably the first reaction you had when looking at the previous plot was "That doesn't show me anything..." That's true; it doesn't show much information. There are two reasons for this. The first is that there is not enough variation in the curve; it's too flat to show us anything. The second is that it is all compressed on the right half of the screen. If we exaggerated the Y direction to the point where we could see the variations, the lines would be close enough to vertical that it would be somewhat difficult to interpret the curve. Therefore we must expand it toward the left.

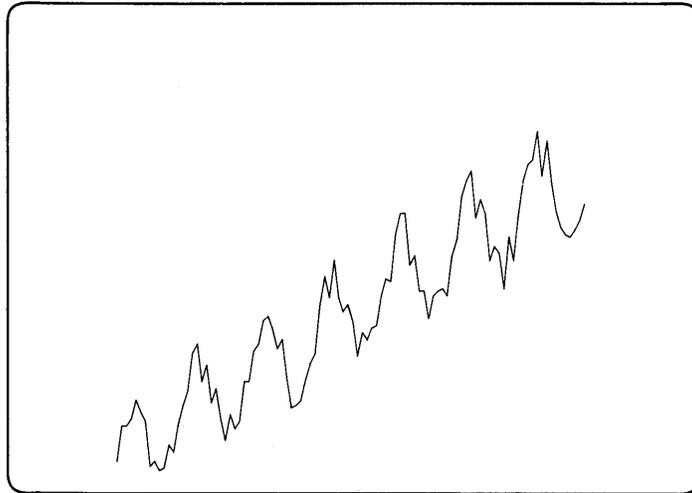
Both of these problems can be remedied by scaling. In this context, scaling could be defined as "defining the values the computer considers to be at the edges of the active plotting surface." The `SET_WINDOW` procedure defines the transformation used to map coordinates between the virtual display coordinate system (the coordinate system used by the DGL to describe the display device) and the world coordinate system (the coordinate system used by the user). Typically, the left edge is the smaller X, the right edge is the larger X, the bottom is the smaller Y, and the top is the larger Y¹. Thus any point you plot which falls into these ranges will be visible.

¹ This is by convention only. If you specify a value for the left (or bottom) edge which is greater than the value of the right (or top) edge, it is perfectly legal. The only restriction is that the left edge must not *equal* the right edge. The same goes for the bottom and top edges.

In our progressive example, the statement calling SET_WINDOW says that an X value of 0 should be precisely on the left edge of the screen, an X value of 100 should be on the right edge, a Y value of 0.16 is on the bottom, and a Y value of 0.18 is on the top.

The procedure SET_WINDOW typically causes **anisotropic** scaling to be invoked. Anisotropic scaling means that one unit in the X direction is not forced to be the same length as one unit in the Y direction. Conversely, **isotropic** scaling means that one unit in the X direction is equal to one unit in the Y direction, as in a road map. Isotropic scaling is desirable in many cases. In many other cases, however, it is not. In this example, we are graphing the voltage from a sensor versus time, and it makes no sense at all to force seconds to be just as “long” as volts. Since we are dealing with data types which are not equal, it would be better to use unequal, or anisotropic, scaling.

We said that the SET_WINDOW procedure “typically” causes anisotropic scaling to be invoked because there is no procedure that guarantees that the scaling will be isotropic. You can, by doing calculations with aspect ratios, figure what the exact values are to send to SET_WINDOW to force isotropic scaling. This will be covered in the next chapter. Here is the next version of our progressive example. It is in the file “SinWindow” on the DGLPRG disc.



```

Program SinWindow(output);
import dgl_lib;                               {get graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=          3;                         {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=      0;                         {device control; 0 for CRT}
var
  ErrorReturn:      integer;                   {variable for initialization outcome}
  X:                integer;
  Y:                real;
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint'$                   {function: y:=f(x) }

```

```

{*****}
begin                                     {body of program "SinWindow"}
graphics_init;                           {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin              {output device initialization OK?}
  set_window(0,100,0.16,0.18);           {scale the window for the data}
  for X:=1 to 100 do begin                {100 points total}
    Y:=DataPoint(X);                     {set a point from the function}
    if X=1 then move(X,Y)                 {move to the first point...}
    else line(X,Y)                         {...and draw to all the rest}
  end; {for X:=1 to 100}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term;                             {terminate the graphics package}
end.                                         {program "SinWindow"}

```

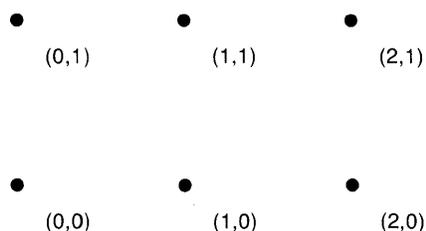
Granted, it would be nice to know what we are plotting, and what the units are, etc., but we'll get there in due time.

Setting the Aspect Ratio

You may have noticed on the last plot that the curve did not extend to the right and left edges of the screen. In fact, the area of screen which was used was exactly as wide as the screen is high. Thus, the **aspect ratio**—the width of the screen divided by the height—is exactly 1. This was the second operation done by the procedure GRAPHICS_INIT, mentioned previously.

For most applications, one would not want to be restricted to using only a square area in the middle of the screen. The procedure used to change the aspect ratio of the plotting surface is SET_ASPECT. When calling the SET_ASPECT procedure, only the ratio of the two parameters is used; thus, the values may be virtually anything, as long as the ratio between them is reasonable.

To set the aspect ratio such that it will use the entire screen of a Model 236 computer, call the SET_ASPECT procedure with parameters 511 and 389. These are the number of pixels in the X direction *minus one*, followed by the number of pixels in the Y direction *minus one*. Distance measures the amount of space *between* pixels¹, not the number of pixels. To illustrate the reason why 1 must be subtracted from both values, imagine a *very* low-resolution graphics display: 3 pixels in the X direction by 2 pixels in the Y direction.



¹ The word "pixel" is a blend of the two words "picture element," and it is the smallest addressable point on a plotting surface. A Model 236 computer has 512 × 390-pixel resolution; thus there can be no more than 512 dots drawn in any one row of the CRT, or 390 dots drawn in any one column.

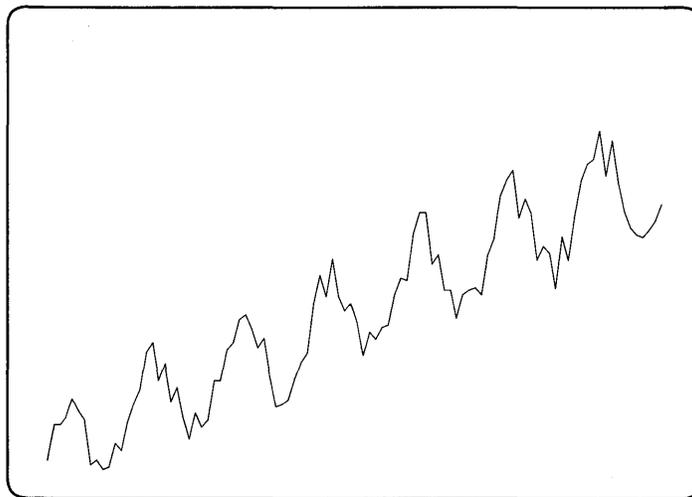
As you can see, the distance between the rightmost pixels and the leftmost pixels is 2, and the distance between the uppermost pixels and the lowest pixels is 1. Thus, the ratio of width to height of this plotting surface is 2:1, rather than 3:2, as it would be if number of pixels were used.

From the previous explanation, it follows that the correct values to pass to the SET_ASPECT procedure would be 511 and 389 for the Models 217 and 236; 399 and 299 for the Models 216, 220, and 226; 1023 and 751 for the Model 237 and HP 98544A, HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98700A (with type-ahead buffer), and HP 9000 382 Medium-Resolution display; or 1023 and 767 for the Model 237 and HP 98544A, HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98700A (with type-ahead buffer removed), and HP 9000 382 Medium-Resolution display; 511 and 399 for HP 98542A and HP 98543A (with type-ahead buffer removed); or 1279 and 999 for HP 98548A, HP 98550A, and HP 9000 382 High-Resolution (with type-ahead buffer); or 1279 and 1023 for HP 98548A, HP 98550A, and HP 9000 382 High-Resolution (with type-ahead buffer removed); or 639 and 463 for HP 9000 362/382 VGA (with type-ahead buffer); or 639 and 463 for HP 9000 362/382 VGA (with type-ahead buffer removed). These numbers are the numbers of pixels in the X and the Y directions, respectively, for those computers. The HP 98546A display (the video compatibility interface) is to all intents and purposes a Model 236A (monochrome) display. DGL cannot tell the difference. All specifications and capabilities for the Model 236A display DGL apply to the HP 98546A.

In the next version of our progressive example, the only change is that the aspect ratio has been altered so the whole screen has been used. The following statement was placed immediately prior to the SET_WINDOW statement:

```
set_aspect(511,389);
```

This program may be found on the "SinAspect" on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc.



This plot looks better than the last one; the whole screen is being used. There is still one problem, though. We can see *relative* variations in the data, but what are the units being used? We saw at the very beginning of the chapter that we were measuring voltage, but with the plot at its current state, we don't know if the height of the curve is signifying differences of microvolts, millivolts, megavolts, dozens of volts, or what? And we probably wouldn't want the text (explaining units, etc.) to be written in the same area that the curve is in, as it could obstruct part of the data curve. Therefore, we need to be able to specify a subset of the screen for plotting the curve and put explanatory information outside this area. The next section tells you how to do this.

Defining a Viewport

A viewport is a subset of the plotting area into which the window limits are linearly mapped. It is specified in **virtual coordinates**.

Virtual Coordinates and World Coordinates

Before we define a viewport, we need to know about the two different types of units which exist. These two types of units are **virtual display coordinates** and **world coordinates**. Since a viewport is a “window” onto which the world coordinates are mapped, and in order for viewports to be predictable, they must be specified in units which are not dependent upon the user’s graphical model—the world coordinates. Since world coordinates are associated with the graphical model employed by the user, and virtual coordinates are associated with the display device, it makes much more sense to use virtual coordinates when specifying the limits of a viewport. (Note that world coordinates are set when specifying a window—they both start with “w”—and virtual coordinates are set when specifying a viewport—they both start with “v”.) Virtual coordinates always range from 0.0 to 1.0 in one direction, and 0.0 to a number dictated by the aspect ratio in the other direction. A viewport is associated with the display device, rather than the graphical model used in your program.

These are the most important characteristics of virtual coordinates:

- The lower left of the plotting area is *always* 0,0.
- Virtual coordinates are isotropic; that is, one unit in the X direction is the same distance as one unit in the Y direction.
- Virtual coordinates are limited to the range 0 through 1. The maximum coordinate on one side is 1, and the maximum coordinate on the other side is less than or equal to 1.

The following discussion assumes that the aspect ratio is set such that the whole screen is used: 511/389 for the Models 217 and 236; 399/299 for the Models 216, 220, and 225; or 1023/767 for the Model 237, HP 98544A, HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98700A, and HP 9000 382 Medium-Resolution display; or 511/299 for the HP 98542A and HP 98543A; or 1279/1023 for HP 98548A, HP 98550A, and HP 9000 382 High-Resolution; or 639/479 for the HP 9000 362/382 VGA display. Since the height of the screen is less than the width of the screen, the longer edge is in the X direction; therefore, X_{max} in virtual coordinates is 1.0.

That was the easy part. Once you’ve decided which edge is longer, and thus defined the units along that edge, you need to find out the length of the *shorter* sides in virtual coordinates. Typically, these values will be known because you explicitly specify the aspect ratio yourself. However, if you don’t know the aspect ratio (and therefore the virtual coordinates maxima), you can interrogate the system with a call to the INQ_WS procedure¹. This will be done in the next chapter. For now, though, we’ll just observe that the virtual coordinate limits (for the entire screen, remember) are 0.0 to 1.0 in X, and 0.0 through $299/399 = 0.749373433584$ (on the Models 216, 220 and 226), or 0.0 through $389/511 = 0.761251446184$ (on the Models 217 and 236), or 0.0 through $767/1023 = 0.749755620723$ (on the Model 237, HP 98544A, HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98700A, HP 9000 382 Medium-Resolution display), or 0.0 through $399/511 = 0.780821918$ (on HP 98542A and HP 98543A), or 0.0 through $1023/1279 = 0.799843628$ (on the HP 98548A, HP 98550A, and HP 9000 382 High-Resolution), or 0.0 through $479/639 = 0.740608764$ (on the HP 9000 362/382 VGA display).

¹ The INQ_WS procedure is a DGL procedure through which you can find out various parameters of the graphics system.

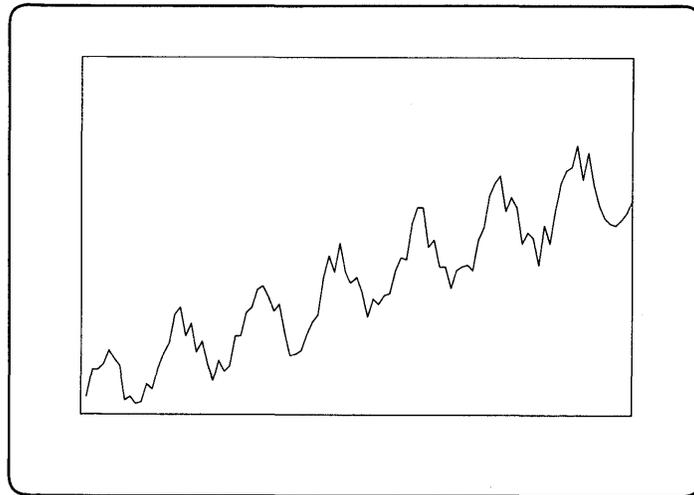
Specifying the Viewport

The SET_VIEWPORT procedure sets up a transformation which will convert points in world coordinates into points on the plotting surface. The call to SET_VIEWPORT in the following program specifies that the lower left-hand corner of the viewport area is at 0.10,0.12 and the upper right-hand corner is at 0.99,0.70.

```
set_viewport(0.10,0.99,0.12,0.70);
```

This is the area which the SET_WINDOW procedure affects. We will also draw a box around the viewport limits by drawing the rectangle bounded by -1 and 1 in both the X and Y directions. (The default window limits are -1 to 1 in both directions.) It is done in this example so you can see the area specified by the SET_VIEWPORT procedure call.

And here is the output from the next version of our progressive example (found on file "Sin-Viewpt" on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc). The only change is that a call to SET_VIEWPORT has been placed immediately after the line calling SET_ASPECT.

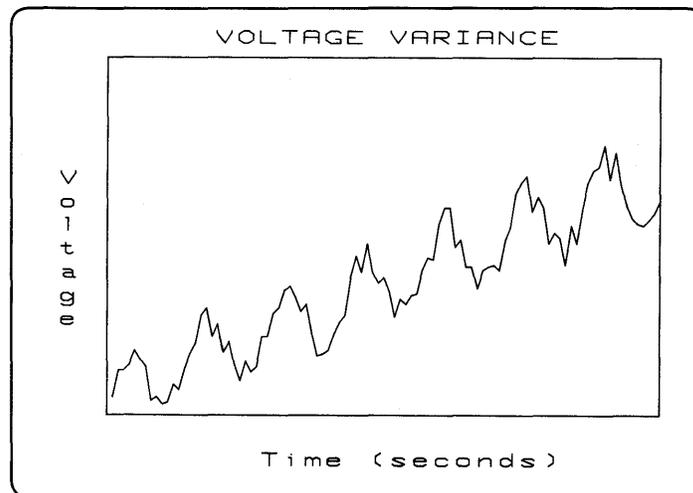


Labelling a Plot

With the inclusion of the call to the SET_VIEWPORT procedure, we have enough room to include labels on the plot. Typically, in a Y-vs-X plot like this, there is a title for the whole plot centered at the top, a Y-axis title on the left edge, and a X-axis title at the bottom.

The DGL procedure GTEXT writes text onto the graphics screen. You can position the label by calling MOVE to get to the point at which you want the label to be placed. It is the lower left corner of the label which ends up at the point to which you moved. In other words, we will move to the position on the screen at which we want the lower left corner of the text to be placed.

Notice in the following plot that the Y-axis label on the left edge of the screen is created by writing one letter at a time. We only need to move to the position of the first character in that label because we terminate each one-character GTEXT call with a carriage return/linefeed. This causes the pen to go one line down, ready for the next (one-character) line of text. (There is another way to plot vertical labels; we'll see it shortly.)



```

Program SinLabel1(outPut);
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;           {set graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=      3;                 {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=  0;                 {device control; 0 for CRT}
var
  ErrorReturn: integer;           {variable for initialization outcome}
  Strng:       string[7];        {seven characters in 'Voltage'}
  Character:   integer;          {loop counter for labelling}
  X:           integer;
  Y:           real;
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint'$      {function: y:=f(x) }
$Page$ {*****}
begin                               {body of program "SinLabel1"}
  graphics_init;                   {initialize graphics system}
  display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}

```

```

if ErrorReturn=0 then begin
  set_aspect(511,389);
  move(-0.45,0.9);
  stext('VOLTAGE VARIANCE');
  Strng:='Voltage';
  move(-0.95,0.3);
  for Character:=1 to strlen(Strng) do
    stext(str(Strng,Character,1)+chr(13)+chr(10));
  move(-0.3,-0.9);
  stext('Time (seconds)');
  set_viewport(0.1,0.99,0.12,0.7);
  move(-1,-1); line(1,-1); line(1,1); line(-1,1); line(-1,-1);
  set_window(0,100,0.16,0.18);
  for X:=1 to 100 do begin
    Y:=DataPoint(X);
    if X=1 then move(X,Y)
    else line(X,Y);
  end;
end;
graphics_term;
end.

```

{output device initialization OK?}
 {use the whole screen}
 {starting point for the title}
 {label the plot}
 {the y-axis label}
 {starting point for the y-axis title}
 {follow every character...}
 {...with a CR/LF}
 {starting point for the x-axis label}
 {x-axis label}
 {define subset of screen}
 {frame}
 {scale the window for the data}
 {100 points total}
 {set a point from the function}
 {move to the first point...}
 {...and draw to all the rest}
 {terminate the graphics package}
 {program "SinLabel1"}

This gets the point across, but it would be nice if we could cause some labels to be more obvious by making them bigger; for example, on the main title. Also, you may want the Y-axis title to be turned on its side, and not do the carriage return/line feed trick we did last time.

Setting Character Size

The DGL procedure `SET_CHAR_SIZE` sets two attributes¹ of all subsequent characters, namely the width and height of the character cells. A character cell contains a character and some blank space above, below, to the left of, and to the right of the character. This blank space allows packing character cells together without making the characters illegible. The amount of blank space depends, of course, on which character is contained in the cell. The values sent to `SET_CHAR_SIZE` are expressed in world coordinates:

```
set_char_size(Width, Height);
```

When a character size is selected, the width and height associated with a character cell are defined for an unrotated character cell. Thus, when a character is rotated, its shape does not change, even though its width (measured along the X axis) and height (measured along the Y axis) are not the same directions as the display device's axes.

The ability to specify character sizes in world coordinates is valuable when doing graphical output in which the labels are to remain with the objects they describe. In these cases, the characters are scaled using the same scaling as the objects drawn.

In the following program (program `SinLabel2` on a file by the same name on the `DGLPRG`: disc), the character width and height are defined to be something on the order of $2 * 0.04$. The reason that a 2 was used in these expressions is that the current (default) window limits were -1 to 1 , for a distance of 2. The 0.04 comes from the fact that we wanted 4% of the window distance in that direction.

¹ An *attribute*, in this context, is a piece of information which helps define or describe some object.

Centering Labels

In that last program, the labels looked reasonably centered. This was only because the starting point was arrived at in a hit-and-miss manner. The main characteristic of labels which makes it difficult to center them is this: the reference point of a label is the lower-left corner of the label. That is, the point you moved to just prior to writing the label will end up at the lower-left hand corner of the label. If we want our labels to be centered, we must figure out how long each label is, subtract half that length from the X position of where we want the center of the label to be placed, and then write the label.

We know what the characters' sizes are; we can set it with the `SET_CHAR_SIZE` procedure. We can also determine how long the string of text to be labelled is. This is found by using the standard procedure `STRLEN`. If you give it a string, it will return the length (in characters) of that string.

Horizontal centering of a string, then, can be accomplished by subtracting the value returned by the following expression from the desired X position of the center of the label¹:

```
(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2
```

Thus, if we want a label centered horizontally about the point X, and at a Y value of Y, we could say:

```
move(X-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,Y);
```

Setting the Label's Direction

Quite often, labels need to be at some other angle than horizontal. We saw a few pages ago that a vertical label could be done—albeit somewhat clumsily—by labelling one horizontal character at a time, and following each by a carriage return/line feed. What we need is a way to specify that we want labels to be plotted at whatever angle we specify.

Through the DGL procedure `SET_TEXT_ROT`, you can specify the amount of rotation you want the label to undergo. However, you must specify this in two pieces: the X displacement and the Y displacement. For example:

<code>set_text_rot(2,-1);</code>	Label goes down and right; a -26.57° angle.
<code>set_text_rot(1,0);</code>	Label is horizontal; default direction.
<code>set_text_rot(87,87);</code>	Label goes up and right at a 45° angle.
<code>set_text_rot(0,5);</code>	Vertical label; ascending.
<code>set_text_rot(-1,0);</code>	Upside-down label.

The `SET_TEXT_ROT` procedure deals only with the ratio of the run and rise parameters. Thus, multiplying both parameters by the same number will not change the angle at which the subsequent labels are written. The third example above, which sets both the run and the rise to 87, could have used any two numbers as parameters, as long as they equaled each other. Going 87 units up for every 87 units to the right yields the same angle as going 19 units up for every 19 units to the right, etc.

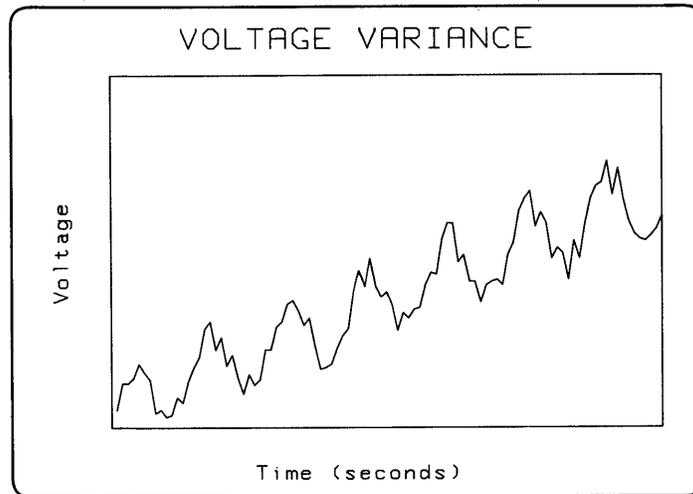
¹ This is quite close to the truth, but is an approximation. There is an inter-character gap, which is the space caused by the fact that a character is placed inside a *character cell*, and it is complicated because the amount of space on the left side of a character is different from the amount of space on the right. See the *Character Cell* section in the next chapter.

1-18 Introduction to Graphics

Any particular *angle* you want can be passed to the SET_TEXT_ROT procedure by operating on the angle with the cosine and sine functions. For example, to cause labels to be written at an angle of $\pi/4$ (a 45° angle), you could use the following statement. It assumes there is a constant called Pi which has a value approximately equal to 3.1415926535897.

```
set_text_rot(cos(Pi/180*45),sin(Pi/180*45));
```

With these two statements, we can make a marked improvement in the quality of the output. The next version of our progressive example uses them.



```
Program SinLabel2(output);
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;           {set graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=      3;                 {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=  0;                 {device control; 0 for CRT}
var
  CharWidth:    real;              {width of character in world coords}
  CharHeight:   real;              {height of character in world coords}
  Text:         string[20];        {temporary holding place for text}
  ErrorReturn:  integer;           {variable for initialization outcome}
  X:            integer;
  Y:            real;
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint'$       {function: y:=f(x) }
$page$ {*****}
begin                               {body of program "SinLabel2"}
graphics_init;                       {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
```

```

if ErrorReturn=0 then begin
  set_aspect(511,389);           {output device initialization OK?}
  CharWidth:=2*0.04;           {use the whole screen}
  CharHeight:=2*0.08;          {char width: 4% of screen width}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {char height: 8% of screen height}
  Text:='VOLTAGE VARIANCE';    {install character size}
  move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,0.9); {define the text to be labelled}
  stext(Text);                 {go to start point for centered label}
  set_text_rot(0,1);           {label the text}
  CharWidth:=2*0.025;          {vertical labels}
  CharHeight:=2*0.04;          {char width: 2.5% of screen width}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {char height: 4% of screen height}
  Text:='Voltage';             {install character size}
  move(-0.9,-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2); {define the text to be labelled}
  stext(Text);                 {start point of centered label}
  set_text_rot(1,0);           {label the text}
  Text:='Time (seconds)';      {horizontal labels}
  move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,-0.92); {define the text to be labelled}
  stext(Text);                 {start point of centered label}
  set_viewport(0.1,0.99,0.12,0.7); {label the text}
  move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1); line(1,-1); line(-1,-1); {define subset of screen}
  set_window(0,100,0.16,0.18); {frame}
  for X:=1 to 100 do begin     {scale the window for the data}
    Y:=DataPoint(X);           {100 points total}
    if X=1 then move(X,Y);     {set a point from the function}
    else line(X,Y);            {move to the first point...}
  end;                           {...and draw to all the rest}
end; {for X:=1 to 100}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term;                 {terminate the graphics package}
end.                             {program "SinLabel2"}

```

Bold Labels

Many times it's nice to have the most important titles not only in large letters, but **bold** letters, to make them stand out even more. It is possible to achieve this effect by plotting the label several times, moving the label's starting position just slightly each time. In the following version of the program (on file "SinLabel3" on your DGLPRG: or DOC: disc), notice the FOR loop used when labeling the main title. The loop variable, X, goes from -3 to 3. This is the offset in the X direction of the label's starting position.

The only change in the program was that the statements labelling the main title:

```

move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,0.9);
stext(Text);

```

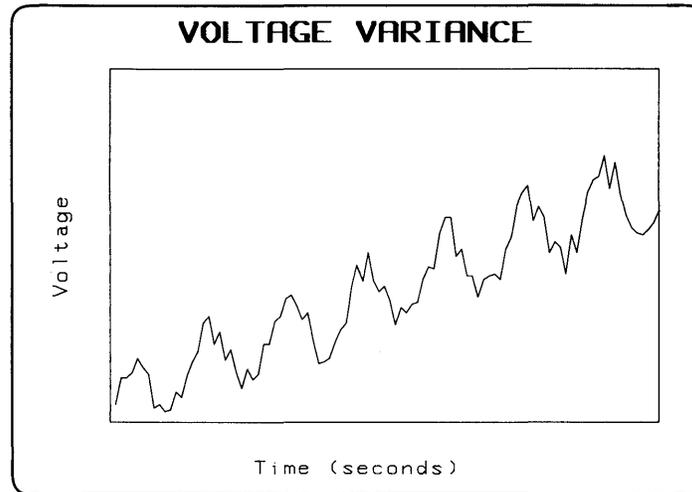
were replaced by the following:

```

for X:=-3 to 3 do begin
  move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2+X*0.002,0.9);
  stext(Text);
end;

```

This method can also be used for offsetting in the Y direction. Or, offset both X and Y. This will give you characters which are thick in a diagonal direction, which makes them look like they are coming out of the page at you. However, a more typical bolding is produced by offsetting only in the X direction.



Now we know what we are measuring—voltage vs. time—but we still do not know the units being used. What we need is an X-axis and a Y-axis, to show us where to put the numbers.

Axes and Tick Marks

When drawing axes, they are typically composed of a straight line defining the axis itself, and short lines, perpendicular to the axes, to indicate the spacing of units. These short lines are called **tick marks**. Usually, the tick marks are grouped into multiples of a nice round number so as to make it easier to understand where the multiples are. These groups are delimited by causing the first tick mark in each group to be larger than the rest.

When writing an axis routine, it is almost always desirable to cause a major tick mark to be coincident with the other axis. For example, if you draw an X axis and select a major tick count of five, it would probably be undesirable to have a minor tick mark (say, two ticks to the right of a major tick) cross the Y axis. This would mean that you would have to go three ticks to the right of the Y axis to find a major tick, but only two ticks if you were going to the left.

Following are some sections of code that do the processing necessary for an axis; an X-axis in this case. A Y-axis proceeds with similar steps. Assume the following variables are defined:

Spacing:	The distance between tick marks on the axis.
Location:	The Y-value of the X-axis.
Xmin,Xmax:	The left and right ends of the X-axis, respectively.
Major:	The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick mark. If Major = 5, every fifth tick mark will be major.
Majsize:	The length, in current units, of the major tick marks.
Minsize:	The length, in current units, of the minor tick marks.

The first thing you would do is to draw the axis itself. Its length would be from X_{min} to X_{max} , and its Y-position would be $Location$:

```
move(Xmin,Location);
line(Xmax,Location);
```

If the lengths of the major and minor tick marks are $MajorSize$ and $MinorSize$, then half those lengths would be on each side of the axis. Rather than dividing by two at every tick, let's do the divisions once and put the values into their own variables:

```
SemiMinorSize:=MinorSize*0.5;
SemiMajorSize:=MajorSize*0.5;
```

We need to round the starting value down to the next major tick mark. The function being used here is a user-defined rounding routine which can round down, up, or to the nearest multiple of the specified value.

```
X:=Round2(Xmin,Spacing*Major,Down);
```

If you do not need or want to force a major tick mark to be at $X=0$, you could replace the previous statement with the following, which forces a tick, *not* necessarily a major one, to be at zero:

```
X:=Round2(Xmin,Spacing,Down);
```

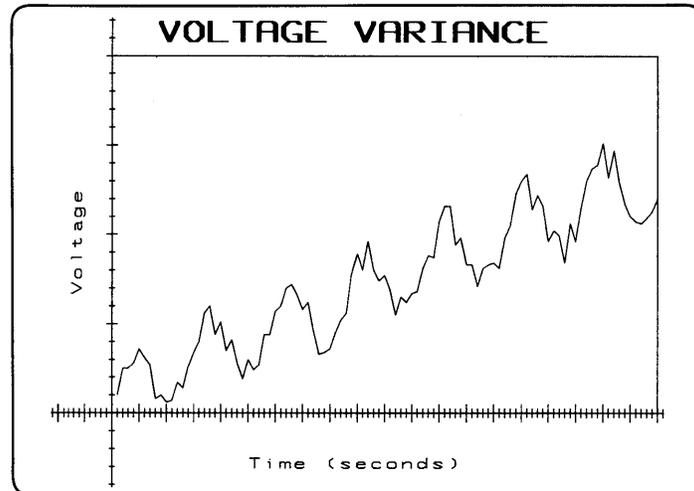
Or, you may not want to round at all; you may want to start making tick marks at the value of X_{min} no matter what its value—whether it's a nice round number or not. In this case, replace the previous statement with this:

```
X:=Xmin;
```

Now we need to draw all the tick marks. The distance between consecutive ticks is defined by $Spacing$. Every N th tick will be a major tick, where N is the current value of $Major$. A counter (of type `INTEGER` or some subrange) will be employed which will be incremented at every iteration and will wrap around. Every time the counter's value is zero, it is time for another major tick mark.

```
Counter:=0;
while X<=Xmax do begin
  if Counter=0 then begin
    move(X,Location-SemiMajorSize);
    line(X,Location+SemiMajorSize);
  end {Counter=0?}
  else begin
    move(X,Location-SemiMinorSize);
    line(X,Location+SemiMinorSize);
  end; {else begin}
  Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major;
  X:=X+Spacing;
end; {while}
```

Here is the next version of our progressive example. It draws both an X and a Y axis. For a complete listing of this program, see the Appendix.



```

Program SinAxes1(output);
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;           {set graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=      3;                 {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=  0;                 {device control; 0 for CRT}
type
  RoundType=    (UP, Down, Near);  {used by procedure Round2}
var
  CharWidth:    real;              {width of char in world coords}
  CharHeight:   real;              {height of char in world coords}
  Text:         strings[20];        {temporary holding place for text}
  ErrorReturn:  integer;            {variable for initialization outcome}
  X:            integer;
  Y:            real;
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint'$       {function: y:=f(x) }

```

Procedures Xaxis and Yaxis, and function Round2 go here.

```

begin                               {body of program "SinAxes1"}
graphics_init;                       {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin          {output device initialization OK?}
  set_aspect(511,389);               {use the whole screen}
  CharWidth:=2*0.04;                 {char width: 4% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.08;                {char height: 4% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:='VOLTAGE VARIANCE';          {define text to be labelled}
  for X:=-3 to 3 do begin            {make "bold" label}
    move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2+X*0.002,0.9); {center label}
    stext(Text);                     {label the text}
  end;
end;

```

```

set_text_rot(0,1);           {vertical labels}
CharWidth:=2*0.025;         {char width: 2.5% of screen width}
CharHeight:=2*0.04;         {char height: 4% of screen height}
set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
Text:='Voltage';           {define the text to be labelled}
move(-0.9,-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2); {start point of centered label}
gtext(Text);               {label the text}
Text:='Time (seconds)';     {define the text to be labelled}
set_text_rot(1,0);         {horizontal labels}
move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,-0.92); {start point of centered label}
gtext(Text);               {label the text}
set_viewport(0.1,0.99,0.12,0.7); {define subset of screen}
move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1); line(1,-1); line(-1,-1); {frame}
set_window(0,100,0.16,0.18); {scale the window for the data}
Xaxis(1,0.16,-50,150,5,0.001,0.0005); {draw the x-axis}
Yaxis(0.001,0,0.1,0.2,5,2,1); {draw the y-axis}
for X:=1 to 100 do begin
  Y:=DataPoint(X);         {set a point from the function}
  if X=1 then move(X,Y)    {move to the first point,..}
  else line(X,Y);          {...and draw to all the rest}
end; {for X:=1 to 100}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term;             {terminate the graphics package}
end.                        {Program "SinAxes1"}

```

This version is better than the last; it has axes and we can see the units they're delimiting, but obviously, there is a big problem. Not only do the axes and tick marks appear where we want them, they are also many places where we don't want them. We want the axes to stop at the limits of the window, and we also want the tick marks to extend only toward the interior of the graph. What we want is *clipping*.

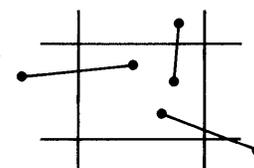
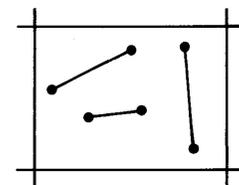
Clipping Lines

Clipping is a method of defining edges of a plotting area, and drawing things which are cut off at those defined edges if they hang over. This is analogous to describing a large drawing on a huge sheet of paper, and but only drawing those parts which are inside some rectangle. What this means is that when clipping is invoked, everything inside the rectangle should look identical to the image (inside the same rectangle) created when clipping is not invoked. Only the things outside the rectangle are affected. Clipping affects lines, text, markers, and polygons.

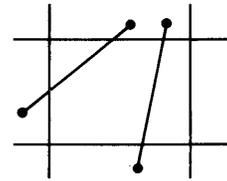
Clipping a line consists of determining how much of a line is within the clipping limits, and then drawing only the visible part. There are four distinct cases:

- The line is contained entirely within the clip limits. Therefore, using the original endpoints, draw the entire line.
- One endpoint is within the clip limits, but the other one is outside. Therefore, find the intersection between the line to be clipped and all clip limits which intersect it (two at the most). Draw the line from the visible endpoint to the closest edge-intersection.

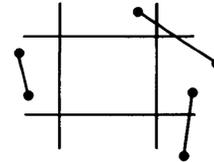
Clipping Limits



- Both endpoints are outside the clip limits, but some middle part of the line is visible. Do the same operation as for the single invisible endpoint above, but for both endpoints.



- The entire line is invisible. Reject it; do nothing.



DGL clips images at the display limits—those limits set by the SET_DISPLAY_LIM routine. Often, however, you may wish to clip at other boundaries than the logical display limits. In addition, the parameters for SET_DISPLAY_LIM are expressed in millimeters. Millimeters are quite adequate for setting display limits, but are usually clumsy to work with when the rest of the graph is in world coordinates. But there is a way to do it. There is a DGL routine called CONVERT_WTODMM, which converts world coordinates to millimeters on the display surface. However, SET_DISPLAY_LIM may reset the view surface limits, so some redefinition of other parameters may be necessary. Thus, you can clip using these two routines in conjunction with each other.

A User-Defined Clipping Algorithm

In the appendix is a listing of the program “SinClip”, which uses a clipping routine¹ called CLIPDRAW. Also included is a routine to which you pass the desired clip limits: CLIPLIMIT. The clip limits may be inside, outside, or coincident with the window edges. After the clipping limits have been defined, a line is passed to the clipping routine. Both endpoints of a line must be known, because intersections between the line being drawn and the edges of the clipping area must be calculated.

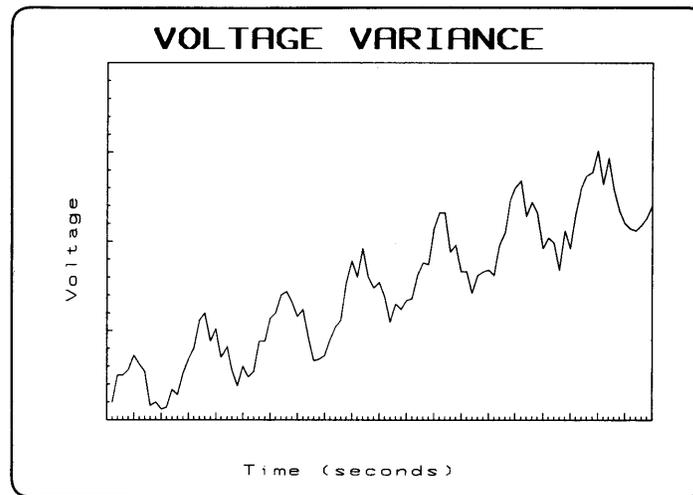
These two clipping-related routines allow lines to be clipped outside of any desired rectangular area. However, the axis routines used in the last demonstration program must be modified to call the clipping routine. In addition, there is another modification which would be very convenient to have:

It would be nice if we didn’t have to pass the Xmin and Xmax or Ymin and Ymax to their respective routines so they would know where to start drawing tick marks. To do this, we’ll just use the global variables CLIPXMIN, CLIPXMAX, CLIPYMIN, CLIPYMAX. Then we’ll round the lower window limits *down* to the next value which would have a major tick mark. We round to a major tick mark because (in this case) we want the value of 0 to have a major tick, regardless of whether zero is on the plotting surface.

Installing the modified axis routines results in the following plot. The program may be found on file “SinClip” on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc.

¹ This clipping routine was adapted from a routine on page 66 of the excellent book:

Principles of Interactive Computer Graphics, William M. Newman and Robert F. Sproull, Second Edition, 1979, McGraw-Hill.



This is a good general-purpose clipping routine which is independent of the output device used, and of the DGL implementation used. But as we noted earlier, only lines sent to the CLIPDRAW routine were clipped, and therefore text, written by a call to GTEXT, in addition to markers and polygons, were not clipped.

These axes look much better. Now we know where the numbers should be placed on the axes. Let's learn a little about labelling numbers.

Labelling Axes

In the process of labelling axes, we need to know how to convert numbers to strings which look just like the numbers. The reason for this is that the labelling procedure GTEXT can only accept a string for an input parameter.

There is a standard procedure in Series 200/300 Pascal called STRWRITE. This allows you to use regular output formats, but, instead of sending the data to a file, the data is put into a string variable. The same format-controlling numbers after colons that can be used for WRITELN can be used for STRWRITE. Let's assume there are three variables defined:

- A string variable `Strng`. This variable will receive the string version of the value converted from REAL;
- An integer `I`. This is merely for a value returned from the STRWRITE routine. It indicates the location of the next unused character in the string;
- And a REAL variable called `X` which we want to convert to a string.

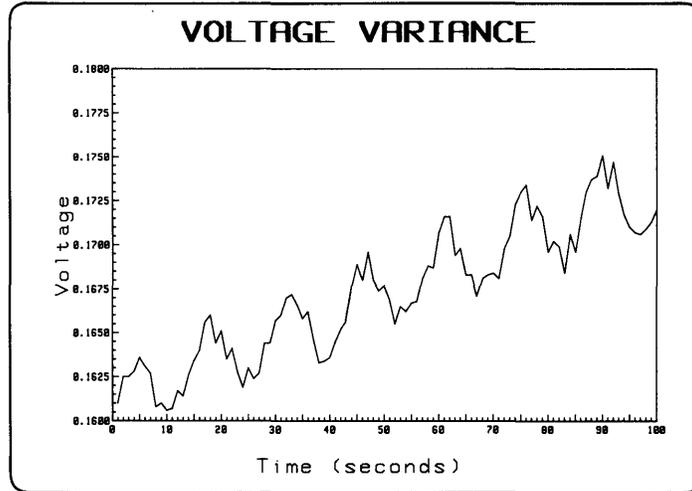
The actual conversion would be accomplished through the following statement:

```
strwrite(Strng,I,X:6:4);
```

The `:6` after the `X` tells the computer that the entire field should be six characters wide. This includes the digits to the left of the decimal point, the decimal point itself, and the characters to the right of the decimal point.

The :4 tells the computer that there are to be four digits to the right of the decimal point.

In this program also, we center the labels horizontally by subtracting half the length of the labels from the desired position for the center of the label.



```

Program SinAxes2(output);
import dgl_lib;                               {set graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=          3;                         {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=     0;                         {device control; 0 for CRT}
type
  RoundType=      (Up, Down, Near);          {used by function Round2}
var
  CharWidth:      real;                       {width of char in world coords}
  CharHeight:    real;                       {height of char in world coords}
  Text:          strings[20];                {temporary holding place for text}
  ErrorReturn:   integer;                    {variable for initialization outcome}
  I:             integer;                    {return variable from STRWRITE}
  X:             integer;
  Y:             real;
  ClipXmin, ClipXmax: real;                  {soft clip limits in x}
  ClipYmin, ClipYmax: real;                  {soft clip limits in y}
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint'$                 {function: y:=f(x) }

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
Procedure ClipLimit(Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure defines the four global variables which specify where the }
{ soft clip limits are. }
{-----}
begin
    {body of procedure "ClipLimit"}
    if Xmin<Xmax then begin
        { \ Force the minimum soft }
        ClipXmin:=Xmin; { \ clip limit in X to be }
        ClipXmax:=Xmax; { \ the smaller of the two }
    end { / X values passed into }
    else begin { / the procedure. }
        ClipXmin:=Xmax; { / }
        ClipXmax:=Xmin; { / }
    end; { / }
    if Ymin<Ymax then begin
        { \ Force the minimum soft }
        ClipYmin:=Ymin; { \ clip limit in Y to be }
        ClipYmax:=Ymax; { \ the smaller of the two }
    end { / Y values passed into }
    else begin { / the procedure. }
        ClipYmin:=Ymax; { / }
        ClipYmax:=Ymin; { / }
    end; { / }
end; {procedure "ClipLimit"}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure ClipDraw(X1, Y1, X2, Y2: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure takes the endpoints of a line, and clips it. The soft }
{ clip limits are the real global variables ClipXmin, ClipXmax, ClipYmin, }
{ and ClipYmax. These may be defined through the procedure ClipLimit. }
{-----}
label
    1;
type
    Edges= (Left,Right,Top,Bottom); {possible edges to cross}
    OutOfBounds= set of Edges; {set of edges crossed}
var
    Out,Out1,Out2:OutOfBounds;
    X, Y: real;
{-----}
Procedure Code(X, Y: real; var Out: OutOfBounds);
begin
    {nested procedure "Code"}
    Out:=[]; {null set}
    if x<ClipXmin then Out:=[left] {off left edge?}
    else if x>ClipXmax then Out:=[right]; {off right edge?}
    if y<ClipYmin then Out:=Out+[bottom] {off the bottom?}
    else if y>ClipYmax then Out:=Out+[top]; {off the top?}
end; {nested procedure "Code"}

```

```

{-----}
begin                                     {body of procedure "ClipDraw"}
Code(X1,Y1,Out1);                         {figure status of point 1}
Code(X2,Y2,Out2);                         {figure status of point 2}
while (Out1<>[]) or (Out2<>[]) do begin {loop while either point out of range}
  if (Out1*Out2)<>[] then goto 1;        {if intersection non-null, no line}
  if Out1<>[] then Out:=Out1
  else Out:=Out2;                          {Out is the non-empty one}
  if left in Out then begin               {it crosses the left edge}
    y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmin-X1)/(X2-X1);{adjust value of y appropriately}
    x:=ClipXmin;                           {new x is left edge}
  end {left in Out?}
  else if right in Out then begin         {it crosses right edge}
    y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmax-X1)/(X2-X1);{adjust value of y appropriately}
    x:=ClipXmax;                           {new x is right edge}
  end {right in Out?}
  else if bottom in Out then begin        {it crosses the bottom edge}
    x:=X1+(X2-X1)*(ClipYmin-Y1)/(Y2-Y1);{adjust value of x appropriately}
    y:=ClipYmin;                           {new y is bottom edge}
  end {bottom in Out?}
  else if top in Out then begin           {it crosses the top edge}
    x:=X1+(X2-X1)*(ClipYmax-Y1)/(Y2-Y1);{adjust value of x appropriately}
    y:=ClipYmax;                           {new y is top edge}
  end; {top in Out?}
  if Out=Out1 then begin                  {redefine first end point}
    X1:=x; Y1:=y; Code(x,y,Out1);
  end {Out=Out1?}
  else begin                               {redefine second end point}
    X2:=x; Y2:=y; Code(x,y,Out2);
  end; {else begin}
end; {while}
move(x1,y1);                               {if we get to this point, the line...}
line(x2,y2);                               {...is completely visible, so draw it}
1: end;                                     {procedure "ClipDraw"}
$PAGE$ {*****}
function Round2(N, M: real; Mode: RoundType): real;
{-----}
{ This function rounds "N" to the nearest "M", according to "Mode". This }
{ function works only when the argument is in the range of MININT..MAXINT. }
{-----}
const
  epsilon=      1E-10;                       {roundoff error fudge factor}
var
  Rounded:      real;                         {temporary holding area}
  Negative:     boolean;                      {flag: "It is negative?"}
begin
  Negative:=(N<0.0);                          {is the number negative?}
  if Negative then begin
    N:=abs(N);                                 {work with a positive number}
    if Mode=Up then Mode:=Down                 {if number is negative, ...}
    else if Mode=Down then Mode:=Up;          {...reverse up and down}
  end;
end;

```

```

case Mode of
  Down: Rounded:=trunc(N/M)*M;      {should we round the number...}
  Up:   begin
        Rounded:=N/M;              {...right on the number line?}
        if abs(Rounded-round(Rounded))>epsilon then
          Rounded:=(trunc(Rounded)+1.0)*M
        else
          Rounded:=trunc(Rounded)*M;
        end;
  Near: Rounded:=trunc(N/M+M*0.5)*M; {...to the nearest multiple?}
end; {case}
if Negative then Rounded:=-Rounded; {reinstate the sign}
Round2:=Rounded;                    {assign to function name}
end;                                 {function "Round2"}
$Page$ {*****}
procedure XaxisClip(Spacing, Location: real; Major: integer;
  Majsize,Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an X-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis. }
{ Location: The Y-value of the X-axis. }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major. }
{ Majsize: The length, in world units, of the major tick marks. }
{ Minsize: The length, in world units, of the minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
  X: real;          {X position of tick marks}
  SemiMajsize: real; {half of major tick size}
  SemiMinsize: real; {half of minor tick size}
  Counter: integer; {keeps track of when to do major ticks}
begin
  SemiMajsize:=MajSize*0.5; {calculate half of major tick size}
  SemiMinsize:=MinSize*0.5; {calculate half of minor tick size}
  Counter:=0;              {start with a major tick}
  ClipDraw(ClipXmin,Location,ClipXmax,Location); {draw the X-axis itself}
  X:=Round2(ClipXmin,Spacing*Major,Down); {round to next lower major}
  while X<=ClipXmax do begin {loop until greater than ClipXmax}
    if Counter=0 then {do a major tick mark?}
      ClipDraw(X,Location-SemiMajsize,X,Location+SemiMajsize)
    else
      ClipDraw(X,Location-SemiMinsize,X,Location+SemiMinsize); {do minor tick}
    Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major; {keep track of which length tick to do}
    X:=X+Spacing; {go to next tick position}
  end; {while}
end; {procedure "XaxisClip"}

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
Procedure YaxisClip(Spacing, Location: real; Major: integer;
  Majsize, Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an Y-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis. }
{ Location: The X-value of the Y-axis. }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major. }
{ Majsize: The length, in world units, of the major tick marks. }
{ Minsize: The length, in world units, of the minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
  Y: real; {Y position of tick marks}
  SemiMajsize: real; {half of major tick size}
  SemiMinsize: real; {half of minor tick size}
  Counter: integer; {keeps track of when to do major ticks}
begin
  {body of procedure "YaxisClip"}
  SemiMajsize:=Majsize*0.5; {calculate half of major tick size}
  SemiMinsize:=Minsize*0.5; {calculate half of minor tick size}
  Counter:=0; {start with a major tick}
  ClipDraw(Location,ClipYmin,Location,ClipYmax);
  Y:=Round2(ClipYmin,Spacing*Major,Down); {round to next lower major}
  while Y<=ClipYmax do begin {loop until greater than Ymax}
    if Counter=0 then {should we do a major tick?}
      ClipDraw(Location-SemiMajsize,Y,Location+SemiMajsize,Y)
    else
      ClipDraw(Location-SemiMinsize,Y,Location+SemiMinsize,Y);
    Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major; {keep track of which size tick to do}
    Y:=Y+Spacing; {go to next tick position}
  end; {while}
end; {procedure "YaxisClip"}

```

```

$page$ {*****}
begin {body of program "SinAxes2"}
graphics_init; {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin {output device initialization OK?}
  set_aspect(511,389); {use the whole screen}
  CharWidth:=2*0.04; {char width: 4% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.08; {char height: 4% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:='VOLTAGE VARIANCE'; {define text to be labelled}
  for X:=-3 to 3 do begin {make "bold" label}
    move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2+X*0.002,0.9); {center label}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
  end;
  set_text_rot(0,1); {vertical labels}
  CharWidth:=2*0.025; {char width: 2.5% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.04; {char height: 4% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install char size}
  Text:='Voltage'; {define text to be labelled}
  move(-0.97,-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  Text:='Time (seconds)'; {define text to be labelled}
  set_text_rot(1,0); {horizontal labels}
  move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,-0.92); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  set_viewport(0.1,0.99,0.12,0.7); {define subset of the screen}
  move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1); line(1,-1); line(-1,-1); {frame}
  set_window(0,100,0.16,0.18); {scale the window for the data}
  ClipLimit(0,100,0.16,0.18); {define the soft clip limits}
  XaxisClip(1,0.16,5,0.0008,0.0004); {draw the clipped X-axis}
  YaxisClip(0,0.0005,0,5,2,1); {draw the clipped Y-axis}
  CharWidth:=1.3; {char width: 1.3 user X units wide}
  CharHeight:=0.0008; {char height: .0008 user Y units high}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:=''; {erase previous definitions of strings}
  for X:=0 to 10 do begin {eleven X labels}
    strwrite(Text,1,I,X*10:0); {convert number to string}
    move(X*10-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,0.1593); {center the label}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
  end; {for x}
  Y:=0.16; {starting Y position for Y labels}
  repeat
    strwrite(Text,1,X,Y:6:4); {convert number to string}
    move(-8,Y-0.0002); {center the text vertically}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
    Y:=Y+0.0025; {next Y position}
  until Y>0.18; {terminating condition}
  for X:=1 to 100 do begin {100 points total}
    Y:=DataPoint(X); {set a point from the function}
    if X=1 then move(X,Y) {move to the first point...}
    else line(X,Y); {...and draw to all the rest}
  end; {for X:=1 to 100}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term; {terminate the graphics package}
end. {program "SinAxes2"}

```

1-32 Introduction to Graphics

Notice that even though the clip limits were still active when the axis labels were written, the text (whose characters are merely a series of short lines) was *not* clipped. This is because the GTEXT procedure does not call the user-defined clipping routine CLIPDRAW, it calls the DGL procedures MOVE and LINE. Thus clipping on labelled text is only done at the hard clip limits—the edges of the plotting surface.

This is the final version of our progressive example. It is the version which created the initial display at the beginning of the chapter.

Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

Chapter

2

In the last chapter we discussed the more elementary graphics operations. In this chapter, we will discuss how to use some of those concepts more fluently, along with several other graphics operations.

As in the last chapter, the demonstration programs in this chapter are stored for your convenience on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc which was shipped with this manual. You are encouraged to run these programs while you are reading the manual, as they will make understanding the concepts much easier.

Setting the Display Limits

It is possible to define a subarea of the physical display surface by calling the DGL procedure `SET_DISPLAY_LIM`. The area thus defined is the area in which a subarea can be specified by the `SET_ASPECT` procedure.

The parameters passed to `SET_DISPLAY_LIM` are expressed in millimeters. An example call would be:

```
set_display_lim(40.5,100,30,99,error);
```

This would set the logical limits of the display device to an area whose:

- left edge is 40.5 millimeters from the physical left edge of the display device;
- right edge is 100 millimeters from the physical left edge of the display device;
- bottom edge is 30 millimeters from the physical bottom edge of the display device;
- top edge is 99 millimeters from the physical bottom edge of the display device.

If the integer variable `ERROR` comes back with a value of 0, no error occurred. An error occurs if either the minimum X or Y is greater than the maximum X or Y, or if the requested area is even partially outside the physical display limits. In either case, the call is ignored and the variable `ERROR` is returned non-zero.

More on Defining a Viewport

In the last chapter it was mentioned that the `SET_VIEWPORT` procedure defined a subset of the screen in which to plot. More precisely, the `SET_VIEWPORT` procedure *defines a rectangular area into which the `SET_WINDOW` coordinates will be mapped*. That is, the left edge of the window will be placed upon the left edge of the viewport, the right edge of the window will be placed upon the right edge of the viewport, and the same will happen with the bottom and the top edges.

Assuming that the `SET_ASPECT` procedure has been invoked to make use of the entire screen, the screen has default edge values in virtual display coordinates of 0.0 through 1.0 in the X direction. In the Y direction, it has the coordinates of 0.0 through $299/399 \approx 0.75$ (for the Models 216, 220 and 226), 0.0 through $389/511 \approx 0.76$ (for the Models 217 and 236), or 0.0 through $767/1023 \approx 0.75$ (for the Model 237, HP 98544A, HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98700A, HP 9000 382 Medium-Resolution display), or 0.0 through $399/511 \approx 0.78$ (for HP 98542A and HP 98543A), or 0.0 through $1023/1279 \approx 0.80$ (for HP 98548A, HP 98550A, and HP 9000 382 High-Resolution), or 0.0 through $479/639 \approx 0.75$ (on the HP 9000 362/382 VGA display). The length of a unit in virtual coordinates is defined as “the length of one of the longer edges of the plotting area.” To recap the important characteristics of virtual coordinates:

- The lower left of the plotting area is 0,0.
- Virtual coordinates are isotropic; that is, one unit in the X direction is the same distance as one unit in the Y direction.
- Virtual coordinates are limited to the range 0 through 1. The maximum coordinate on one side is 1, and the maximum coordinate on the other side is less than or equal to 1.

As we mentioned in the last chapter, it is trivial to determine the longer edge of the screen in virtual coordinates, but substantially more involved to calculate the length of the shorter edge in virtual coordinates. Since the height of the screen is shorter than the width of the screen, the longer edge is in the X direction; therefore, the maximum X in virtual coordinates is 1.0. If the screen had been higher than it is wide, the maximum Y in virtual coordinates would have been 1.0. Now for the interesting part.

Remember that virtual coordinates are isotropic: X and Y units are the same length. This means that the length in virtual coordinate units of the shorter edges of the plotting surface can be determined from the **aspect ratio** of the plotting surface. The aspect ratio is the ratio of width to height of the plotting surface. Thus, if the plotting area is wider than it is high, the ratio would be greater than one. If the plotting area is higher than it is wide, the ratio would be less than one, and if the plotting area were perfectly square, the ratio would be 1. You can determine the aspect ratios of both the virtual display and the logical limits of the plotting surface by calling the `INQ_WS` procedure with operation selector 254:

```

const
  AspectRatio=          254;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
type
  RatioTypes=          (VirtualDisplay,LogicalLimits);
  RatioType=          array [RatioTypes] of real;
var
  Pac:                packed array [1..1] of char;  { \   These are the sundries  }
  Iarray:             array [1..1] of integer;      { \   needed by the call to   }
  Ratios:             RatioType;                   { /   "inq_ws",             }
  Error:              integer;                      { /                               }
  .
  .
  .
inq_ws(AspectRatio,0,0,2,Pac,Iarray,Ratios,Error); cr/if Error<>0
then cr/if writeln('Error ',Error:0, ' in determining aspect ratio.');
```

The user can now use `Ratio[VirtualDisplay]` and `Ratio[LogicalLimits]` to determine what values are used to set the aspect ratio. (For more information on the `INQ_WS` procedure, look up this procedure in Appendix B.)

Usually, however, the user knows the aspect ratio because he explicitly set it at the beginning of the program, using the `SET_ASPECT` procedure.

Using the value for the aspect ratio, we can derive a statement which is almost indispensable when writing a general-purpose statement for calling the `SET_VIEWPORT` procedure. Assuming the aspect ratio is contained in a variable called `AspectRatio`:

```

if AspectRatio>1.0 then begin
  MaxVirtX:=1.0;
  MaxVirtY:=1/AspectRatio
end
else begin
  MaxVirtX:=AspectRatio;
  MaxVirtY:=1.0
end;

```

These statements define the maximum X and maximum Y in virtual coordinate units. This will work no matter what plotting device you are using. Now that we have `MaxVirtX` and `MaxVirtY` defined, we have complete control of the subset we want on the plotting surface. Suppose we want:

- the left edge of the viewport to be 10% of the hard clip limit¹ width from the left edge,
- the right edge of the viewport to be 1% of the hard clip limit width from the right edge,
- the bottom edge of the viewport to be 15% of the hard clip limit height from the bottom,
and
- the top edge of the viewport to be 10% of the hard clip limit height from the top.

We would specify:

```

LeftEdge:=0.1*MaxVirtX;
RightEdge:=0.99*MaxVirtX;
BottomEdge:=0.15*MaxVirtY;
TopEdge:=0.9*MaxVirtY;
SET_VIEWPORT(LeftEdge,RightEdge,BottomEdge,TopEdge);

```

¹ Hard clip limits are those limits set by the `SET_DISPLAY_LIM` procedure.

Calculating Window Limits

In our progressive example in the last chapter, we were using the sometimes unrealistic practice of using constants in the SET_WINDOW procedure call. Often you don't know until the program is running what the values to be passed to SET_WINDOW are. The X values which were used in the SET_WINDOW procedure call (0 and 100) came from the fact that there were 100 data points. The Y values (for this type of plot) must be determined either by you or by the computer itself. If you want the computer to determine the X or Y minimum and maximum, you could do it in the following manner. Assuming that the X values are in a real array called X:

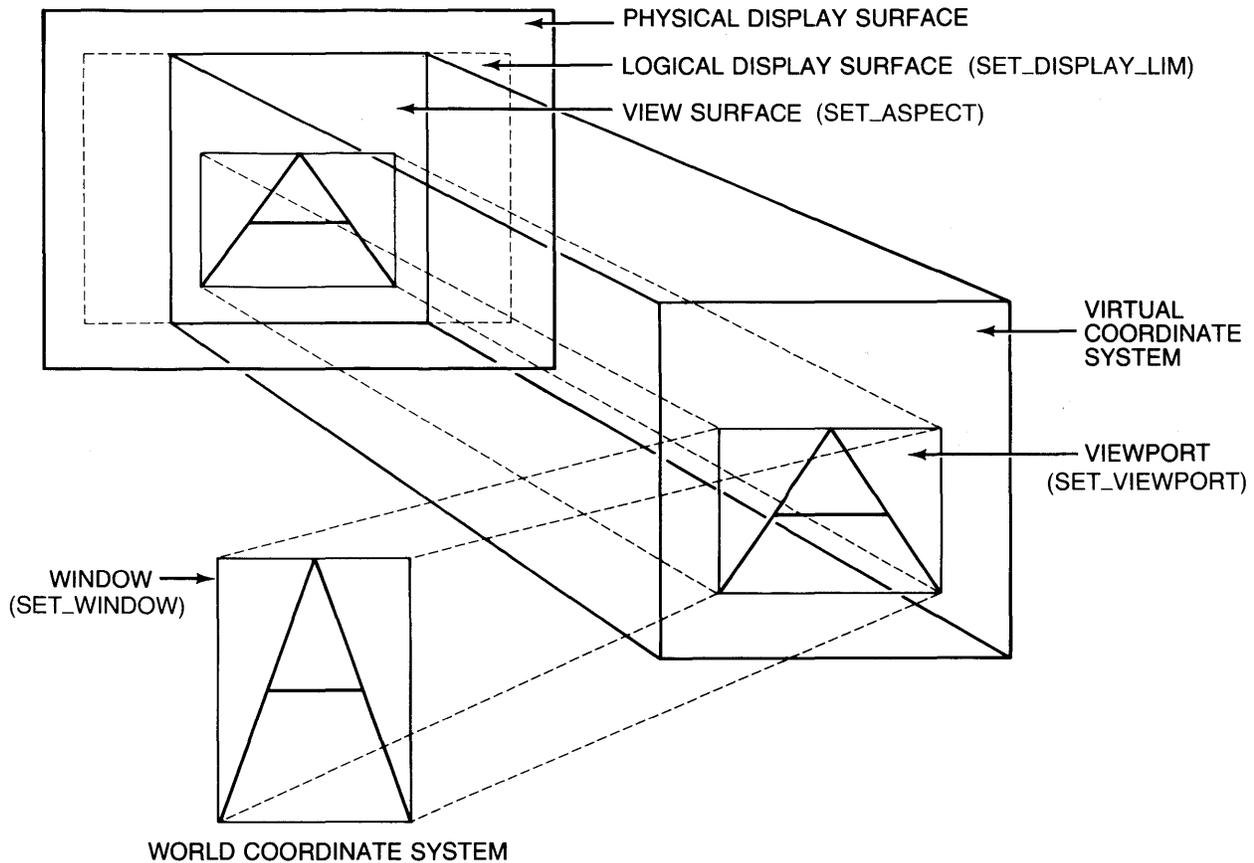
```
const
  MaxReal=          1.79769313486231E308;
  .
  .
  .
Xmax:=-MaxReal;    {Smaller than smallest possible value in array}
for I:=1 to N do   {N is the number of elements in the array}
  if X[I]>Xmax then Xmax:=X[I];
```

A similar method can be used for figuring the minimum value of the X array: First, assign X_{min} to be +MaxReal. The reason this is done is to ensure that at least the first value in the array is used. Then, check through the array of X values, and if the value of any element is smaller than the current minimum, it becomes the new minimum.

Of course, the minimum and maximum Y values can be found in the same manner.

Drawing a Window Frame

The SET_VIEWPORT procedure specifies where in the logical display to put the plot—the subarea of the plotting surface in which to plot. This is the area which the SET_WINDOW procedure affects.



Quite often, a frame is desired around the current window to set it apart from the labels outside the window, and so forth. If the window limits are known (or it is convenient to find out), you can just do a MOVE and four LINES, as was done in the last chapter. The way it was done in the last chapter was to draw the frame *after* the SET_VIEWPORT call, but *before* the SET_WINDOW call. Since we had not yet set our own window, the default window limits were -1 to 1 in both directions. Therefore, we could say:

```
move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1); line(1,-1); line(-1,-1);
```

This is not always the case, however. If you do not know the current window limits, you can interrogate the system through the DGL procedure INQ_WS. The values returned from there can be used to draw the frame. The following lines of code demonstrate how to do this. First, the INQ_WS routine is accessed to determine the current window limits, and then a box is drawn around those limits.

2-6 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

```
const
  WindowLimits= 450;           {mnemonic better than magic number}
type
  LimitOrder= (Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax);
  LimitType= array [LimitOrder] of real;
var
  Pac: packed array [1..1] of char; { \ These are the sundries }
  Iarray: array [1..1] of integer; { \ needed by the call to }
  Window: LimitType; { / the DGL procedure }
  Error: integer; { / "inq_ws". }
  .
  .
  .
inq_ws(WindowLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Window,Error);
if Error=0 then begin
  move(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymin]); {move to lower left corner}
  line(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymax]); {draw to upper left corner}
  line(Window[Xmax],Window[Ymax]); {draw to upper right corner}
  line(Window[Xmax],Window[Ymin]); {draw to lower right corner}
  line(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymin]); {draw to lower left corner}
end {Error=0?}
else writeln('Error ',Error:0,' occurred in "Frame"');
```

Turning Displays On and Off

If you ran the last chapter's programs, and do not have a bit-mapped display, you probably noticed that the graphics screen was turned on automatically to show you what was being plotted, but the alpha screen was *not* turned off at the same time. If you do have a bit-mapped display (e.g., Model 237), both alpha and graphics occupy the same screen; the screen is either on or it isn't.

In the case of nonbit-mapped displays, as soon as the program ended, the Main Command Level prompt appeared at the top of the screen, obstructing the view of the top portion of the graphics image. This can be mildly annoying as it is, having to turn off the alpha raster by pressing the **GRAPHICS** key, but it rapidly gets more annoying if your program generates printed output *and* plotted output which are not intended to be viewed simultaneously.

What is needed is a way to turn either the alpha raster or the graphics raster on or off at will. There is a way to do this, by calling the OUTPUT_ESC procedure with operation selectors 1050 or 1051. Or, if you prefer a more readable method, the you could write a procedure to do the operations. Assume that there has been an enumerated type declared:

```
type
  DisplayStates= (Off,On);
```

Here is an example section of code to show you how to turn the displays on or off. The parameter used is assumed to be of the type declared above.

```
{*****}
procedure Alpha(State: boolean);
{-----}
{ This procedure turns the alpha raster on or off (true=on, false=off), }
{-----}
const
  AlphaRaster= 1051;           {mnemonic better than magic number}
var
  AlphaOn:    array [1..1] of integer;    { \ This is all stuff that }
  Rarray:    array [1..1] of real;        { > is needed by the }
  Error:     integer;                     { / "output_esc" procedure. }
begin
  if State=On then AlphaOn[1]:=1          {"On" is a boolean constant: true}
  else AlphaOn[1]:=0;
  output_esc(AlphaRaster,1,0,AlphaOn,Rarray,Error);
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,' in procedure "Alpha".');
end;                                     {procedure "Alpha"}
```

Similar code could be generated for turning the graphics display on and off. The references to "Alpha" should be changed to "Graphics" just to avoid confusion, and the operation selector should be changed to 1050.

Conversion Between Coordinate Systems

Many times, you'll probably want the ability to convert back and forth between virtual display coordinates and world coordinates. One of the most-used areas where this is desired is where you want to specify some parameter in units relative to the display device, *not* the graphical model currently in use. For example, it is often desirable to specify character sizes as, say, 6% of the screen height. Or, you want to draw an X axis whose tick marks are 1% of the screen height. These, and other places, the values could be specified in world coordinates, but it is an inconvenience to have to specify a constant-sized line or character in units which are varying all over the place. For example, if you have a general-purpose plotting routine which gets its data from an external source, it doesn't know until it gets the data what the window limits are to be. It is only *after* the window limits are known that the character sizes would be specified.

If we could specify these things in virtual display coordinates, we could have the computer do the dirty work of converting from virtual coordinates to whatever the current world coordinates are.

To convert from one coordinate system to another, there are three steps involved:

1. Determine, as a fraction, how far into the old system the point of interest is. For example, if the old system goes from 10 to 20 in X (calculations for Y proceed with identical steps), and you want to find out how far 13 is into that range, you take:

```
OldFraction:=(X-OldXmin)/(OldXmax-OldXmin);
```

or, using our numbers,

```
OldFraction:=(13-10)/(20-10);
```

This evaluates to 0.3, and, sure enough, 13 is three tenths of the way between 10 and 20.

2. Take the fraction found in the previous step, and go the same distance into the new coordinate system. For example, say our new coordinate system goes from 300 to 400. To go into this new range the same fraction of the way, you take:

```
NewDistance:=OldFraction*(NewXmax-NewXmin);
```

Again, putting our numbers into the expression,

```
NewDistance:=0.3*(400-300);
```

This evaluates to 30, and, sure enough, we have to go thirty units into the new coordinate system.

3. To "go into" the new coordinate system means that we have to add the new coordinate system's minimum value to the distance into the new system so that the distance into the new system is relative to the same starting point as the system itself.

```
NewPoint:=NewDistance+NewXmin;
```

or, in our units,

```
NewPoint:=30+300;
```

And 330 is the desired point in the new coordinate system.

The "old" coordinate system and the "new" coordinate system can have any maxima and minima (you are not restricted to converting between the world coordinate system and the virtual coordinate system), and the point of interest may be inside the range, one of the end points, or outside the range; it make no difference to the mathematics.

Following are two routines which convert between virtual display coordinates and world coordinates.

```

{*****}
procedure ConvertVirtualToWorld(VirtualX, VirtualY: real;
                               var WorldX, WorldY: real);
{-----}
{ This routine converts any point in virtual coordinates, whether on the }
{ plotting surface or not, into world coordinates. }
{-----}
const
  WindowLimits=      450;      {mnemonic better than magic number}
  ViewportLimits=   451;      {...here, too, }
type
  LimitOrder=      (Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax);
  LimitType=      array [LimitOrder] of real;
var
  Pac:             packed array [1..1] of char;   { \ These are the sundries }
  Iarray:         array [1..1] of integer;      { \ needed by the call to }
  Window:         LimitType;                   { > the DGL procedure }
  Viewport:       LimitType;                   { / "inq_ws", }
  Error:          integer;                      { / }
begin
  {body of procedure "ConvertVirtualToWorld"}
  inq_ws(WindowLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Window,Error);
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,
    ' in determining window limits in "ConvertVirtualToWorld".');
  inq_ws(ViewportLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Viewport,Error);
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,
    ' in determining viewport limits in "ConvertVirtualToWorld".');
  WorldX:=(VirtualX-Viewport[Xmin]) { \ Calculate X distance from left... }
  /((Viewport[Xmax]-Viewport[Xmin]) { \ ...convert to a fraction... }
  *(Window[Xmax]-Window[Xmin]) { / ...go same fraction into world... }
  +Window[Xmin]); { / ...add Xmin to get value. }
  WorldY:=(VirtualY-Viewport[Ymin]) { \ Calculate Y distance from bottom...}
  /((Viewport[Ymax]-Viewport[Ymin]) { \ ...convert to a fraction... }
  *(Window[Ymax]-Window[Ymin]) { / ...go same fraction into world... }
  +Window[Ymin]); { / ...add Ymin to get value. }
end;
{procedure "ConvertVirtualToWorld"}

```

2-10 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

```

{*****}
procedure ConvertWorldToVirtual(WorldX, WorldY: real;
                               var VirtualX, VirtualY: real);
{-----}
{   This routine converts any point in world coordinates, whether on the   }
{ plotting surface or not, into virtual coordinates.                       }
{-----}
const
  WindowLimits=      450;      {mnemonic better than magic number}
  ViewportLimits=   451;      {...here, too.                       }
type
  LimitOrder=      (Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax);
  LimitType=      array [LimitOrder] of real;
var
  Pac:            packed array [1..1] of char;    { \ These are the sundries }
  Iarray:        array [1..1] of integer;        { \ needed by the call to   }
  Window:        LimitType;                      { > the DGL procedure      }
  Viewport:      LimitType;                      { / "inq_ws",             }
  Error:         integer;                        { /                          }
begin
  {body of procedure "ConvertWorldToVirtual"}
  inq_ws(WindowLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Window,Error);
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,
    ' in determining window limits in "ConvertWorldToVirtual".');
  inq_ws(ViewportLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Viewport,Error);
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,
    ' in determining viewport limits in "ConvertWorldToVirtual".');
  VirtualX:=(WorldX-Window[Xmin])    { \ Calculate X distance from left... }
    /(Window[Xmax]-Window[Xmin])    { \ ...convert to a fraction...     }
    *(Viewport[Xmax]-Viewport[Xmin]) { / ...so same fraction into world... }
    +Viewport[Xmin];                { / ...add Xmin to get value.       }
  VirtualY:=(WorldY-Window[Ymin])    { \ Calculate Y distance from bottom...}
    /(Window[Ymax]-Window[Ymin])    { \ ...convert to a fraction...     }
    *(Viewport[Ymax]-Viewport[Ymin]) { / ...so same fraction into world... }
    +Viewport[Ymin];                { / ...add Ymin to get value.       }
end;
{procedure "ConvertWorldToVirtual"}

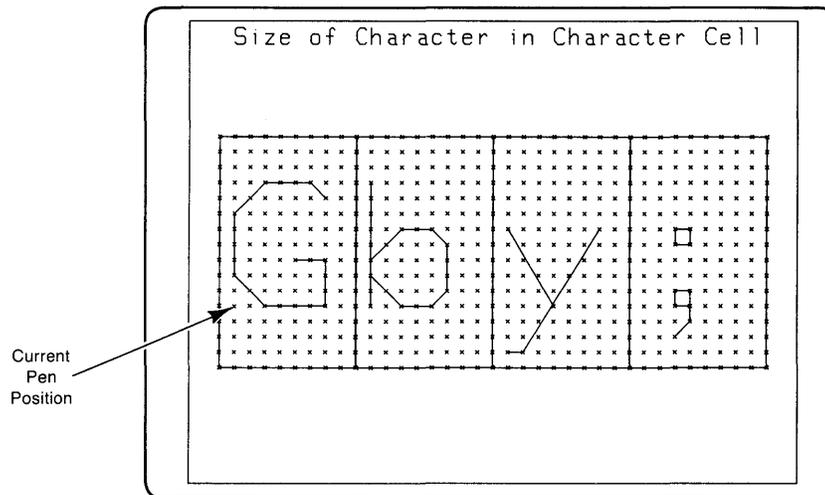
```

More on Labelling a Plot

To help you get a better grasp of the concept of labelling, there will be four small sections, each of which demonstrates something more about the concept of labelling a graph.

The Character Cell

The first program deals with the relationship between the size of the character, per se, and the size of the **character cell**—that rectangle in which the character is placed. This program is on file "CharCell" on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc.



```

Program CharCell(output);
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;
const
  Crt=          3;          {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=     0;          {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  LorgType=    1..9;       {the valid values to pass the "Lorg"}
  Str255=      string[255]; {for the procedure "Glabel"}
var
  Error:       integer;    {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  I, X, Y:    integer;    {loop control variables}
  
```

{Program name same as file name}
 {access the necessary procedures}

2-12 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

```

$page$ {*****}
begin                                     {body of program "CharCell"}
graphics_init;                           {initialize graphics library}
display_init(Crt,Control,Error);         {initialize CRT}
if Error=0 then begin                    {if no error occurred...}
  set_aspect(511,389);                   {use the whole screen}
  move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1);   line(1,-1); line(-1,-1);
  set_window(-2,38,-7.5,22,5);          {define appropriate window}
  set_char_size(1,2);                    { \ }
  move(1,21);                             { > Do main label. }
  stext('Size of Character in Character Cell'); { / }
  for X:=0 to 36 do begin                 { \ }
    for Y:=0 to 15 do begin              { \ }
      move(X-0.1,y+0.1);                 { \ Draw the four 9x15 }
      line(X+0.1,Y-0.1);                 { \ character cells. Make }
      move(X+0.1,Y+0.1);                 { / a frame around each, }
      line(X-0.1,Y-0.1);                 { / and an X at every }
    end; {for y}                          { / point. }
  end; {for x}                             { / }
  for I:=0 to 3 do begin                  {draw a frame around each char cell}
    move(I*9,0); line(I*9,15); line(I*9+9,15); line(I*9+9,0); line(I*9,0);
  end;
  set_char_size(9,15);                    {big characters}
  move(1,4);                               {go to starting position}
  stext('Gbyi');                           {label some characters}
end; {Error=0?}                             {end of conditional code}
graphics_term;                             {terminate graphics library}
end. {program "CharCell"}                  {end of program}

```

As the diagram shows, a character is drawn inside a rectangle, with some space on all four sides. Both the rectangle's width and height are specified by the values passed to the DGL procedure SET_CHAR_SIZE, and are measured in world coordinates. This rectangle is subdivided into a grid of 9 wide by 15 high. Characters are drawn in this framework.

The current pen position—that position moved to before writing a label—is one unit to the right and four units up from the lower left-hand corner of the character cell. For example, when labelling a lower-case “b”, the bottom of the longer vertical line would end up at the point moved to before labelling. Also note that there doesn't have to be any part of the character at the current pen position, as in the upper-case “G” in the plot. For characters which have descenders (lines which go below the “baseline” of the character cell), the current position is still relative to the lower left corner of the character *cell*, not the character.

Of course, the little ×s in the plot above are not drawn when you label a string of text; they are there solely to show the position of the characters within the character cell.

The DGL procedure SET_CHAR_SIZE specifies the height of the character *cell*, not the character itself.

Setting Character Size

In a previous section, we discussed translation of points between coordinate systems. And as it was mentioned before, often it is desirable to be able to specify character sizes in screen-dependent units, rather than model-dependent units.

As we saw in the last chapter, there is a DGL procedure called `SET_CHAR_SIZE` which sets an attribute of all subsequent characters, namely the width and height of the character cells. When using `SET_CHAR_SIZE`, the characters are scaled using the same scaling as the objects drawn.

In other cases, however, the text size should be related to the display device, rather than the user's graphics model. For example, when a general-purpose display routine gets data from a file, or some other source, it probably does not know until the data is actually received what the range of the data is. Thus, the window limits are calculated in the program. To get the title of the plot of a consistent size, you would have to convert the actual size of the label relative to the display device to the same size expressed in world coordinates so they can be sent to `SET_CHAR_SIZE`.

The following piece of code shows you how to define character cell height in virtual coordinates, and the width is defined as a fraction of the height; thus, it is an aspect ratio. The reason that the aspect ratio is desired, rather than the character cell width, is that if you want characters with a constant shape, you would just have to take your first parameter, and multiply it by a constant. Thus, in effect, you have just specified the aspect ratio.

The values passed into the routine are converted into character cell width and character cell height in world coordinates, which the DGL procedure `SET_CHAR_SIZE` needs. `SET_CHAR_SIZE` is called and the converted values are passed to it. The converted values are retrievable by invoking the `INQ_WS` procedure with operation selector 250. The character cell height and width are needed by another piece of code (which actually does the labelling) covered shortly.

Here is how to specify character size in virtual coordinates, with an aspect ratio, and convert it into parameters appropriate for the `SET_CHAR_SIZE` routine. Notice that the conversion routine covered a few sections back is used:

```

var
  Width:      real;      {temporary spot for width}
  X0, Y0:    real;      {0,0 (virtual) in world}
  X1, Y1:    real;      {1,1 (virtual) in world}
  .
  .
  .
ConvertVirtualToWorld(0,0,X0,Y0);    {convert 0,0 in virtual to world}
ConvertVirtualToWorld(1,1,X1,Y1);    {convert 1,1 in virtual to world}
Height:=Height*(Y1-Y0);              {convert height in virtual to world}
Width:=Height*AspectRatio*(X1-X0)/(Y1-Y0); {convert width in virtual to world}
set_char_size(Width,Height);          {invoke the parameters}

```



```

var
  Width:      real;           {temporary spot for width}
  X0, Y0:    real;           {0,0 (virtual) in world}
  X1, Y1:    real;           {1,1 (virtual) in world}
begin
  ConvertVirtualToWorld(0,0,X0,Y0); {convert 0,0 in virtual to world}
  ConvertVirtualToWorld(1,1,X1,Y1); {convert 1,1 in virtual to world}
  Height:=Height*(Y1-Y0);          {convert height in virtual to world}
  Width:=Height*AspectRatio*(X1-X0)/(Y1-Y0); {convert width in virtual to world}
  set_char_size(Width,Height);     {invoke the parameters}
end;                                {procedure "CharSize"}
$page$ {*****}
begin                                {body of program "CsizeProg"}
  graphics_init;                    {initialize the graphics system}
  display_init(Crt,Control,Error);  {which output device?}
  if Error=0 then begin              {output device initialization OK?}
    set_aspect(511,389);             {use the whole screen}
    set_window(1,2,100,0);          {scale the window for the data}
    for I:=1 to 6 do begin           {six different character sizes}
      CharSize(I*I*0.01,0.6);       {install character size}
      move(1,I*I*I*0.4+1);          {move to a appropriate place}
      strwrite(Strng,1,J,I*I:0);    {convert number to string}
      stext(Strng+'%');              {label the string}
    end; {for i}
  end; {Error=0?}
  graphics_term;                    {terminate the graphics package}
end,                                {program "CsizeProg"}

```

The FOR loop writes lines of text on the screen with different character sizes. Incidentally, notice also the SET_WINDOW procedure. It specifies a Ymin *larger* than the Ymax. This causes the top of the screen to have a lesser Y-value than the bottom. This is perfectly legal.

Again, character cell height, when using the algorithm above, is measured in virtual coordinates, and the definition of aspect ratio for a character is identical to the definition of aspect ratio for the hard clip limits mentioned earlier: the width divided by the height. Thus, if you want short, fat letters, use an aspect ratio of 1.5 or larger. If you want tall, skinny letters, use an aspect ratio less than about 0.5. If you call the above routine:

CharSize(0.03,0.6);	Cell 3% virtual coordinate units high, aspect ratio 0.6.
CharSize(0.06,0.3);	Cell 6% virtual coordinate units high, aspect ratio 0.3 (tall and skinny).
CharSize(0.1,2);	Cell 10% virtual coordinate units high, aspect ratio 2 (short and fat).

Setting the Label's Direction

We saw in the last chapter that label could be rotated by using the DGL procedure `SET_TEXT_ROT`, which specifies angles in a run/rise format. Many people, however, deal with angles more easily than run/rise ratios. Again, the angular value is converted to run/rise numbers by taking the cosine and sine of the angle, respectively:

```
set_text_rot(cos(Angle),sin(Angle));
```

You could define a procedure for which the angle could be specified in degrees, radians, or grades¹, depending on the value of the units parameter, which, being an enumerated type, can have the value `DEG` (degrees), `RAD` (radians), or `GRAD` (grades):

```
AngleType=      (Deg, Rad, Grad);
```

The value passed in, in the unit of measure defined by the units parameter, must be converted to radians. Radians are the only units understood by the trigonometric functions in Pascal. Conversion is accomplished by a simple division. (The division could be changed to a multiply by the reciprocal. This would increase the speed with little loss of understandability.)

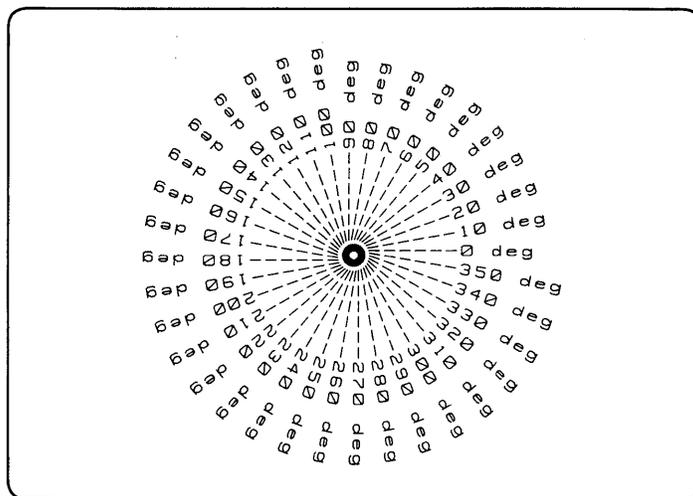
```
const
  Deg_per_rad= 57.2957795131; {180/Pi: for converting degrees to radians}
  Grad_per_rad= 63.6619772368; {200/Pi: for converting grads to radians}
  .
  .
  .
case Units of
  Deg: Direction:=Direction/Deg_per_rad;      {degrees to radians}
  Rad: ;                                       {correct units already}
  Grad: Direction:=Direction/Grad_per_rad;    {grads to radians}
end; {case}
set_text_rot(cos(CharTheta),sin(CharTheta));  {invoke the new text direction}
```

For example, assuming you call the routine `LabelDirection`, and that there is a constant called "Pi" which has a value of 3.1415926535897:

<code>LabelDirection(0,Deg);</code>	Writes label horizontally to the right.
<code>LabelDirection(Pi/2,RAD);</code>	Writes label vertically, ascending.
<code>LabelDirection(14,Grad);</code>	Writes label ascending a gentle slope, up and right.
<code>LabelDirection(Pi,Rad);</code>	Writes label upside down.
<code>LabelDirection(270,DEG);</code>	Writes label vertically, descending.

¹ One revolution = 360° = 2π radians = 400 grades.

Here is a plot demonstrating the specification of a label's direction by a genuine angle:



```

Program LdirProg;                                     {Program name same as file name}
import dgl_lib;                                       {access the necessary procedures}
const
  Crt=          3;                                     {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=     0;                                     {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  AngType=     (Deg,Rad,Grad); {used by procedure LabelDirection}
var
  Error:       integer;    {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  I,J:         integer;    {loop control variable and spare}
  Strng:       string[50]; {string to label}
  CharTheta:   real;       {global variable for label direction}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure LabelDirection(Direction: real; Units: AngType);
{-----}
{ This procedure is used in conjunction with LabelOrigin, CharSize and }
{ Glabel. It sets the labelling direction to be used, and places the }
{ direction into a global variable so Glabel can use it. }
{-----}
const
  Deg_per_rad= 57.2957795131; {180/pi: for converting degrees to radians}
  Grad_per_rad= 63.6619772368; {200/pi: for converting grads to radians}
begin
  {Procedure "LabelDirection"}
  case Units of
    Deg: Direction:=Direction/Deg_per_rad; {degrees to radians}
    Rad: ; {correct units already}
    Grad: Direction:=Direction/Grad_per_rad; {grads to radians}
  end; {case}
  CharTheta:=Direction; {Put into a global variable}
  set_text_rot(cos(CharTheta),sin(CharTheta)); {invoke the new text direction}
end; {Procedure "LabelDirection"}

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
begin                                     {body of program "LdirProg"}
graphics_init;                           {initialize graphics library}
display_init(Crt,Control,Error);         {initialize CRT}
if Error=0 then begin                    {if no error occurred...}
  set_aspect(511,389);                   {use the whole screen}
  set_window(-1,1,-1,1);                 {define appropriate window}
  set_char_size(0,05,0,08);              {set the size for the characters}
  for I:=0 to 35 do begin                {every ten degrees}
    Strng:='';                           {empty the string}
    strwrite(strng,1,J,I*10:0);           {convert the loop variable to degrees}
    Strng:='-----'+Strng+' deg';       {attach prefix and suffix}
    LabelDirection(I*10,Deg);            {specify label direction}
    move(0,0);                           {move to the center of the screen}
    stext(Strng);                         {label the text}
  end; {for I}
end; {Error=0?}
graphics_term;                            {terminate graphics library}
end.                                       {program "LdirProg"}

```

When a character size is selected whether through the DGL routine SET_CHAR_SIZE or through the utility routine CHAR_SIZE, the width and height associated with a character cell are defined for an unrotated character cell. Thus, when a character is rotated, its shape does not change, even though its width (measured along the X axis) and height (measured along the Y axis) are not the same directions as the display device's axes.

In the preceding plot, you may have noticed that the hyphens do not precisely meet in the middle. This brings up another point: when you move to a point and then write a label, which part of the label ends up at that point? In other words, how is the label justified?

Justifying Labels

On a label written by the GTEXT procedure, the label is always justified at the lower left-hand corner of the label. Unfortunately, this does not lend itself to centering text, which is often a very desirable thing. It would be nice if we could programmatically select how the label should be justified. For the progressive example we were working on in the last chapter, the main title needed to be as far toward the top of the graph as it can be, and at the same time, centered horizontally. The following addresses just this kind of need.

For horizontal centering, there are three possible choices: left-justified, centered, and right-justified. For vertical centering, there are also three choices: bottom-justified, centered, and top-justified. Thus, there are nine possible combinations of values which can be sent to the LABELJUSTIFY routine: left, centered, and right for the X direction, and for each of these, bottom, centered, and top for the Y direction.

Assume there are two enumerated types declared:

```

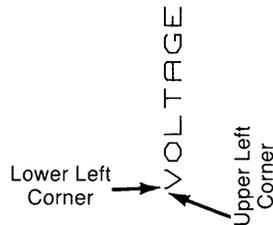
HJustifyType=(Left,HCentered,Right);
VJustifyType=(Bottom,VCentered,Top);

```

Label justification is relative to the *label*, not the plotting surface, and it is independent of the current label direction. For example, if you have specified:

- upper left label justification,
- and label direction of 90° ,
- a move to point (6,8),

and then write the label, it is written going straight up, not horizontally:



Therefore, it is the upper left corner of the label which is at point 6,8 *relative to the rotated label*. However, it is the lower left corner of the label which is at 6,8 *relative to the plotting device* because the label has been rotated.

Note that two things are obtained by calls to the INQ_WS procedure: the current pen position, and the current character size (in world coordinates).

If you are going to use the label justification scheme just described, you will need to write your own labelling routine which takes into account the current justification values. Label justification gets a little tricky when dealing with user-definable label direction, as you can see in the section of code below.

The following three global variables are assumed to exist:

- **HJustification**: The currently-defined horizontal justification. This is of the previously-mentioned type `HJustifyType`.
- **VJustification**: The currently-defined vertical justification. This is of the previously-mentioned type `HJustifyType`.
- **CharTheta**: This real variable is the current label direction, expressed in radians. We need to keep this in a global variable because there is no operation selector we can send to `INQ_WS` to determine it.

```

const
  CharSizeCode=      250;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
  CurrentPosition=  259;          {ditto}
type
  Positions=        (X,Y);
  PositionType=     array [Positions] of real;
  CharAttributes=   (Width,Height);
  CharAttrType=     array [CharAttributes] of real;

```

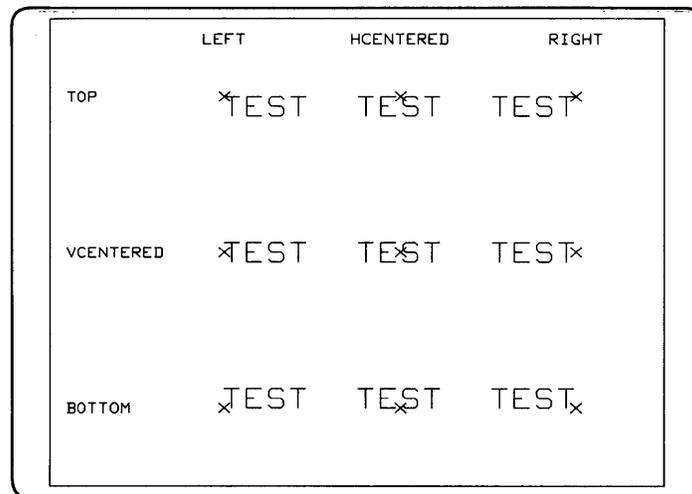
2-20 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

```

var
  Chars:          integer;
  CharSize:      CharAttrType;
  Len,Height:    real;          {length and height of character string}
  Dx,Dy:         real;
  R,Theta:       real;          {for rectangular-to-polar conversion}
  Pac:           packed array [1..1] of char;  { \ These are the   }
  Iarray:        array [1..1] of integer;      { \ sundry items     }
  Position:      PositionType;                 { / needed for the   }
  Error:         integer;                       { / call to "inq_ws"}
  .
  .
  .
  inq_ws(CharSizeCode,0,0,2,Pac,Iarray,CharSize,Error);  {get pen position}
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error',Error:0,' in "Glabel".');
  Chars:=strlen(text);
  Len:=CharSize[Width]*(7*Chars+2*(Chars-1))/9;  {length minus inter-char gap}
  Height:=CharSize[Height]*8/15;                 {height minus inter-line gap}
  Dx:=Len*(-ord(HJustification)/2);
  Dy:=Height*(-ord(VJustification)/2);
  R:=sqrt(Dx*Dx+Dy*Dy);                           { \ Convert to polar coordinates so }
  Theta:=Atan(Dy,Dx);                              { / rotation is easy,               }
  Theta:=Theta+CharTheta;                          {add the LabelDirection angle}
  Dx:=R*cos(Theta);                                { \ Convert R and the new Theta back }
  Dy:=R*sin(Theta);                                { / to rectangular coordinates.     }
  inq_ws(CurrentPosition,0,0,2,Pac,Iarray,Position,Error);  {get pen position}
  if Error=0 then begin
    move(Position[X]+Dx,Position[Y]+Dy); {move to the new starting point}
    stext(text);
  end {Error=0?}
  else writeln('Error',Error:0,' in "Glabel".');

```

And here is a program using all the label-related algorithms mentioned above.



```

Program JustProg(output);
import dgl_lib,dgl_lin;           {get graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=          3;           {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=     0;           {device control; 0 for CRT}
type
  HJustifyType=    (Left,HCentered,Right); {horizontal justification}
  VJustifyType=    (Bottom,VCentered,Top); {vertical justification}
  AngType=         (Deg,Rad,Grad); {used by procedure "LabelDirection"}
  Str255=          string[255];  {for the procedure "Glabel"}
var
  ErrorReturn:     integer;      {variable for initialization outcome}
  HJust:           HJustifyType; {horizontal justification variable}
  VJust:           VJustifyType; {vertical justification variable}
  I:               integer;      {for the strwrite statement}
  Strng:           string;        {labelled text holder}
  CharWidth,CharHeight: real;    { \ These are global variables }
  HJustification:  HJustifyType; { \ needed by the LabelJustify/ }
  VJustification:  VJustifyType; { / LabelDirection/CharSize }
  CharTheta:       real;         { / series of procedures. }
#include 'DGLPRG:ConvVtoW'$      {needed by procedure "CharSize"}
.
.
.
  Procedures Frame, CharSize, LabelDirection, LabelJustify,
  Atan, and Glabel go here.
.
.
.
begin                               {body of program "JustProg"}
graphics_init;                       {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin          {output device initialization OK?}
  set_aspect(511,389);               {use the whole screen}
  set_window(-1,2.5,-0.5,2.5);      {scale the window for the data}
  Frame;                             {draw a frame around the screen}
  CharSize(0.03,0.6);               {width=3% screen width; asp. ratio=.6}
  LabelDirection(0,Deg);             {horizontal labels}
  {==== Labels at the top =====}
  LabelJustify(HCentered,Top);      {label's reference point: top middle}
  for HJust:=Left to Right do begin {horizontal loop}
    Strng:='';                       {null the string so nothing left over}
    strwrite(Strng,1,I,HJust);       {convert enumerated type to string}
    move(ord(HJust),2.4);            {move to the appropriate place}
    Glabel(Strng);                  {label the string}
  end; {for HJust}
  {==== Labels on the left edge =====}
  LabelJustify(Left,VCentered);     {label's reference point: left middle}
  for VJust:=Top downto Bottom do begin {vertical loop}
    Strng:='';                       {null the string so nothing left over}
    strwrite(Strng,1,I,VJust);       {convert enumerated type to string}
    move(-0.9,ord(VJust));           {move to the appropriate place}
    Glabel(Strng);                  {label the string}
  end; {for VJust}
end;

```

2-22 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

```
{==== Labels ("TEST") with different Justifications =====}
CharSize(0.06,0.6);           {characters a bit bigger}
for HJust:=Left to Right do begin {horizontal loop}
  for VJust:=Top downto Bottom do begin {vertical loop}
    LabelJustify(HJust,VJust);      {set label justification}
    move(ord(HJust)+0.03,ord(VJust)+0.03); { \           }
    line(ord(HJust)-0.03,ord(VJust)-0.03); { \ Make the "x" at  }
    move(ord(HJust)-0.03,ord(VJust)+0.03); { / the appropriate  }
    line(ord(HJust)+0.03,ord(VJust)-0.03); { / Place.           }
    move(ord(HJust),ord(VJust));      {move to label's starting position}
    Glabel('TEST');                   {label the text}
  end; {for VJust}
end; {for HJust}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term;                       {terminate the graphics package}
end.                                  {Program "JustProg"}
```

The ×s indicate where the pen was moved to before labelling the word "TEST". What this diagram means is that, for example, if `LabelJustify(Left,Bottom)` is in effect, and you move to 4,5 to write a label, the lower left of that label would be at 4,5. This automatically compensates for the character size, label direction, and label length. It makes no difference whether there is an odd or even number of characters in the label. If `LabelJustify(Center,Top)` had been in effect, and you had moved to 4,5, the center of the top edge of the label would be at 4,5. You can readily see how useful this concept is in centering labels, both horizontally and vertically.

Monochromatic CRT Drawing Modes

On a monochromatic CRT, there are three different drawing modes available¹:

- Drawing dominant lines. This is the most obvious drawing mode; pixels are turned on. It is the mode the graphics package is in by default. White lines are drawn on a dark background, and dark lines are drawn on a white background.
- Erasing lines. In this mode, pixels are turned off. If a line is erased on a background which is already dark, there is no effect. This is the method for making sure a line is gone after it may or may not have been drawn.
- Complementing lines. When this type of line is drawn, pixels which are on are turned off, and pixels which are off are turned on. This is for drawing something which will be visible no matter what the background is; e.g., a graphics cursor.

The drawing modes are selected by calling the `OUTPUT_ESC` procedure. This DGL procedure allows you to control device-dependencies of output devices. The operation selector which controls drawing modes is 1052. Following is an algorithm which takes care of all the necessary variables, declarations, and all-around “housekeeping” involved in selecting a drawing mode. This implementation of the algorithm assumes the existence of the following type declaration:

```
DrawingModeType= (Dominant,Erase,Complement);
```

Here is the section of code for selecting drawing modes on a monochromatic CRT:

```
const
  SetDrawingMode=      1052;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
var
  DrawMode:           array [1..1] of integer;      { \ This is all stuff that }
  Rarray:             array [1..1] of real;         { > is needed by the }
  Error:              integer;                     { / "output_esc" procedure. }
  .
  .
  .
case Mode of
  Erase:              DrawMode[1]:=2;             { \ Convert DrawingMode enumerated }
  Dominant:           DrawMode[1]:=0;             { > type into the appropriate }
  Complement:        DrawMode[1]:=3;             { / value for OUTPUT_ESC procedure. }
end; {case}
output_esc(SetDrawingMode,1,0,DrawMode,Rarray,Error);      {set it}
if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,' in procedure "DrawingMode".');
```

A characteristic of drawing with drawing mode `Dominant` or drawing mode `Erase` is that if a line crosses a previously-drawn line, the intersection will be the same “color” as the lines themselves. When drawing with drawing mode `Complement`, and a line crosses a previously-drawn line, the intersection becomes the opposite state of the lines. In other words, the pixels being defined by the line being drawn are exclusively-ORed with the pixels already on the screen. For example, assume a black background (like right after calling `CLEAR_DISPLAY`²).

¹ There are actually four drawing modes that you can select; however, two of them, dominant and non-dominant, are identical on monochromatic displays. See the section called Writing Modes and Color in the Color Graphics chapter for a description of using non-dominant mode on color displays.

² There is a way to clear the screen to white, also. Set entry number 0 in the color table (use the `SET_COLOR_TABLE` procedure) to anything which has a luminosity greater than 0.5.

You invoke a drawing mode `Complement`, then draw a pair of intersecting lines. When the first line is drawn, all pixels are off, so the line being drawn causes all pixels to be turned on along its length. However, when the second line is drawn, it will turn on pixels until it intersects the first line. At that point, the pixel is on, so it gets turned off. After that, the rest of the pixels are off, so they are again turned on.

This concept is illustrated by the program `DrawMdPrg` (found on file “`DrawMdPrg`” on the `DGLPRG:` or `DOC:` disc). The listing is given in the appendix so you can see how it works, but since it is a dynamic display, and constantly changing, it makes little sense to show a snapshot of it. The first statement of the main program (`DrawMode:=Dominant;`) defines the type of operation the program will exhibit. If `DrawMode` equals `Complement`, all lines will complement, because the two lines in the infinite loop (the `while true` loop) which select drawing modes only modify the drawing mode if it is `Dominant` or `Erase`. Otherwise, the drawing mode is not changed. When you wish to change the program to the drawing/erasing mode, change the first statement of the main program to say `DrawMode:=Dominant;`. Then the two drawing-mode-selecting lines will select drawing modes `Erase` and `Dominant`, respectively.

In complementing mode, a pixel is on only if it has been acted upon by an odd number of line segments.

Faster Drawing Procedures

In the previous section, *CRT Drawing Modes*, the routines `INT_MOVE` and `INT_LINE` were used for moving and drawing, rather than the `MOVE` and `LINE` procedures used previously. The reason for the existence of these routines is that they exhibit higher execution speed. This increase in speed is obtained because the procedures do integer arithmetic, which is much faster than real arithmetic. The only restriction on parameters is that they must be 16-bit signed integers; that is, a subrange of `INTEGER` whose range is `-32 768` through `32 767`. There is a `TYPE` defined in the module `DGL_TYPES` called `GSHORTINT` which is this subrange of `INTEGER`.

Depending on the application, they may be up to three times faster than their counterparts which deal with real numbers. However, the increase in speed will only take place if the following three conditions are met:

- The display must be a raster device;
- The window bounds must be within the range of `-32 768` through `32 767`; and
- The window must be less than `32 767` units wide and high.

There are some more `INT-` routines available also. They are identical to the same routines without the `INT_` at the beginning of their names except for the restriction mentioned above.

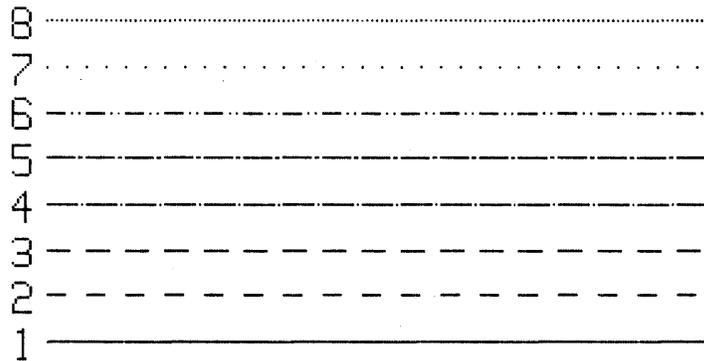
<code>MOVE</code>	→ <code>INT_MOVE</code>
<code>LINE</code>	→ <code>INT_LINE</code>
<code>POLYGON</code>	→ <code>INT_POLYGON</code>
<code>POLYGON_DEV_DEP</code>	→ <code>INT_POLYGON_DD</code>
<code>POLYLINE</code>	→ <code>INT_POLYLINE</code>

Selecting Line Styles

When a graph is attempting to convey several different kinds of information, colors are often used: the red curve signifies one thing, the blue curve signifies another thing, etc. But when only one color is available, as on a monochromatic CRT, this method cannot be used. Something that *can* be used, however, is different line styles. Even on a monochrome CRT, it makes sense to say that the solid line signifies one thing, the dotted line signifies another thing, and the dashed line signifies still another.

The DGL procedure `SET_LINE_STYLE` is used to select from the available line styles. The single argument is an integer whose value is 1 through the number of line styles supported on the device currently being used. If using an HP-GL plotter, look under the `LT` (Line Type) instruction to determine how many line styles are supported.

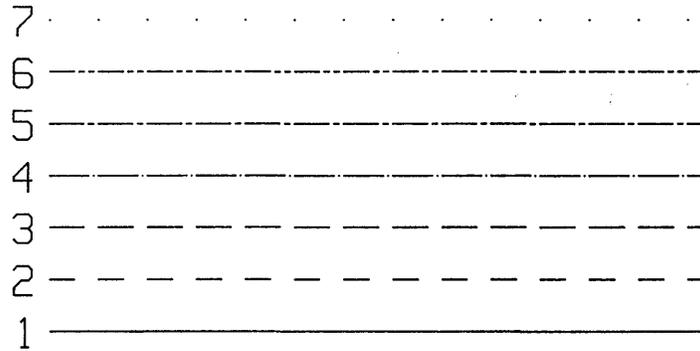
The CRT supports eight line styles:



As you can see, line style 1 draws a solid line. Line styles 2 through 8 are patterned sequences of on and off. For all line styles, the computer remembers where in the pattern a line segment ended. Therefore, when you start drawing another line segment, the line pattern will continue from where it left off. If you want the pattern to start over, just re-execute the line style procedure.

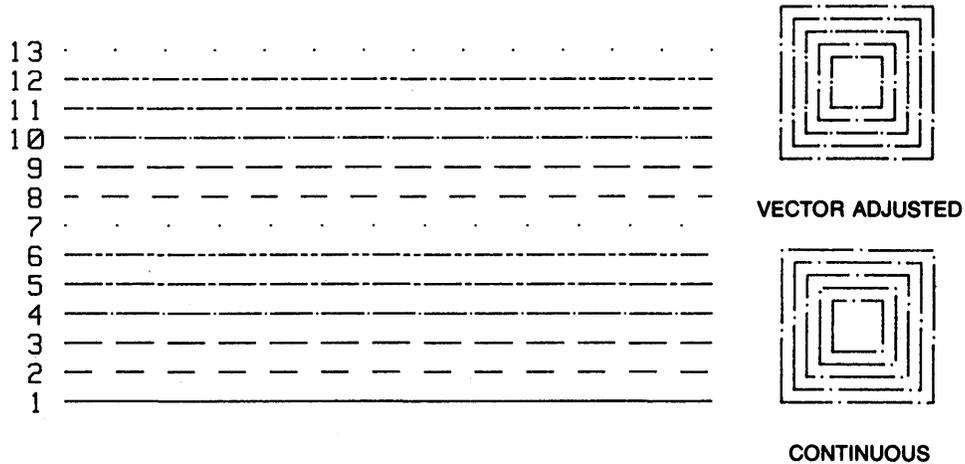
2-26 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

Plotters also have different line styles to select from. For example, the following line styles are available on the HP 9872 and HP 7470 plotters.



HP 9872 and 7470 Line Styles

As another example, the HP 7580 and HP 7585 plotters have two different ways of plotting most of their line styles: *continuous* and *vector-adjusted*. Lines drawn with a continuous line style are drawn such that every line segment drawn continues the pattern from where the previous segment left off. If a line segment is short enough and the next section of the pattern is the space between marks, there may be nothing at all drawn for a particular line segment. Vector-adjusted lines are forced to have the middle of the main drawn section at each endpoint of the line segment. See the line segments below.



HP 7580 and 7585 Line Styles

Isotropic Scaling

It was mentioned in the last chapter that there were two different types of scaling: **isotropic** and **anisotropic**. Isotropic scaling means that one unit in the X direction is equal in length to one unit in the Y direction. Anisotropic means that one unit in the X direction does not *necessarily* equal one unit in the Y direction.

We dealt with anisotropic scaling in the last chapter by calling the DGL procedure SET_WINDOW. For the task we were working on at that time, anisotropic scaling was the best choice. However, when drawing a picture of an object, or drawing a map, it is desirable to have isotropic scaling, so the representation of the object is not distorted.

There is a way to cause isotropic scaling to be invoked. First, comparisons of the aspect ratios of the viewport limits and the window limits must be made. Then some extra room is allowed in either the X direction or the Y direction (but not both). The amount of extra room is just the precise amount to cause the requested window to be isotropically scaled into the viewport.

Following is the listing of an algorithm to set a window isotropically.

```

const
  ViewportLimits=      451;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
type
  LimitOrder=      (Vxmin,Vxmax,Vymin,Vymax);
  LimitType=      array [LimitOrder] of real;
var
  Pac:             packed array [1..1] of char;   { \ ...sundry variables   }
  Iarray:         array [1..1] of integer;       { \ needed by the "inq_ws" }
  Viewport:      LimitType;                     { / procedure, called to set }
  Error:         integer;                       { / window limits,       }
  Wxrange, Wyrange:  real;   {X/Y range in window (world) coordinates}
  Vxrange, Vyrange:  real;   {X/Y range in viewport (virtual) coordinates}
  Wratio, Vratio:    real;   {aspect ratios of window and viewport}
  Wxmid, Wymid:      real;   {X/Y midpoints of window}
  WVratio, VWratio:  real;   {ratios of the ratios}
  Multiplier:       real;   {the amount to multiply the semirange by}
  .
  .
  .
inq_ws(ViewportLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Viewport,Error); {get viewport limits}
if Error<>0 then
  writeln('Error ',Error:0,' in procedure "Show".');
Wxrange:=Wxmax-Wxmin;          {range of X in desired window}
Wyrange:=Wymax-Wymin;          {range of Y in desired window}
Wratio:=Wxrange/Wyrange;       {aspect ratio of desired window}
Vxrange:=Viewport[Vxmax]-Viewport[Vxmin];  {range of X in current viewport}
Vyrange:=Viewport[Vymax]-Viewport[Vymin];  {range of Y in current viewport}
Vratio:=Vxrange/Vyrange;      {aspect ratio of viewport}
if abs(Vratio)<abs(Wratio) then begin {need more room on top and bottom}
  Wymid:=Wymid+Wyrange*0.5;     {Y midpoint in desired window}
  WVratio:=abs(Wratio/Vratio);  {ratio of aspect ratios}
  Multiplier:=Wyrange*0.5*WVratio; {what the Y range must be extended by}
  Wymid:=Wymid-Multiplier;     {new minimum Y for window}
  Wymax:=Wymid+Multiplier;    {new maximum Y for window}
end

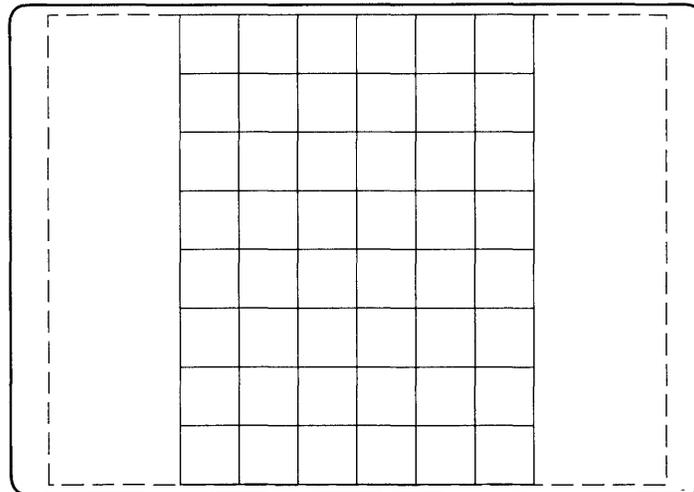
```

2-28 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

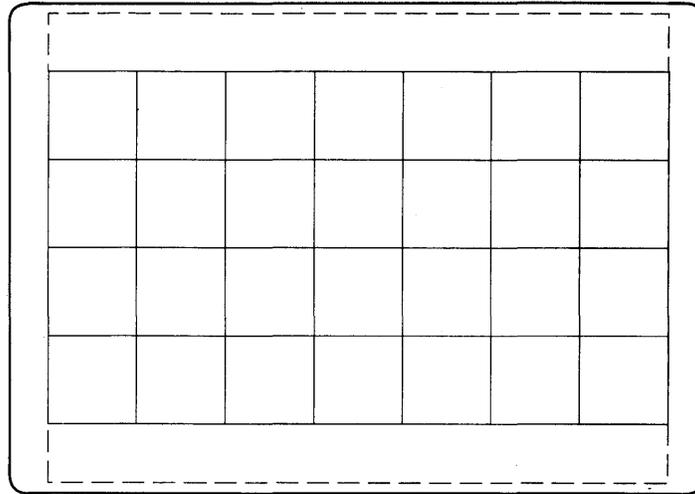
```
else begin                                     {need more room on right and left}
  Wxmid:=Wxmin+Wxrange*0.5;                   {X midpoint in desired window}
  VWratio:=abs(Vratio/Wratio);                {ratio of aspect ratios}
  Multiplier:=Wxrange*0.5*VWratio;            {what the X range must be extended by}
  Wxmin:=Wxmid-Multiplier;                   {new minimum X for window}
  Wxmax:=Wxmid+Multiplier;                   {new maximum X for window}
end; {vratio<wratio?}
set_window(Wxmin,Wxmax,Wymin,Wymax);        {set window with twiddled parameters}
```

Following are two example outputs from the program "IsoProg" (found on a file of the same name on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc) which demonstrates the isotropic scaling routine. The user is asked to specify Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, and Ymax for the isotropic units. The specified area is mapped into the viewport area isotropically, adding extra space to either the X or Y direction, whichever is needed. There is a dotted-line frame around the screen limits, and the requested limits are shown in a solid-line grid. The space added is outside the solid-line grid. In both cases, the whole screen was used for the viewport.

In the first example, the requested values were 0 to 6 in X, and 0 to 8 in Y. Since the aspect ratio of this window is less than the aspect ratio of the viewport, some extra room is needed in the X direction, as shown.



In the next example, the requested values were 0 to 7 in X, and 0 to 4 in Y. Since the aspect ratio of this window is greater than the aspect ratio of the viewport, some extra room is needed in the Y direction, as shown.



The program that produced the two preceding outputs is listed in the appendix.

Axes and Grids

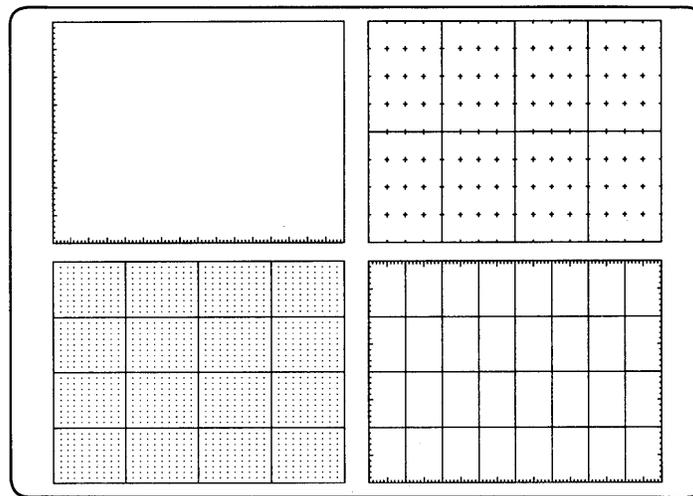
For many data-display graphs, axes along the edges are sufficient to get the message across. But if your graph needs to be read with more precision than axes afford, you can use a grid. A grid is a logical extension to axes, with some differences. The differences are:

- The major tick marks extend all the way across the clip limits, and
- The minor tick marks intersect in small crosses over the entire surface of the soft clip limits.

There is a program called "AxesGrid" on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc which will help you understand how to write your own grid-drawing routine. It is similar to the axis procedures, except for the two differences noted above: the major ticks extend across the entire soft clip area (it calls CLIPDRAW), and the minor ticks for X and Y intersect in little crosses between the grid lines.

The following program shows the differences between:

- a pair of axes by themselves,
- a sparse grid,
- a dense grid, and
- a sparse grid with two pair of axes.



Note that some care must be taken to ensure that the minor tick marks in a grid are smaller than the distance between them. If they are not, the minor tick crosses drawn by the grid procedure would have overlapped. The end result would have been a grid with even the minor ticks extending all the way across the soft clip area.

As the lower left graph shows, there is a way to get the best of both worlds—accurate interpolation and lack of clutter. If you want to be able to estimate the data values very accurately from the finished plot, but also want to prevent the plot from appearing too “busy”, or cluttered, it can be done. The grid drawn has somewhat sparse major tick marks, but very many minor tick marks. The point of interest is that the minor tick length parameter is reduced to virtually zero. This causes the tick crosses (the little plus signs) to be reduced to mere dots. Using this strategy allows easy interpolation of data points (to the same accuracy as typically used in axes), but does not clutter the graph nearly as much as normal ticks would. In fact, had we used the previous minor tick length, the length of the lines making up the tick crosses would have been greater than the distance between the ticks. Thus, they would have merged together to make solid lines, extending all the way across the graph. This would greatly clutter the graph.

Be aware when using this strategy of making huge numbers of degenerate tick crosses that the computer still thinks of them as crosses, which means that both the horizontal and vertical components must be drawn. This looks to you like drawing and then redrawing each dot. Therefore, when sending this type of grid to a hard-copy plotter, do not be averse to starting your plot, and then going on vacation.

In the lower right quarter of the plot, there is another way to reach a compromise between ease of interpolation and lack of clutter. Axes are used on all four edges, and a sparse grid is drawn with major tick marks every second of the axes' major tick marks.

Note that *two* pairs of axes were drawn. The parameters are identical save for the position of the intersection. The first pair of axes intersect at the lower left corner of the soft clip area. The second pair of axes intersect at the upper right corner of the soft clip area.

Also note that when a grid is drawn, the frame around the window can usually be removed (depending on the Major Tick Count); the lines around the soft clip limits were being drawn by grid procedure anyway.

All of the above have advantages; there is no one approach which is always best. On many occasions, an application is defined such that there is no question as to which procedure to use. Other times, however, it is not such a cut-and-dried situation and you want to weigh the alternatives carefully before setting your program in concrete. To aid you in the decision, here are some pros and cons to the approaches above.

Advantages to axes:

- Axes execute much faster than grids. This is for two reasons. First, there is much less calculating the computer must do, and second (and more important), there is much less actual drawing of lines the computer must do. This becomes especially evident when sending a plot to a hard-copy plotting device where physical pen must be hauled around.
- It does not clutter the plot as much. Reference points are available at the axes, but there is no question about where the data curve is. When using a grid, it is possible to lose the data curve among the reference lines if it is close to being horizontal or vertical.

Advantages to grids:

- Interpolation and estimation are much more accurate due to the great number of reference ticks and lines; one need not estimate horizontal and vertical lines to refer back to the axis labels.
- Usually there is no need to explicitly draw a frame around the grid area to completely enclose the soft clip limits, as is often desired, because the major tick marks from the GRID procedure would probably redraw the lines. Of course, this is dependent upon the Major Tick count.

Logarithmic Plotting

In many fields, there are ranges of valid values which are so large that not only is isotropic scaling out of the question, but any kind of linear scaling—even anisotropic—is virtually useless. To successfully depict these kinds of data, one or both of the axes can be logarithmic scales; that is, the data points themselves are not plotted, but the *logarithm* of each data point is plotted. For example:

- In seismology, earthquake intensity is measured in the logarithmic Richter scale.
- In acoustics, both sound intensity (decibels) and frequency (octaves) are dealt with in logarithmic scales.
- In astronomy, a Hertzsprung-Russell diagram graphs both the luminosities and surface temperatures of stars logarithmically.
- Also in astronomy, black-body radiation curves are plotted logarithmically.

For logarithmic plots, logarithms (from here on referred to as *logs*) to the base 10 are most often used¹.

Homemade Mathematical Functions

To deal with logs, we need to write two mathematical routines which are not provided in the language.

Taking a Number to a Power

First, we need to be able to exponentiate—take an arbitrary number to an arbitrary power. We can use an identity function of logarithms to do this:

$$x^y = e^{y \ln(x)}$$

This is easily done since Pascal does have functions to return the log and antilog² in the Napierian³ base *e*. The function to return the natural log is LN, and the function for returning the natural antilog—*e* to a power—is EXP.

¹ An exception to this is the frequency example in acoustics mentioned above, in which octaves deal with powers of two.

² The $\log_{10} 1000 = 3$ because $10^3 = 1000$. The $\text{antilog}_{10} 3 = 1000$ because $10^3 = 1000$.

³ The Napierian base *e* is the base of natural logarithms. Its value is $1/0! + 1/1! + 1/2! + 1/3! + 1/4! \dots$ and equals approximately 2.718 281 828.

The Logarithm to Any Base

The next function is slightly more complex. We needed a function to calculate the common logarithm (log to the base 10). We used another identity function of logarithms which allows one to calculate the log of any positive number to *any* positive base not equal to 1—even fractional ones. We used a special case of this to calculate the common logarithm, or log to the base 10:

$$y = \ln(x)/\ln(b)$$

Since this allows us to calculate the log of any (positive) number to any (positive) base not equal to 1, we will define the base to be 10. Now we can deal with common logarithms.

Back to Logarithmic Axes...

When you are doing logarithmic axes using logs to the base 10, you need to specify the minimum and maximum in *decades*. For example, say you want to make logarithmic axes from 0.01 to 1000. This is 10^{-2} to 10^3 , therefore, there will be five decades represented. To draw a logarithmic X axis:

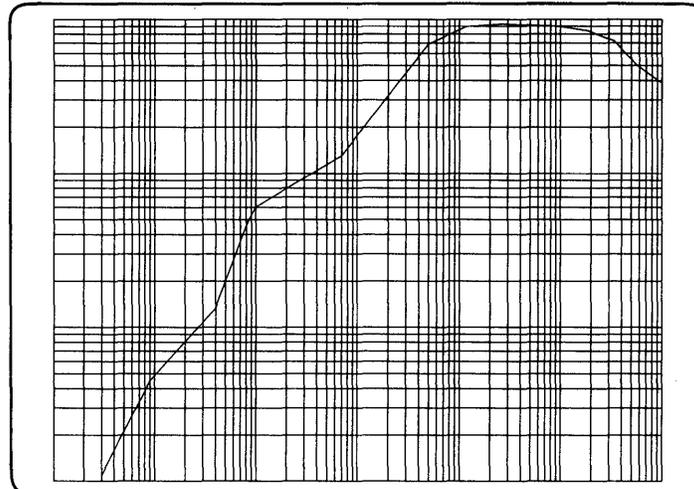
```
for Decade:=-2 to 3 do begin
  if Decade<3 then UnitMax:=9
  else UnitMax:=1;
  for Units:=1 to UnitMax do begin
    X:=Decade+Log10(Units);
    move(X,Ymin);
    draw(X,Ymax);
  end; {for Units}
end; {for Decade}
```

The statement starting “if Decade<3” is there because we want the units to go from 1 to 9¹ for every decade except the last one, for which we only want the integral power of ten.

¹ Each decade goes from 1 to 9, not from 1 to 10, because 10 will be covered by the first iteration on the next decade.

2-34 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

Following is a short program (found on file "LogPlot" on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc) which draws logarithmic grid, and plots a curve on it. A logarithmic grid is merely a logarithmic axis with long tick marks.



```
Program LogPlot(keyboard,output);
import dgl_lib;
const
  Xmin=      -4;           { \
  Xmax=      2;           { \ Decade minima
  Ymin=      0;           { / and maxima,
  Ymax=      3;           { /
  Crt=       3;           {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=   0;           {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  RDataType= array [1..15] of real;
const
  Xvalues=   RDataType[0.0003, 0.0009, 0.004, 0.008, 0.01, 0.07, 0.22, 0.5,
                    1.2, 2.6, 8.9, 18.6, 34, 56, 97];
  Yvalues=   RDataType[1.1, 4.5, 13.38, 45.9, 60.33, 130.7, 346, 690.4,
                    899, 933, 903, 841, 720, 505, 390];
var
  Error:     integer;     {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  Decade:    integer;
  Units, UpperLimit: integer;
  X, Y:      real;
  I:         integer;
```

```

$Page$ {*****}
function Log10(X: real): real;
{-----}
{ This function returns the logarithm to the base ten of a number. }
{-----}
const
  Log_10=      2.30258509299;      {log to the base e of 10}
begin
  Log10:=ln(X)/Log_10;           {function "Log10"}
end;
$Page$ {*****}
begin
  graphics_init;                {initialize the graphics system}
  display_init(Crt,Control,Error);
  if Error=0 then begin
    set_aspect(511,389);
    set_window(Xmin,Xmax,Ymin,Ymax);
    {==== Draw and label logarithmic X-axis grid =====}
    for Decade:=Xmin to Xmax do begin {one decade equals one mantissa cycle}
      if Decade=Xmax then UpperLimit:=1
      else UpperLimit:=9;
      for Units:=1 to UpperLimit do begin {do 2-9 if not last cycle}
        X:=Decade+Log10(Units);
        move(X,Ymin);
        line(X,Ymax);
      end; {for units}
    end; {for decade}
    {==== Draw and label logarithmic Y-axis grid =====}
    for Decade:=Ymin to Ymax do begin {one decade equals one mantissa cycle}
      if Decade=Ymax then UpperLimit:=1
      else UpperLimit:=9;
      for Units:=1 to UpperLimit do begin {do 2-9 if not last cycle}
        Y:=Decade+Log10(Units);
        move(Xmin,Y);
        line(Xmax,Y);
      end; {for units}
    end; {for decade}
    {==== Draw the logarithmic data curve =====}
    for I:=1 to 15 do begin
      if I=1 then move(Log10(XValues[I]),Log10(Yvalues[I]))
      else line(Log10(XValues[I]),Log10(Yvalues[I]));
    end; {for i}
  end; {Error=0?}
  graphics_term;
end.
{end of conditional code}
{terminate graphics library}
{Program "LogPlot"}

```

Storing and Retrieving Images

If a picture on the screen takes a long time to draw, or the image is used often, it may be advisable to store the image itself — not the commands used to draw the image — in memory or on a file.

Note

Because the location of the various Series 300 frame buffers may vary, storing and retrieving images on these models is somewhat more complex and exceeds the scope of this manual. Therefore, application of the GSTORE procedure to these is not discussed here.

Image transfer from the graphics memory to a user array can be done by overlaying an array directly on top of the graphics memory, i.e., forcing the starting address of a user array to be the same as the starting address of the graphics memory. The user array is also the same size as the graphics memory. First, you must have an INTEGER array (32-bit integers) of sufficient size to hold all the data in the graphics raster. This amounts to an array size of 7500¹ on the Models 216, 220, and 226; 6240 on the Models 217 and 236. This array holds the picture itself, and it doesn't care how the information got to the screen, or in what order the different parts of the picture were produced.

In the program called "GstorProg" (located on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc), an image is drawn with normal plotting commands, and then, *after the fact*, the image is read from the graphics area in memory, and placed into the user array, using the procedure GSTORE. After the array is filled by the GSTORE procedure, a curve is plotted on top of the image already there. Then, turning the knob changes the value of a parameter, and a different curve results. *But we do not have to replot the grid, axes, and labels.* We merely need to copy the data containing the image (which has everything but the curve and the current parameter value) back into graphics memory by calling the inverse procedure, GLOAD. This allows the curve to be changed almost in real time. Note that only the size of the data array must be decreased if this is to work on a Model 216, 220 or 226. If this is to work on other computers, both the array size must be increased (because of the increased array size) and it must be accessed dynamically — the NEW statement and pointers.

Note that the \$SYSPROG ON\$ compiler directive must be in the program. The reason for this is that we are using the compiler's ability to force an array to be in a particular area in memory. We declare an integer array whose location in memory is exactly that of the graphics raster memory. Thus, when we deal with the array, we are dealing with the graphics memory, which has the current image in it.

¹ The reason the lower-resolution displays require more memory for image storage than the higher-resolution displays is that the Models 216, 220, and 226 use only the odd bytes of the words. Thus, only the least significant eight bits of each sixteen-bit word are used; the most significant eight bits are zeroes.

To write a program such as this, which stores a graphical image and reloads it, there are several housekeeping things which must be done. First, you must know where in the physical memory of the machine the graphics memory resides:

The Graphics Memory Address and the Graphics Memory Size in your machine is dependent on the model. Find them in the following table.

Model	Address	Size
216/220/226	\$530000	7500
217/236	\$530000	6240

The addresses are expressed in hexadecimal and the sizes are expressed in 32-bit integers.

After locating the address and size of the graphics memory, two constants must be defined. The address:

```
const
  GRasterAddr=      hex('530000');
```

Then, how large the graphics memory is (the size of the graphics raster is expressed in 32-bit words):

```
const
  GRasterSize=      6240;
```

Now, we must declare a type of which the variable being overlaid on the graphics memory will be:

```
type
  GRasterType=      array [1..GRasterSize] of integer;
```

Next, overlay a variable directly on top of the graphics memory. The constant in the brackets immediately after the variable name forces the address of that variable to the specified location in memory. This can only be done if the \$SYSPROG ON\$ compiler directive has been encountered.

```
var
  GRaster[GRasterAddr]:  GRasterType;
```

And finally, the user's variable into which the graphics memory will be placed. Although it is of the same type as the variable GRaster above, we will let the machine figure out where to put it:

```
Screen:                GRasterType;
```

2-38 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

After all these declaration have been set up, it is a trivial matter to store the graphics image into the user array:

```
Gstore(Screen);
```

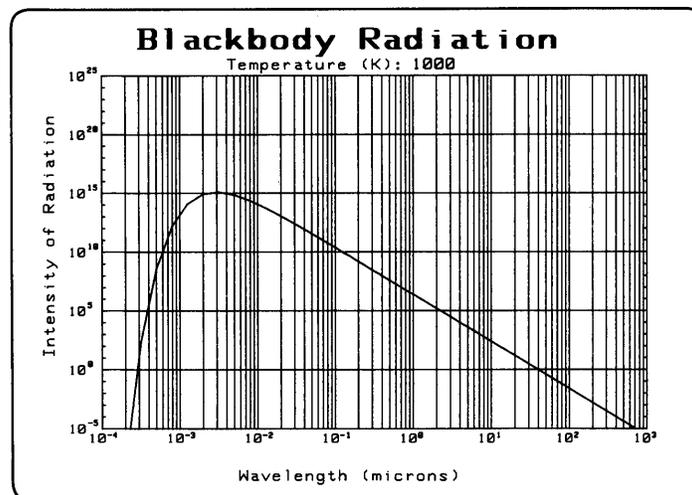
Loading a screen image is just as trivial:

```
Gload(Screen);
```

Again, this program is on file "GstorProg" on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc, and a listing of the program is in the appendix. It stores and reloads the graphics image to and from a user array. Of course, it also defines the necessary support constants, types, and variables for the GLOAD and GSTORE routines. It draws a blackbody radiation curve for the current temperature.

Note that this program puts into use many of the concepts previously discussed in this chapter:

- Conversion from virtual coordinates to world coordinates;
- Specifying character size with a size in virtual coordinates and an aspect ratio, angular specification of label direction, and label justification;
- Turning the alpha raster off (nonbit-mapped displays)
- Logarithmic axes and grid;
- Image storage and retrieval.

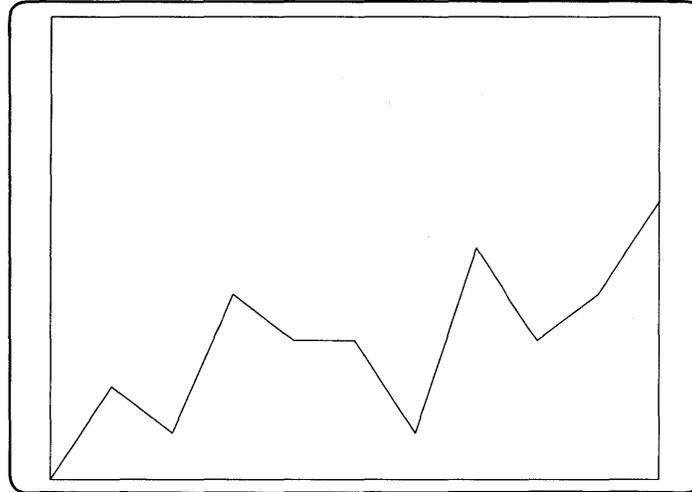


The first time the curve is displayed, it will look like the preceding display. Every time you hit a digit key, a new curve will be drawn, based on the current value of `TEMPERATURE`.

Data-Driven Plotting

Many Lines in One Step

In the cases where the data to be plotted is in arrays, it can be plotted in one statement by using the POLYLINE procedure. The X data must be in one array, and the Y data in another array. Both arrays must be one-dimensional arrays of reals. Below is a program showing how to plot an X data array versus a Y data array.



```

Program PLineProg(output);
import dgl_lib,dgl_inq;
const
  CrtAddr=          3;
  ControlWord=      0;
type
  RDataType=        array [0..10] of real;
const
  Xvalues=           RDataType[0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10];
  Yvalues=           RDataType[0,2,1,4,3,3,1,5,3,4,6];
var
  ErrorReturn:      integer;
  X, Y:             RDataType;
$Page$ {*****}
begin
  {Program "PLineProg"}
  graphics_init;
  display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn);
  if ErrorReturn=0 then begin
    set_aspect(511,389);
    set_window(0,10,0,10);
    move(0,0); line(0,10); line(10,10); line(10,0); line(0,0);
    X:=Xvalues; Y:=Yvalues;
    polyline(11,X,Y);
  end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
  graphics_term;
end,
  {Program "PLineProg"}

```

Note that the X data need not be steadily increasing values so as to make a broken-line chart like above. It could just as easily be used for drawing pictures of objects where both X and Y vary in an unpredictable way. However, if both X and Y are going to change, you'll probably want to be able to control the pen status—you'll want to lift the pen and drop the pen at will.

Drawing Multi-Line Objects

Often, when plotting data points, they do not form a continuous line like the broken-line charts we've seen before. One must have the ability to control the pen's status (up or down), to allow drawing of several different, disconnected parts of an image in one step. For this need, there is a DGL procedure called POLYGON. The fourth parameter in the POLYGON procedure is the operation selector, and its function is to tell the computer to draw or not draw a particular line. It also specifies where individual polygons start.

When plotting an entire array with the polygon statement, the fourth parameter is defined in the following manner. It must be of type INTEGER. The resultant action for the various operation selectors are:

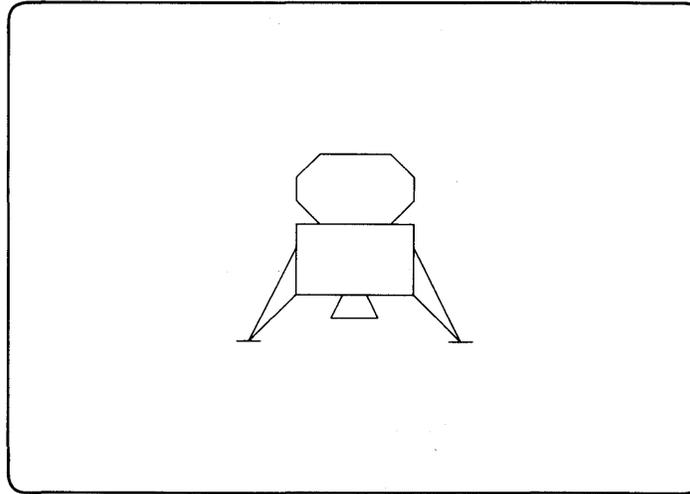
Polygon Operation Selectors

Operation Selector	Resultant Action
0	Do not draw the edge extending from the last vertex to this one.
1	Draw the edge extending from the last vertex to this vertex.
2	This vertex is the first vertex of a member polygon.

Note

Although the POLYGON procedure heading declares the incoming arrays to be of type GREAL_LIST or GSHORTINT_LIST, you cannot declare your own variables this way. Declare your variables as your own data type: arrays of the appropriate size of reals and short integers (16-bit integers; i.e., -32768..32767). If you import the module DGL-TYPES, you can use the type GSHORTINT.

Following is a program (file "PolyProg" on DGLPRG: or DOC: disc) which uses the POLYGON procedure. It draws a LEM (Lunar Excursion Module). The first parameter specifies how many points there are in the arrays. There are three arrays used: two one-column REAL arrays for the X and Y data, and a one-column INTEGER array containing opcodes.



```

Program PolyProg(output);           {program name same as file name}
import
  dgl_lib,dgl_types,dgl_Poly,dgl_Line; {access the necessary procedures}
const
  MaxPoints=      27;                {number of points in arrays}
  Crt=            3;                 {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=       0;                 {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  Reals=          array [1..MaxPoints] of real;  {to contain X and Y values}
  Word=          -32768..32767;                {16-bit word}
  Integers=      array [1..MaxPoints] of Word;  {to contain op. selectors}
const
  Xvalues=       Reals[ 1.5, 2.5, 2.5, 1.5,-1.5,-2.5,-2.5,-1.5, {Octagon}
                  -2.5, 2.5, 2.5,-2.5,-2.5,
                  -2.5,-4.5,-2.5,-5.0,-4.0,    {Box}
                  2.5, 4.5, 2.5, 5.0, 4.0,     {Left leg}
                  -0.5,-1.0, 1.0, 0.5];       {Right leg}
                  {Nozzle}
  Yvalues=       Reals[ 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 4.0, 3.0, 2.0, 1.0, {Octagon}
                  1.0, 1.0,-2.0,-2.0, 1.0,    {Box}
                  -2.0,-4.0, 0.0,-4.0,-4.0,   {Left leg}
                  -2.0,-4.0, 0.0,-4.0,-4.0,   {Right leg}
                  -2.0,-3.0,-3.0,-2.0];       {Nozzle}
  Opcodes=       Integers[2,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,    {Octagon}
                          2,1,1,1,1,         {Box}
                          2,1,1,2,1,        {Right leg}
                          2,1,1,2,1,        {Left leg}
                          2,1,1,1];         {Nozzle}
var
  Error:         integer;                {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  I:             integer;                {loop control variable}
  LemX, LemY:    Reals;                  {so we can pass it to "Polygon"}
  OPSelectors:   Integers;               {ditto}
  Points:        integer;                {ditto}

```

```

$page$ {*****}
begin                                     {body of Program "PolyProg"}
LemX:=Xvalues;                            { \ Put into variable array so }
LemY:=Yvalues;                            { > it can be passed by }
OpSelectors:=OpCodes;                    { / reference into the DGL proc.}
Points:=MaxPoints;                       {put constant into an array variable}
graphics_init;                           {initialize graphics library}
display_init(Crt,Control,Error);         {initialize CRT}
if Error=0 then begin                    {if no error occurred...}
  set_aspect(511,389);                   {use the whole screen}
  set_window(-13,13,-10,10);             {invoke isotropic units}
  polygon(Points,LemX,LemY,OpSelectors); {draw the lines}
end; {Error=0?}                          {end of conditional code}
graphics_term;                            {terminate graphics library}
end. {Program "PolyProg"}                {end of Program}

```

What's in a Polygon?

That's a good question, and brings up the crucial difference between POLYGON and POLYGON_DEV_DEP (as well as the INT versions of the same). The key to understanding the two classes of polygon is the concept of device independence. Polygons generated by procedures that lack the DEV_DEP (or DD) suffix are device independent, and will always be filled, with as close to the fill specified by the polygon table (lines or crosshatched lines at some specified density) as the device they are being drawn on is capable of producing. Thus the lines used for a fill on a CRT may have visible jaggies, and the lines used on a 7580 plotter will not, but both of them will produce polygons filled with lines.

So what happens with POLYGON_DEV_DEP? The "DEV_DEP" calls specify a device dependent polygon. The fastest, most appropriate fill possible on the device is used to fill a polygon. On the CRT, this is a dithered area fill (dithering is discussed in detail in the "Color" chapter). On the plotter, the edge is drawn with the current line color attribute if edge is specified in the operation selector array and enabled in the polygon table. If the polygon edge attribute is false and the operation selector edge attribute is true, the polygon edge is drawn with the current polygon interior color attribute and polygon linestyle. It is worth noting that in this case, if the current polygon interior color attribute is set to 0 (the background in the color table), the polygon will not be visible.

When to Use Which Polygon?

Why are there two polygon fills? The two polygon calls address different valuable characteristics of the system. The POLYGON call tries to give a consistent representation, regardless of what display device is being used. The POLYGON_DEV_DEP calls are faster. You give up consistency by using the device dependent calls, as well as control of drawing mode (all device dependent polygons are drawn in the dominant writing mode). The choice is yours; if you want speed or control of drawing mode, use the device dependent calls—if you want consistent presentation of the image and/or control of the drawing mode, use the device independent call.

Polygon Filling

When drawing a polygon, whether it is filled or not is an *attribute* of the polygon. The filling attribute itself has other attributes; namely, method (dithered/hatched), density (0-100%), and, if hatched, hatching direction (-90° - 90°) and perpendiculars (true/false).

Polygons can be filled two different ways. Filling allows you to shade the polygons to various shades of gray.

The first method of filling is to draw lines across the polygons; crosshatching. This is selected with the SET_PGN_STYLE procedure. Various densities of shading can be achieved through crosshatching, depending on both of the following:

- The amount of space between the crosshatching lines; and
- Whether or not there are perpendiculars.

The other method of shading on a monochromatic CRT is called **dithering**. Dithering is a more accurate way to get shades of gray on a black-and-white CRT whose electron gun is either fully on or completely off. Dithering is accomplished through selecting small groups of pixels¹, a four-by-four square of them on the Series 200/300 computers. Various pixels in the dithering box are turned on and off to arrive at an “average” shade of gray. There are only seventeen possible shades because out of sixteen pixels (the 4×4 box); you can have none of them on, one of them on, two of them on, and so forth, up to all sixteen of them on. And it makes no difference *which* pixels are on; the pattern for each level is chosen to minimize the striped or polka-dotted pattern inherent to a dithered image.

Crosshatching is accomplished by drawing many lines, and lines are drawn taking into account the current drawing mode (dominant, erase, or complement). One reason that this is important is that you can draw a complementing cursor with a call to the POLYGON procedure. Dithering does not deal with lines, therefore, the current drawing mode is ignored when doing a dithered fill.

Note

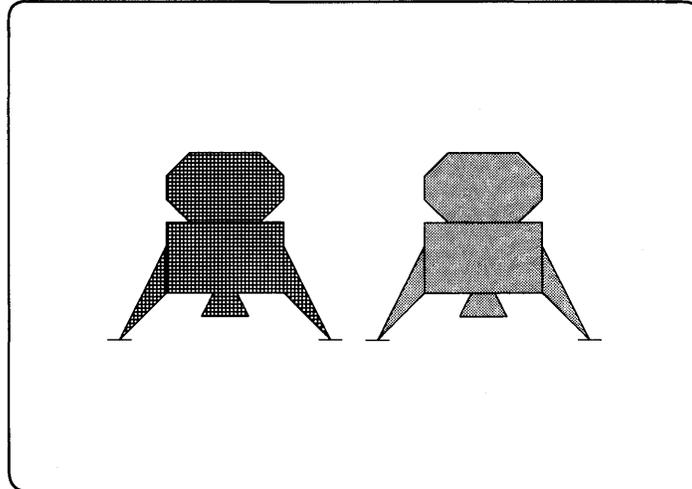
Polygons to be filled which extended over the edge of the plotting surface are completely filled-including all the area off the plotting surface. If a great deal of the polygon is invisible, then, it may appear that the machine is hung², but in reality, it is merely doing a lot of calculations which do not affect the visible image at all.

¹ The word “pixel” is a blend of the two words “picture element,” and it is the smallest addressable point on a plotting surface. A Model 236 computer has 512×390 -pixel resolution; thus there can be no more than 512 dots drawn on any row of the CRT, or 390 dots drawn in any column.

² “Hung,” in this context, is short for “hung up.” It is a computerese term which means that the machine has entered a state, usually unanticipated, in which the machine becomes unresponsive, and drastic measures are often required to correct it.

2-44 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

Here is another program which draws the LEM, and fills the polygons in two different ways. On the left, it is filled by crosshatching; on the right, it is filled by dithering.



```

Program FillProg(output);           {Program name same as file name}
import
  dgl_lib,dgl_types,dgl_poly,dgl_line; {access the necessary procedures}
const
  MaxPoints=      27;               {number of points in arrays}
  Crt=            3;                {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=       0;                {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  Reals=          array [1..MaxPoints] of real;  {to contain X and Y values}
  Word=          -32768..32767;             {16-bit word}
  Integers=      array [1..MaxPoints] of Word;  {to contain op. selectors}
const
  Xvalues=       Reals[ 1.5, 2.5, 2.5, 1.5,-1.5,-2.5,-2.5,-1.5, {Octagon}
                  -2.5, 2.5, 2.5,-2.5,-2.5,
                  -2.5,-4.5,-2.5,-5.0,-4.0,    {Box}
                  2.5, 4.5, 2.5, 5.0, 4.0,     {Left leg}
                  -0.5,-1.0, 1.0, 0.5];       {Right leg}
  Yvalues=       Reals[ 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 4.0, 3.0, 2.0, 1.0, {Octagon}
                  1.0, 1.0,-2.0,-2.0, 1.0,   {Box}
                  -2.0,-4.0, 0.0,-4.0,-4.0,  {Left leg}
                  -2.0,-4.0, 0.0,-4.0,-4.0,  {Right leg}
                  -2.0,-3.0,-3.0,-2.0];       {Nozzle}
  OpCodes=       Integers[2,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,   {Octagon}
                          2,1,1,1,1,        {Box}
                          2,1,1,2,1,        {Right leg}
                          2,1,1,2,1,        {Left leg}
                          2,1,1,1];         {Nozzle}
var
  Error:         integer;             {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  I:             integer;             {loop control variable}
  LemX, LemY:   Reals;               {so we can pass it to "Polygon"}
  OpSelectors:  Integers;            {ditto}
  Points:      integer;             {ditto}

```

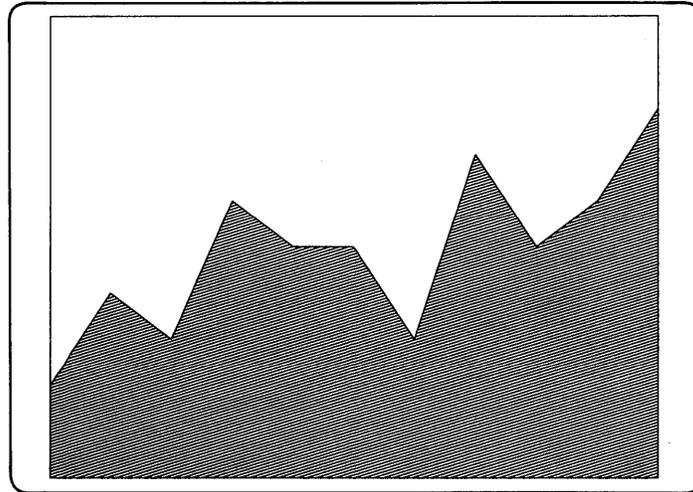
```

$Page$ {*****}
begin                                     {body of program "FillProg"}
LemX:=Xvalues;                           { \ Put into variable array so }
LemY:=Yvalues;                           { > it can be passed by       }
OPSelectors:=OPCodes;                   { / reference into the DGL Proc.}
Points:=MaxPoints;                      {put constant into an array variable}
graphics_init;                          {initialize graphics library}
display_init(Crt,Control,Error);        {initialize CRT}
if Error=0 then begin                   {if no error occurred...}
  set_aspect(511,389);                  {use the whole screen}
  set_window(-7.5,18.5,-10,10);         {invoke isotropic units}
  set_pgn_style(14);                    {crosshatched fill}
  polygon(Points,LemX,LemY,OPSelectors); {draw the lines}
  set_window(-18.5,7,-10,10);          {invoke isotropic units}
  set_pgn_table(14,0.51,0,1);          {set the "do a fill" flag}
  set_color_table(1,0.125,0.125,0.125); {specify 12.5% gray scale}
  set_pgn_color(1);                    {use specified "color"}
  polygon_dev_dep(Points,LemX,LemY,OPSelectors); {draw the lines}
end; {Error=0?}                        {end of conditional code}
graphics_term;                          {terminate graphics library}
end. {Program "FillProg"}              {end of program}

```

Shading Graphs

Two previously-mentioned concepts can be combined to make broken-line charts which are filled. That is, you can consider the curve on the graph as edges of a polygon (along with the lower corners of the viewport), and fill the area with shading. Below is a short program which demonstrates the combined concepts. The program is found on file "FillGraph" on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc.



```

Program FillGraph(output);
import dgl_lib, dgl_types, dgl_poly;
const
  CrtAddr=          3;
  ControlWord=      0;
type
  RDataType=        array [0..12] of real;
  WDataType=        array [0..12] of -32768..32767;
const
  Xvalues=          RDataType[0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,10,0];
  Yvalues=          RDataType[2,4,3,6,5,5,3,7,5,6,8,0,0];
  OperationSelectors= WDataType[2,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1];
var
  ErrorReturn:      integer;
  X, Y:             RDataType;
  OpSel:            WDataType;

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
begin                                     {Program "FillGraph"}
graphics_init;
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn);
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin
  set_aspect(511,389);
  set_window(0,10,0,10);
  move(0,0); line(0,10); line(10,10); line(10,0); line(0,0);
  X:=Xvalues;   Y:=Yvalues;   OPsel:=OperationSelectors;
  set_Pgn_table(1,0,333,17,34,1);
  set_Pgn_style(1);
  polygon(13,X,Y,OPsel);
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term;
end.                                     {Program "FillGraph"}

```

Note that the two lower corners of the graph must be included in the definition of the polygon. The shading is done with hatching lines, and the angle of those lines is deliberately a strange angle to point out that you are not restricted to multiples of 45° for the hatching lines. If the plot is to come out on a CRT, dithering may be used instead.

If the shading is going to be done with hatching lines, you may want to perform a linear regression on the data points. Then, you can indicate the overall trend of the data by defining the slope of the hatching lines to be the angle determined by the linear regression.

Highlighting Data Curves

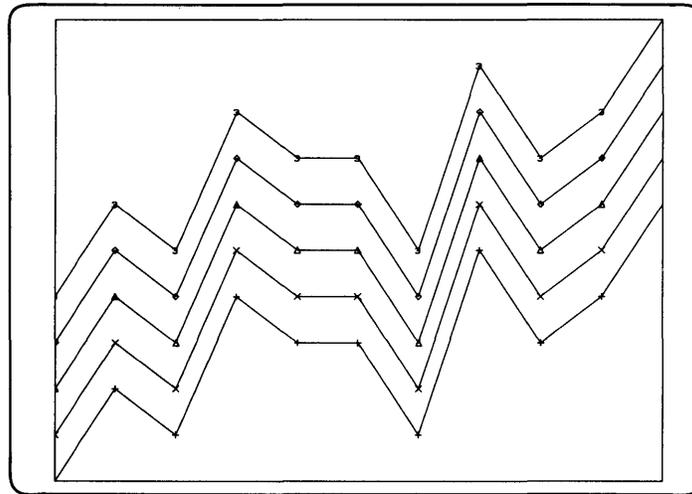
You can note the location of the starting points of line segments by using the MARKER procedure. When the procedure is called, it outputs a marker of whatever type you selected. The valid values and what types of markers they output are listed below:

Marker Number	Resulting Shape	Marker Number	Resulting Shape
<1	•	10	0
1	•	11	1
2	+	12	2
3	*	13	3
4	O	14	4
5	X	15	5
6	△	16	6
7	□	17	7
8	◇	18	8
9	⊠	19	9

Marker numbers greater than 20 are device dependent. If the specified marker is larger than the number of marker the device supports, a dot (marker selector 1) will be used.

2-48 Miscellaneous Graphics Concepts

Below is a program and its output which shows how to use the MARKER procedure. The program can be found on the file "MarkrProg" on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc.



```

Program MarkrProg(output);
import dgl_lib,dgl_line;
const
  CrtAddr=          3;
  ControlWord=      0;
type
  MarkerNumType=    array [0..4] of integer;
  DataType=         array [0..10] of integer;
const
  MarkerNumber=     MarkerNumType[2,5,6,8,13];
  Data=             DataType[0,2,1,4,3,3,1,5,3,4,6];
var
  ErrorReturn:      integer;
  I, J:             integer;
$page$ {*****}
begin
  {Program "MarkrProg"}
  graphics_init;
  display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn);
  if ErrorReturn=0 then begin
    set_aspect(511,389);
    set_window(0,10,0,10);
    move(0,0); line(0,10); line(10,10); line(10,0); line(0,0);
    for I:=0 to 4 do begin
      for J:=0 to 10 do begin
        if J<>0 then marker(MarkerNumber[I]);
        if J=0 then move(J,Data[J]+I)
        else line(J,Data[J]+I);
      end; {for J}
    end; {for I}
  end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
  graphics_term;
end.
{Program "MarkrProg"}

```

External Graphics Displays and Plotters

Chapter

3

In this chapter, we will be discussing the selection of external plotting devices. The `DISPLAY_INIT` procedure will be more thoroughly covered, in addition to dumping graphics images from a CRT to a printer. External CRTs (cathode-ray tubes), which may be connected to your computer through a 98627A interface card, and plotters, which may be connected through the built-in HP-IB (Hewlett-Packard Interface Bus) port in the back of your computer, will also be discussed.

Selecting a Plotter

In the previous two chapters, the program listings contained a line which said:

```
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn);
```

Because the value contained in the variable `CrtAddr` was 3—specifying the current console—the computer activated the internal CRT graphics raster as the plotting device, and all subsequent graphics output was directed to this display. If you want a plotter to be the output device, only the value of the variable `CrtAddr` need be changed. (You may also want to change the name of the variable. It is somewhat misleading to have the address of a plotter in variable named `CrtAddr`.) If your plotter is at HP-IB interface select code 7 and address 5 (the factory settings), the modification would be:

```
CrtAddr:=705;
```

Dumping Raster Images

In addition to generating a hard-copy plot with a plotter, as described above, you can dump a CRT's raster image to a printer. This method is called a *graphics dump* or *screen dump*. It is accomplished by copying data from the frame buffer to a printer to be printed dot for dot.

First the image must be drawn on a CRT. The internal CRT, a color monitor connected by an HP 98627A interface card, or an HP 98700A may be used. Since this technique dumps a raster-type image, it prints only dots. Thus it cannot draw a line, per se, but only the approximation of a line from the screen, made up of dots. The dump device "takes a snapshot" of the graphics screen at some point in time, and doesn't care *how* the dots came to be turned on or off. Thus, filled areas can be dumped to the printer; indeed, most CRT graphics capabilities (except color) are available.

If your printer is an HP 9876, HP 2631G, HP 2671G, HP 2673A or any other printer which conforms to the HP Raster Interface Standard, dumping a graphics image is achieved with the OUTPUT_ESC procedure. If your active graphics display device (set with the DISPLAY_INIT procedure call) is monochromatic, a call to OUTPUT_ESC with operation selector 52 will dump the display if:

- The active graphics display is the console (where alpha is displayed), or
- The active graphics display is bit-mapped (i.e., is a bit-map display or a display connected via the HP 98627A RGB interface).

If you have a color device, all planes in the frame buffer are logically ORed. If you want more control over the output of a color image, an operation selector of 1053 will allow you to select individual planes from the frame buffer. The 1053 operation selector will work with the Model 236C, the Model 237 bit-mapped display, or with a color display connected via the HP 98627A RGB interface. Since the Model 237 has only one plane, the plane designator is ignored.

The exception to producing a desirable image via this method occurs if your active CRT is a bit-mapped display that supports more pixels than your printer has dots. In this case, the dump starts at the upper left-hand corner of the screen and dumps as far to the right and down as there are corresponding dots on the printer. Another option is to use opcode 54 for the compressed dump for low resolution printers. This is only useful with HP 98542A and HP 98543A displays.

Either of these operation selectors sent to OUTPUT_ESC would take the image in the currently active CRT graphics frame buffer (the internal CRT by default) and send it to volume PRINTER:. By default the printer is assumed to be at select code 7, bus address 1. This can be changed by modifying the CTABLE.TEXT program on the CONFIG: disc (ACCESS: on double sided discs). Find the line:

```
local_printer_default_dav = dav[sc: 7, ba:1, du:-1, dv:-1];
```

This sets the DAV (device address vector) for the printer to be at select code (*sc*) 7 and bus address (*ba*) 1. By changing this line, you can alter the destination of data sent to the volume PRINTER:¹. 701 is the default factory setting for printers.

¹ For an in-depth coverage of how to modify the CTABLE.TEXT program, see the *Special Configurations* chapter of the *Pascal 3.0 Workstation System Manual*.

If a graphics dump operation is aborted with the **STOP** key, the printer may or may not terminate its graphics mode.

If you have a printer which does not conform to the HP Raster Interface Standard, all is not lost. It must, however, be capable of printing raster-image bit patterns. There are two main methods by which printers output bit sequences. The first is: when a printer receives a series of bits, it prints them in a one-pixel-high line across the screen. The paper then advances one pixel's distance, and the next line is printed. The other method (which lends itself to user-defined *characters* more than graphics image dumping) takes a series of bits, breaks it up into 8-bit chunks, and prints them as vertical bars 8 pixels high and one pixel wide. The next eight bits compose the next 1×8 -pixel bar, and so forth.

This latter method is that used by the HP82905 printer. The image (which is printed out sideways) takes a GSTOREd image and breaks the 16-bit integers into two 8-bit bytes, and sends them to the printer one row at a time. Writing your own routine to dump a graphics image to a non-conforming printer should not be difficult, given the ability of taking the graphics image and placing into your own data array (referred to in the last chapter).

Note that on a CRT, an "on" pixel is light on an otherwise dark background, and on a printer, an "on" pixel is dark on an otherwise light background. Thus, the hard copy is a negative image of that on the screen. To dump light images on a dark background, you can invert every bit in the stored image. To invert the bits in a 32-bit integer, you can execute the following code segment:

```

if N=minint then
  N:=maxint
else
  N:=-N-1;

```

The reason for the subtraction is that Series 200/300 computers use twos-complement representation of integers. Also, you must consider MININT¹ as a special case because you cannot negate MININT in an integer; +2 147 483 648 cannot be represented in a signed thirty-two bit twos-complement number.

¹ MININT and MAXINT are two standard constants in HP Pascal. MININT = $-2^{31} = -2\,147\,483\,648$, and MAXINT = $2^{31} - 1 = +2\,147\,483\,647$.

External Color Displays

The HP 98627A RGB interface allows you to connect a color monitor to your computer, whether the computer's internal CRT supports color or not. The HP 98627A does not, as mentioned before, support color map operations; thus, you cannot change the color of an area on the screen without redrawing the area. Nor can you define your own color-addition scheme as you can with a color-mapped device (see the Color Graphics chapter). In addition to this, there are only eight pure colors¹; to get others, you must go to dithering.

There are many types of color monitors which you can connect to your computer through an HP 98627A color monitor interface. In the `ControlWord` variable which is passed to the `DISPLAY_INIT` procedure, you must specify accordingly:

Desired Display Format	Description	Bits 10-8
Standard Graphics 512 by 390 pixels, 60 Hz, non-interlaced	U.S. Standard	001 (256)
512 by 390 pixels, 50 Hz, non-interlaced	European Standard	010 (512)
TV Compatible Graphics 512 by 474 pixels, 60 Hz, interlaced (30 Hz refresh rate)	U.S. Television	011 (768)
512 by 512 pixels, 50 Hz, interlaced (25 Hz refresh rate)	European Television	100 (1024)
High-Resolution Graphics 512 by 512 pixels, 46.5 Hz, non-interlaced	High Resolution	101 (1280)
HP Use Only	Internal	110 (1536)

Out of range values are treated as if `ControlWord = 256`, as is `ControlWord = 0` (except Model 237, where 0 keeps the type-ahead buffer, and 256 removes it).

¹ Only eight pure colors can be created on an external color monitor. This is because there is no control over the intensity of each color gun. Each color can be either off or on, and there are three colors: red, green, and blue. Two states, three colors: $2^3 = 8$.

External Plotter Control

There are many device-dependent operations you can do through calling the OUTPUT_ESC procedure. See Appendix B for details on all the things you can do.

Controlling Pen Speed

To improve the quality of the lines drawn by a plotter pen, you may want to make them draw more slowly. There are other factors, too, which can affect line quality. For example, humidity can alter the line quality of a fiber-tipped pen. To accomplish this, you can call the OUTPUT_ESC procedure with the appropriate parameters. Or, the following procedure will do it.

```

{*****}
procedure PenSpeed(Speed: integer);
{-----}
{ This procedure selects a pen speed for ah HPGL plotter, }
{-----}
const
  SetPenSpeed= 2050;          {a mnemonic is better than a magic number}
var
  Iarray:      array [1..2] of integer;      { \ These are variables }
  Rarray:      array [1..1] of real;         { > needed by the DGL }
  Error:       integer;                      { / Procedure "output_esc" }
begin
  {procedure "PenSpeed"}
  Iarray[1]:=Speed;          {use the passed parameter}
  Iarray[2]:=0;             {affect all pens}
  output_esc(SetPenSpeed,2,0,Iarray,Rarray,Error);
  if Error<>0 then          {error?}
    writeln('Error ',Error:0,' in procedure PenSpeed,');
end;                          {procedure "PenSpeed"}

```

The first element of the integer array specifies the pen speed; the range and resolution of pen speeds, and default maximum speed depend on the plotter. The second element of the array specifies the pens to be affected. One through eight specifies pens one through eight, respectively. Any value outside of this range is taken to mean, "Affect all pens."

Selecting a pen speed specifies a *maximum* speed rather than an *only* speed, because on short line segments, the pen does not have time to accelerate to the specified speed before the midpoint of the line segment is reached and deceleration must begin.

This procedure also provides a skeleton for making other special-purpose routines. For most operations dealing with OUTPUT_ESC, one need only change the name of the procedure and the parameters being passed to the OUTPUT_ESC procedure.

Controlling Pen Acceleration

On the HP 7580, HP 7585 and HP 7586 drafting plotters, you can specify the amount of acceleration the pen is to undergo when starting or ending a line. On any particular line, positive acceleration (speeding up) will occur until one of two things happens:

- The midpoint of the line is reached, and negative acceleration (slowing down, or deceleration) must begin, to ensure that the pen will reach a speed of zero precisely at the second endpoint of the line it's drawing; or
- The specified maximum speed is reached. In this case, that speed will be maintained until the pen is at a particular distance from the second endpoint of the line. At that distance, which depends on the specified maximum speed and the specified acceleration, the pen will start to smoothly decelerate such that it will reach zero velocity at the second endpoint.

The first element of the integer array passed to `OUTPUT_ESC` specifies the pen acceleration; it may range from one through four gees¹. The second specifies the pens to be affected. One through eight specifies pens one through eight, respectively. Any value outside of this range is taken to mean, "Affect all pens."

Controlling Pen Force

On many drafting plotters (e.g., HP 7580, HP 7585, HP 7586), you can specify the amount of force pressing the pen tip to the drawing medium. This is useful when matching a pen type (ball-point, fiber-tip, drafting pens, etc.) to a drawing medium (paper, vellum, mylar, etc.). Again, if a pen is partially dried out, it may help line quality to adjust the pen force.

The `PenSpeed` procedure mentioned above can be modified slightly to control pen force. The operation selector should be 2051. The first element of the integer array specifies the pen force; the second specifies the pens to be affected. One through eight specifies pens one through eight, respectively. Any value outside of this range is taken to mean, "Affect all pens."

The force number is translated into a force in grams. If, for example, you have an HP7580A plotter, the force number is converted to force as follows:

1 = 10 grams	5 = 42 grams
2 = 18 grams	6 = 50 grams
3 = 26 grams	7 = 58 grams
4 = 34 grams	8 = 66 grams

This is not by any means an exhaustive list of the things you can do with `OUTPUT_ESC`, but it serves to acquaint you with the concept of using the procedure for controlling device-dependent operations. A thorough understanding of its use can only be gotten by combining information from the DGL Language Reference with actual hands-on experience.

¹ One "gee," or one [earth] "gravity," is the acceleration due to gravity at sea level. Its value is approximately 9.8 m/sec² or 32 ft/sec².

Interactive Graphics

Chapter

4

Introduction

It has already been pointed out that graphics is a very powerful tool for communication. The high speed available from Series 200/300 computers makes possible a powerful mechanism for communicating with the computer: that tool is Interactive Graphics.

A Simple Example

Interactive graphics is demonstrated well – albeit primitively – in the following program, which uses an HP-HIL¹ tablet². It is a good introduction to interactive graphics in that it shows one of the most elementary concepts necessary for an interactive program: feedback. Feedback, in this context, is the concept of immediately seeing, on an output device, the results of some action done on an input device, and the seeing of those results can cause a modification to subsequent input. This feedback takes place so quickly that a continuous, flowing action can take place.

The following program is very simple. It merely tracks the stylus of an absolute locator, showing the immediate feedback. When any of the buttons on the stylus is pressed, the program prints the X and Y values, as well as a number which indicates which button was pressed.

```

$search '*:GRAPHICS,'$
Program Track(output);
import dsl_lib;           {get graphics routines}
var
  Error:      integer;    {error number return variable}
  Button:     integer;    {which button on the stylus was pressed?}
  X, Y:       real;      {X and Y coordinates when button pressed}
begin
  graphics_init;         {initialize the graphics system}
  display_init(3,0,Error); {initialize the display device: main screen}
  if Error<>0 then       {if an error occurred...}
    begin
      writeln('Error ',Error:0,' on DISPLAY_INIT.');
```

```
      {...say so...}
      halt;                {...and quit.}
    end;
  locator_init(201,Error); {locator device: HP-HIL absolute locator}
  if Error<>0 then       {if an error occurred...}
    begin
      writeln('Error ',Error:0,' on LOCATOR_INIT.');
```

```
      {...say so...}
      halt;                {...and quit.}
    end;
  await_locator(2,Button,X,Y); {track the stylus until button pressed}
  writeln('X: ', X:10:4, ' Y: ', Y:10:4, ' Button: ', Button:3);
end.
```

If you get an error initializing either the display or the locator, see the appropriate section in the “Graphics Procedure Reference” section in Appendix B in the back of this manual for help.

¹ There is a family of devices called HP-HIL devices for the Pascal Workstation. HP-HIL stands for “Hewlett-Packard Human Interface Link.”

² 3.2 Pascal also supports a new driver for the HP-HIL mouse and knob. Access these by substituting 202 in the line LOCATOR_INIT(201,ERROR);

Notice when running this program that a small, cross-hair cursor describes, on the screen, the same movements as those you make on the tablet. This is the mechanism of feedback, mentioned earlier. When your hand moves up, the cursor moves up. When your hand moves to the right, the cursor moves to the right, and so forth. And note that the feedback is so fast and accurate that, many times, you do not even need to look at the tablet to see where the stylus is; you can tell where the stylus is by looking at the position of the cursor on the screen.

A graphics tablet is not the only graphics input device, as the next section shows. The program in the following example shows an interactive program which is a bit more complex.

A More Elaborate Example

Compile and execute the program "BAR_KNOB", from your "DGLPRG:" or "DOC:" disc. If you have a knob, and you turn the knob clockwise, the bar graph displayed on the screen will indicate a larger value. At the same time, the numeric readout underneath the bar will increase its value. Turning the knob counterclockwise has the opposite effect. (If your computer has no knob, the arrow keys or mouse will work, but may not feel as "natural.") This is an effective demonstration of all the key characteristics of an interactive graphics system. They are:

- A data structure. (The value displayed underneath the bar is the contents of a variable that we are modifying. The internal variable containing the value is a degenerate case of a data structure.)
- A graphic display that represents the contents of the data structure. (The bar graph and the numeric display represent the value of the internal variable.)
- An input mechanism for interacting with the displayed image (the knob, in this case.)

This is the minimum set of requirements for an interactive graphics system. A key feature of interactive graphics is that it is a *closed loop* system. This means that the operator can immediately see the effect of his action on the system, and thus base his next action not only on the state of the system, but also on the effect his last action had on the system. A few points are worth noting about this system:

- The knob is used because it is *functionally appropriate*. While we could have entered numeric values to control the bar graph, the knob "feels" right. We are used to using knobs to control metered readouts.
- Control of the value with the knob is fairly intuitive. The normal range markings make it readily apparent when the value is in range. Little explanation is needed, due to the immediate feedback from the displayed image.
- A system is "modeled." The user's input has a well defined relation to the output of the system.

Thus, interactive graphics can be as simple as representing a single value on the screen and providing the user a method for interacting with it. It can also be as complex as a Printed Circuit layout system. This chapter will not tell you how to build a Printed Circuit layout system, but it will provide some hints on implementing interactive graphics systems that work.

Characterizing Graphic Interactivity

One of the most important things in designing a good interactive graphics system is characterizing the interaction with the system correctly. Properly characterizing the interactivity allows selection of the most appropriate device for interaction with the system. Three things have to be considered in characterizing the interaction:

- The number of ways the graphics system can be changed. That is, the number of *degrees of freedom* in the system.
- The *quality* of each of the degrees of freedom. This describes how the input to a degree of freedom can be changed.
- The *separability* of the degrees of freedom.

Once again, the best way to understand the characterization of interaction is to see an example in action. Compile and execute “BAR_KNOB2” from your “DGLPRG:” or “DOC:” disc. This program is very similar to “BAR_KNOB”, but it has several bars, instead of one. This introduces another degree of freedom to the model. The original program had a single degree of freedom, the value indicated by the bar graph. The quality of this degree of freedom is continuous. The new program has the same continuous input (which is still handled by the knob) but has added a second degree of freedom, the selection of the bar graph you want to modify. This degree of freedom is quantizable, and is handled by the numeric keys. (Softkeys would be even better, but require digging into the operating system.) The degrees of freedom are also separable, since you don’t need to interact with both of them at once.

The degrees of freedom are not separable in freehand drawing—you want to change X and Y simultaneously. They are only partially separable in laying out images on a screen – you can get by with moving along one axis at a time, but it’s easier if you can interact with both of them at once.

Selecting Input Devices

The purpose of the discussion on characterization of graphic interaction was to lay the groundwork for discussing when various input devices are appropriate. There are several available on HP desktop computers, and choosing the correct one is critical to the design of a highly productive human interface for an interactive graphics program.

- Knob and/or cursor-control keys,
- Mouse,
- Tablet,
- Touchscreen.

Single Degree of Freedom

Many interactive graphics programs need deal only with a single degree of freedom. The appropriate control device for such programs depends on whether continuous control or quantized control is needed.

The program “BAR_KNOB” is a good example of a single degree of freedom that is continuous. The knob is ideal for controlling a program like this. If faster movement is needed before “fine tuning,” the shift key can be used as a multiplier to change the interpretation of the knob. The knob is read through the KEYBOARD file. The knob generates forward and back spaces for clockwise and counterclockwise motion, or line-feeds and “up-spaces” if the shift key is held down while the knob is turned. The following program (“BAR_KNOB” from the “DGLPRG:” or “DOC:” disc) shows how to interpret the knob for a continuous, single degree of freedom, as well as how to update the display to show the results of the interaction.

```
$ucsd,debug$
program Test (Keyboard,output);
import dgl_vars,dgl_types,dgl_lib,dgl_inq;
type
  States=                (On,Off);
  DrawMode=              (Draw,Erase,Comp,NonDom);
const
  FS=                    chr(28);
  BS=                    chr(8);
  US=                    chr(31);
  LF=                    chr(10);
  CR=                    chr(13);
  Q=                     'Q';
  Q1=                    'q';
  Underline=             chr(132);
  Ind_off=               chr(128);
  Inv_On=                chr(129);
  MinBarY=               0;
  MaxBarY=               100;
  MinBarX=               180;
  MaxBarX=               220;
  IncDelta=              0.1;
```

```

var
  Error_num:          integer;
  I,TempInt:         integer;
  Level,LastLevel:   real;
  Delta:             real;
  CharWidth,CharHeight: real;
  Character:         char;
  Done:             boolean;
  Keyboard:         text;
  TempString:       Gstring255;
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure GraphicsDisplay(State:States {On/Off});
const
  GraphicsDisp=      1050;
var
  Error:integer;
  SwitchArray:integer;
  Dummy:real;
begin
  {procedure GraphicsDisplay}
case State of
  On:SwitchArray:=1;
  Off:SwitchArray:=0;
end; {case State of}
output_esc(GraphicsDisp,1,0,SwitchArray,Dummy,Error) ;
if Error <> 0 then
  writeln ('Error ',Error:1,' encountered in GraphicsDisplay');
end;
{procedure GraphicsDisplay}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure AlphaDisplay(State:States {On/Off});
const
  AlphaDisp=1051;
var
  Error:integer;
  SwitchArray:integer;
  Dummy:real;
begin
  {procedure AlphaDisplay}
case State of
  On:SwitchArray:=1;
  Off:SwitchArray:=0;
end; {case State of}
output_esc(AlphaDisp,1,0,SwitchArray,Dummy,Error) ;
if Error <> 0 then
  writeln ('Error ',Error:1,' encountered in AlphaDisplay');
end;
{procedure AlphaDisplay}
$Page$ {*****}
begin
  {Main Program}
Level:=0;
LastLevel:=Level;
graphics_init;
display_init(3,0,Error_Num);
if Error_Num=0 then begin
  AlphaDisplay(Off);
  GraphicsDisplay(On);
  set_aspect(511,389);
  set_window(0,400,-30,120);
  set_color(1);
  {current height of bar}
  {previous height of bar}
  {initialize the graphics system}
  {which output device?}
  {output device initialization OK?}
  {turn off alpha display}
  {turn on graphics display}
  {use whole screen}
  {scale the window for the data}
  {color number 1: white}

```

4-6 Interactive Graphics

```

CharWidth:=(0.035*400);           {char width: 3.5% of screen width}
CharHeight:=(0.05*150);          {char height: 5% of screen height}
set_char_size(CharWidth, CharHeight); {install character size}
{---- Outline the Bar -----}
move(MinBarX-0.5,MinBarY-0.5);   {move to lower left corner...}
line(MinBarX-0.5,MaxBarY+0.5);   {...draw to upper left corner...}
line(MaxBarX+0.5,MaxBarY+0.5);   {...draw to upper right corner...}
line(MaxBarX+0.5,MinBarY-0.5);   {...draw to lower left corner...}
line(MinBarX-0.5,MinBarY-0.5);   {...and draw to lower left corner.}
{---- Label the bar (numeric labels) -----}
for I:=0 to 10 do begin
  strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,I*10:3,'-');
  move (179-strlen(TempString)*CharWidth,I*10-0.24*CharHeight);
  stext (TempString);
end; {for I:=1 to 10 }
{---- Label the bar (textual labels) -----}
move (221, 80-CharHeight/2);
stext ('-High Normal');
move (221, 60-CharHeight/2);
stext ('-Low Normal');
{---- How about some instructions -----}
CharWidth:=(0.02*400);           {char width: 2% of screen width}
CharHeight:=(0.035*150);        {char height: 3.5% of screen height}
set_char_size(CharWidth, CharHeight); {install character size}
move (0, 5);
TempString:='Use the Knob to'+CR+LF;
stext (TempString);
TempString:='Adjust the value.'+CR+LF;
stext (TempString);
TempString:=' '+CR+LF;
stext (TempString);
TempString:='SHIFT with the Knob '+CR+LF;
stext (TempString);
TempString:='speeds it up.'+CR+LF;
stext (TempString);
TempString:='';
{---- Set a good character size -----}
CharWidth:=(0.035*400);           {char width: 3.5% of screen width}
CharHeight:=(0.05*150);          {char height: 5% of screen height}
set_char_size(CharWidth, CharHeight); {install character size}
repeat
  read(Keyboard,Character);       {set character without echo to screen}
  Delta:=0;                       {start by assuming no motion}
  case Character of               {what's the character?}
    FS: Delta:=IncDelta;          {right arrow?}
    BS: Delta:=-IncDelta;        {left arrow (backspace)?}
    LF: Delta:=10*IncDelta;      {down arrow?}
    US: Delta:=-10*IncDelta;     {up arrow?}
    Q,Q1: Done:=TRUE;           {or Quit?}
  otherwise                       {if none of the above, ignore it}
  end; {case ord(Character)}
  if Delta>0 then begin           {Going Up}
    set_color(1);                {we want to draw lines}
    while (Level<LastLevel+Delta) and (Level<MaxBarY-IncDelta) do begin
      Level:=Level+IncDelta;     {new top of bar}
      move(MinBarX,Level);       {move to left edge...}
      line(MaxBarX,Level);       {...and draw to right edge}
    end {while (Level<LastLevel) and (Level<MaxBarY)}
  end
end

```

```

end {if (Delta>0) and (Level<100) }
else begin {Going Down}
  if (Delta<0) and (Level>=0.5*IncDelta) then begin
    set_color(0); {we want to erase lines}
    repeat
      move(MinBarX, Level); {move to the left edge...}
      line(MaxBarX, Level); {...and draw to the right edge}
      Level:=Level-IncDelta; {new top of bar}
    until (Level<=LastLevel+Delta) or (Level<=MinBarY)
  end; {if (Delta<0) and (Level>0)}
end;
{---- How about some numbers? -----}
set_color(0); {we want to erase lines}
strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,LastLevel:5:1); {convert level to chars}
move(MinBarX+(MaxBarX-MinBarX)/2-strlen(TempString)*CharWidth/2,
      MinBarY-2*CharHeight);
stext(TempString); {erase the old number}
set_color(1); {we want to erase lines}
strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,Level:5:1);
move (MinBarX+(MaxBarX-MinBarX)/2-strlen(TempString)*CharWidth/2,
      MinBarY-2*CharHeight);
stext(TempString); {write the new}
LastLevel:=Level; {remember the old number}
until Done; {repeat until user hits [Q]}
GraphicsDisplay (Off); {turn off graphics display}
AlphaDisplay (On); {turn on alpha display}
display_term; {clean up loose ends}
end;
graphics_term; {terminate the graphics package}
end. {main program}

```

Keys can be used for quantizable control of a degree of freedom. It is also possible to use keyboard entry of numeric values for quantizable information.

Non-separable Degrees of Freedom

One characteristic of multiple, non-separable degrees of freedom is that they are generally continuous. The most common operation of this type is free-hand drawing. This is most easily accomplished with the 9111A graphics tablet, HP-HIL tablet, or mouse.

Separable Degrees Of Freedom

In many programs, the degrees of freedom are completely separable. In fact, for some operations, it is definitely preferable to have totally independent control of the degrees of freedom of the model.

All Continuous

If all the degrees of freedom in a model are continuous, then the selection of the degree of freedom to operate on becomes another degree of freedom, and is quantizable. A good choice is using the keyboard to select the degree of freedom and then using the knob or mouse to control the input to that degree of freedom. This is not as effective as a bank of knobs, but adding a bank of knobs means adding hardware. The program "BAR_KNOB2", on the "DGLPRG:" or "DOC:" disc is an example of this type of interaction. Single keystrokes are used to select the degree of freedom you are operating on, and then the knob is used to vary the value along that degree of freedom.

4-8 Interactive Graphics

The following key interpretation loop is used in "BAR_KNOB2" to allow the user to select the bar to be controlled, as well as controlling the value of the selected knob.

```
READ (KEYBOARD,Character);
Delta := 0;
CASE Character OF
  FS      : Delta := IncDelta;
  BS      : Delta := -IncDelta;
  LF      : Delta := 10*IncDelta;
  US      : Delta := -10*IncDelta;
  Q,Q1    : Done := TRUE;
  '1'..'5': BEGIN
            ClearInd(Bar);
            Bar := ORD (Character)- ORD('0');
            SetInd(Bar);
          END;
OTHERWISE
END; {CASE Character}
```

All Quantizable

If all the degrees are quantizable, using the keyboard (or using softkeys if you have requisite system design experience to use them) is appropriate.

Mixed Modes

In most sophisticated graphics systems, several degrees of freedom in the system interact with each other. A good example is a graphics editor. In a graphics editor, your primary interaction is with a visual image, and the degrees of freedom (X and Y location) for that operation are partially separable, at best. (They are non-separable if it supports freehand drawing.) There is also a degree of freedom involved in controlling the program. The program control is strongly separable from the image creation operation.

The most appropriate device for supporting mixed modes is the HP 9111A graphics tablet or HP-HIL tablet. The tablet supports two modes of interaction by partitioning the digitizing surface into two areas. Sixteen small squares along the top of the tablet can be used as softkeys to provide a control menu. The large, framed area underneath the softkeys is the active digitizing area. The active digitizing area is used for interacting with the image you are creating. Other menu/ image area combinations are also possible.

It is possible to combine the quantized, separable control operations with continuous, non-separable image editing. This is done by using the active digitizing area for interacting with the image and using the menu area for controlling the operations available in the editing program. The operator does not have to change control devices to access the different interaction modes.

Echoes

An important part of interactive graphics is letting the operator know "where he is at." This can be done by updating the image. In other operations, such as menu selection, object positioning, and freehand drawing, it is important to show the operator where he is. In many cases, this can be done with `AWAIT_LOCATOR`.

The Built In Echo

Many graphics applications can be handled using the built-in echo. `AWAIT_LOCATOR` allows you to access one of the built-in echoes for digitizing. The following program interprets a menu to select one of the built in echoes, and then draws an appropriate image on the CRT after the call to `AWAIT_LOCATOR` completes. It is on your `DGLPRG:` or `DOC:` disc, in the file called "LOCATOR". If you have an HP 9111 Graphics Tablet, changing the constant `LOCATORADDRESS` from 2 to 706 will allow you to use the tablet for a locator instead of the knob or mouse (change to 201 for HP-HIL tablet or 202 for new HP-HIL Mouse/Knob capability).

```

$debug$
Program Test(output);
import dgl_vars,dgl_types,dgl_lib,dgl_poly,dgl_inq;
type
  Commands=          0..8;          {nine commands total}
  RealArray=         array [1..5] of real;
const
  FS=                chr(28);       {right arrow}
  BS=                chr(8);        {left arrow or backspace}
  US=                chr(31);       {up arrow}
  LF=                chr(10);       {down arrow}
  CR=                chr(13);       {carriage return}
  MinX=              0;             {minimum X value for screen}
  MinY=              0;             {minimum Y value for screen}
  MaxX=              511;          {maximum X value for screen}
  MaxY=              389;          {maximum Y value for screen}
  Xrange=            MaxX-MinX;    {total range of X}
  Yrange=            MaxY-MinY;    {total range of Y}
  LocatorAddress=    2;            {2 for Knob,706 for 9111}
var
  Error_num:         integer;      {error return variable}
  I,TempInt:         integer;      {utility variables}
  ButtonValue:       integer;      {which button selected?}
  Xin,Yin:           real;         {location of digitized point}
  Xlast,Ylast:      real;         {last digitized point}
  CharWidth,CharHeight: real;     {char size in world coords}
  Done:              boolean;      {are we supposed to quit?}
  NewLine:           boolean;      {start new line?}
  TempString:        Gstring255;   {utility variable}
  EchoSelect,EchoSelector: 0..9;   {menu selection}
  MenuTop:           real;
  CellWidth:         real;         {width of menu spaces}
  Command:           Commands;     {which command selected?}
$page$ {*****}
procedure DrawMenu;
var
  I:                 integer;      {loop-control variable}
  Ylabel:           real;         {Y position of entree label}
  Yarray:           RealArray;

```

4-10 Interactive Graphics

```

-----}
Procedure MenuCell(I:integer);
var
  TempPitch:      real;      {temporary variable}
  Xlabel:         real;      {X position of entree label}
  Xarray:         RealArray; {X positions of entree cell}
begin
  case I of
    0: begin
      TempString:='STOP';      {label text}
      Xarray[1]:=0;             { \
                                }
      Xarray[2]:=2*CellWidth;  { \
                                }
      Xarray[3]:=2*CellWidth;  { > X positions for box }
      Xarray[4]:=0;            { /
                                }
      Xarray[5]:=0;            { /
                                }
      Xlabel:=MinX+CellWidth-strlen(TempString)*CharWidth/2;
    end;
    1..10: begin
      TempPitch:=CellWidth*I;   {temporary shorthand variable}
      Xarray[1]:=CellWidth+TempPitch; { \
                                        }
      Xarray[2]:=2*CellWidth+TempPitch; { \
                                        }
      Xarray[3]:=2*CellWidth+TempPitch; { > X positions for box }
      Xarray[4]:=CellWidth+TempPitch; { /
                                        }
      Xarray[5]:=CellWidth+TempPitch; { /
                                        }
      TempString:=' ';          {label text}
      if I<=8 then strwrite(TempString,I,TempInt,I:1);
      Xlabel:=Xarray[1]+CellWidth/2+strlen(TempString)*CharWidth/2;
    end;
  end; {case I of}
  Polyline(5,Xarray,Yarray);    {draw perimeter of cell}
  move(Xlabel,Ylabel);          {move to the right place}
  stext(TempString);            {label the text}
end; {Procedure MenuCell}
-----}

begin {Procedure DrawMenu}
  Yarray[1]:=MinY;              { \
                                }
  Yarray[2]:=MinY;              { \
                                }
  Yarray[3]:=MenuTop;           { > Y values for box }
  Yarray[4]:=MenuTop;           { /
                                }
  Yarray[5]:=MinY;              { /
                                }
  Ylabel:=MinY+(MenuTop-MinY)/2-CharHeight/2; {Y position of label}
  for I:=0 to 10 do MenuCell(I); {do all the entree cells}
end; {Procedure DrawMenu}

$page$ {*****}
function CheckMenu(Xin:real):Commands;
begin {function CheckMenu}
  if Xin<2*CellWidth then CheckMenu:=0 {X outside of menu?}
  else begin
    TempInt:=trunc((Xin-CellWidth)/CellWidth); {which sell chosen?}
    if TempInt>8 then CheckMenu:=Command
    else CheckMenu:=TempInt
  end;
end; {function CheckMenu }

```

```

$page$ {*****}
begin                                     {Main program}
graphics_init;                           {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(3,0,Error_Num);             {which output device?}
if Error_Num<>0 then begin                {output device initialization OK?}
  writeln('I failed to initialize the display. ');
  writeln('Error number ',Error_Num:2,' was returned. ');
end {if Error_Num<>0}
else begin
  LOCATOR_init(LocatorAddress,Error_Num);
  if Error_Num<>0 then begin
    writeln('I failed to initialize the locator. ');
    writeln('Error number ',Error_Num:2,' was returned. ');
  end {if Error_Num<>0}
  else begin                             {No errors so far}
    set_aspect(511,389);                  {use whole screen}
    set_window(0,511,0,389);              {scale window for data}
    CharWidth:=0.035*511;                 {char width: 3.5% of screen width}
    CharHeight:=0.05*389;                 {char height: 5% of screen height}
    set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
    MenuTop:=Yrange/13;                   {menu is 1/13 the total screen height}
    CellWidth:=Xrange/12;                 {each entree cell 1/12 screen width}
    DrawMenu;                             {draw the menu}
    NewLine:=true;                         {yes, we are starting a new line}
    EchoSelect:=4;                         {start program with default command}
    Command:=4;                            {ditto}
    Done:=false;                           {no, we're not done yet}
    repeat
      if NewLine then                     {starting a new line?}
        EchoSelector:=2
      else
        EchoSelector:=EchoSelect;
      await_locator(EchoSelector,ButtonValue,Xin,Yin);
      if Yin<MenuTop then begin           {user choose menu option?}
        NewLine:=true;                    {start a new line next time}
        Command:=CheckMenu(Xin);           {determine menu selection}
        case Command of                   {which command}
          0: Done:=true;                  {yes, we're done with the program}
          1: EchoSelect:=1;                { \ }
          2: EchoSelect:=2;                { \ }
          3: EchoSelect:=3;                { \ }
          4: EchoSelect:=4;                { \ Select the appropriate }
          5: EchoSelect:=5;                { / EchoSelector, }
          6: EchoSelect:=6;                { / }
          7: EchoSelect:=7;                { / }
          8: EchoSelect:=8;                { / }
        end {case}
      end {if}
    else begin                             {not a menu selection}
      if NewLine then begin               {start a new line}
        NewLine:=false;                   {now we're in the middle of a line}
        set_echo_pos(Xin,Yin);            {move the graphics cursor}
        move(Xin,Yin);                    {cause line-drawing to start there}
        Ylast:=Yin;                       {remember the last X...}
        Xlast:=Xin;                       {...and the last Y}
      end
    end
  end
end

```

4-12 Interactive Graphics

```
else begin
  set_echo_pos(Xin,Yin);      {move the graphics cursor}
  if (Xin=Xlast) and (Yin=Ylast) then NewLine:=true
  else begin
    case EchoSelect of
      1..7: line(Xin,Yin);    {draw a line}
      8: begin
          line(Xlast,Yin);
          line(Xin,Yin);
          line(Xin,Ylast);
          line(Xlast,Ylast);
          NewLine:=true;
        end
      otherwise
    end; {case EchoSelect of}
    Xlast:=Xin;              {remember the last X...}
    Ylast:=Yin;              {...and the last Y}
  end
end;
end;
until Done;                 {are we done yet?}
locator_term;                {terminate the locator}
display_term;                {terminate the display}
end; {Error trap}
end;
graphics_term;               {terminate the graphics system}
end.                           {Main Program}
```

Rubber Echoes

If you have run the program "LOCATOR," you will have seen that several of the echoes are *rubber-band* echoes; in other words, they create lines that seem to stretch between various points on the screen. Echoes 4 through 8 require two points to define them. One of these points is the point being tracked with the `AWAIT_LOCATOR` statement. The other is the *anchor* point, and is set using the `SET_ECHO` statement. After using one of the rubber-band echoes, and drawing the figure it represents, it is necessary to get a new point to anchor the next echo to. This is done in the program "LOCATOR" by the following block of code:

```
IF NewLine THEN BEGIN
  NewLine := FALSE;
  SET_ECHO_POS (Xin,Yin);
  MOVE (Xin,Yin);
  Ylast:= Yin;
  Xlast:= Xin;
END
```

```

ELSE BEGIN
  SET_ECHO_POS (Xin,Yin);
  IF (Xin = Xlast) AND (Yin = Ylast) THEN
    NewLine := TRUE
  ELSE BEGIN
    CASE EchoSelect OF
      1..7: LINE (Xin,Yin) ;
      8   : BEGIN
              LINE (Xlast, Yin);
              LINE (Xin, Yin);
              LINE (Xin, Ylast);
              LINE (Xlast, Ylast);
              NewLine := TRUE;
            END
    OTHERWISE
    END; {CASE EchoSelect of}
    Xlast := Xin;
    Ylast := Yin;
  END
END;

```

In the preceding code, the anchor is set to the last digitized point, *unless* the same point was digitized twice, in which case the small cross-hair cursor can be used to select a new anchor point. Once a new anchor point is selected, the rubber band cursor mode is returned to.

When the knob is being used as a locator, it is also possible to use SET_ECHO to establish the initial position of the locator when AWAIT_LOCATOR is called.

Tablets and Aspect Ratios

If the knob is used as a locator for the CRT, the mapping between the locator device and the display device is isotropic, since the two devices use the same display mechanism. This is not true if an external digitizing device (such as the HP 9111A or HP-HIL graphics tablet) is used. The default aspect ratio for the 9111A is 0.7234, while the CRT of the Model 236 ≈ 0.7613 (as set up in "LOCATOR," above). This means that a square area on the graphics tablet does not represent a square area on the CRT. This is not a tremendous problem in many interactive graphics programs, where the tablet is merely used to point at objects. However, in some applications, those in which the tablet is used to copy an existing document into the computer, the distortion is not acceptable. This is easily remedied, through the SET_LOCATOR_LIM procedure. The following addition to the "LOCATOR" program will set the tablet to the same aspect ratio as the CRT, insuring the desired isomorphic transformation.

```

ELSE BEGIN {No errors so far}
  SET_ASPECT (511,389);
  IF LocatorAddress = 706 THEN BEGIN{This is a tablet}
    SET_LOCATOR_LIM(0,(511/389)*217.6,0,217.6,Error_num);
    IF Error_num <> 0 THEN
      WRITELN (Error_num:2,' encountered in SET_LOCATOR_LIM. ');
  END; {IF LocatorAddress = 706}
  SET_WINDOW (0,511,0,389);

```

4-14 Interactive Graphics

<h1>Color Graphics</h1>

Chapter
5

Color!

Color can be used for emphasis, for clarity, and just to present visually pleasing images. Color is a very powerful tool, and it follows directly that it is very easy to misuse. Be careful in using color, and it will serve as a valuable tool for communication. Misuse it, and it will garble the communication.

The DGL Color System

In order to create a device independent programming language, it is necessary to model an ideal system, and then create transformations to map that system onto real hardware. This is the way the Device independent Graphics Library (DGL) works. Understanding the ideal color system will make it much easier to understand the actual implementations that are available on your computer.

In order to understand the color system, it is necessary to understand two concepts:

- Color as an Attribute
- Models for Color Specification

After covering these topics, we will also go into the concept of a color space, which is another way of describing the color models that are used in DGL.

Color As An Attribute

We have already dealt with the attribute of linestyle, and the attributes which describe the fill pattern in a polygon. Color is another primitive attribute. Two procedures in DGL allow you to specify the attribute of color:

- `SET_COLOR` selects the color used by `GTEXT`, `LINE`, `INT_LINE`, `POLYLINE` and `INT_POLYLINE`, as well as the edges generated by `POLYGON`, `POLYGON_DD`, `INT_POLYGON` and `INT_POLYGON_DD`.
- `SET_PGN_COLOR` selects the color used for the interior of polygons generated by `POLYGON`, `POLYGON_DD`, `INT_POLYGON` and `INT_POLYGON_DD`.

Notice that `SET_COLOR` and `SET_PGN_COLOR` both *select* a color attribute. The selection is made from the *color table*.

The Color Table

The color table is a repository of color definitions to be used for displaying primitives. It is used to describe both lines and filled areas. The color table for Series 200 computers, HP 98543A displays, HP 98545A displays, and the 4-plane HP 98700A display is a list of 32 colors. This provides 32 colors for the color attribute of graphics primitives. For displays HP 98547A and HP 98549A, the color table is a list of 80 colors. On the HP 98700 8-plane, HP 98550A, and 362/382 internal color displays, the list is 272 colors.

Default Colors

When DGL is initialized for a color display the color table is set up with the following values:

Default Color Table Values

Value	Color
0	Black
1	White
2	Red
3	Yellow
4	Green
5	Cyan
6	Blue
7	Magenta
8	Black
9	Olive Green
10	Aqua
11	Royal Blue
12	Maroon
13	Brick Red
14	Orange
15	Brown
16 through Last Color	White

The Primary Colors

The lower eight pens are the colors of the default color map; the colors that can be created by turning the guns of a color CRT on or off, in various combinations :

- Black and White (the extremes of no-color)
- Red, Green, and Blue (the additive primaries)
- Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow (the complements of the additive primaries - which happen to be the subtractive primaries)

The Business Colors

The upper 8 colors (8 through 15) were selected by a graphic designer to produce graphs and charts for business applications. The colors are:

- Maroon, Brick Red, Orange, and Brown (warm colors)
- Black, Olive Green, Aqua, Royal Blue (cool colors)

These colors are one designer's idea of appropriate colors for business charts and graphs. They were chosen to avoid clashing with each other. A technique for using them is described under "Color Hard Copy" in the "Color Spaces" section at the end of this chapter.

Monochromatic Defaults

If a monochromatic display device is being used, the color table defaults to a set of dithered gray patterns:

**Default Monochromatic Color
Table Values**

Value	Luminosity
0	0.0000
1	1.0000
2	0.9375
3	0.8750
4	0.8125
5	0.7500
6	0.6875
7	0.6250
8	0.5625
9	0.5000
10	0.4375
11	0.3750
12	0.3125
13	0.2500
14	0.1875
15	0.1250
16	0.0625
17 thru 31	1.0000

If You Don't Like the Defaults

The contents of an entry in the color table can be modified with the procedure `SET_COLOR_TABLE`. The actual effect of a call to `SET_COLOR_TABLE` depends on the color model being used. The color model is selected using `SET_COLOR_MODEL`. Which brings us to color specification.

Models For Color Specification

As mentioned above, SET_COLOR_TABLE is used to control the actual value of entries in the color table. It was also pointed out that the effect of SET_COLOR_TABLE is determined by the current color model, which is controlled by SET_COLOR_MODEL. It follows that it is necessary to understand SET_COLOR_MODEL before it is possible to understand SET_COLOR_TABLE.

SET_COLOR_MODEL selects (if you haven't already guessed) the color model to be used. There are two models available in DGL; the RGB (Red, Green, Blue) and the HSL (Hue, Saturation, Luminosity) models. We will discuss them in order of ascending complexity.

The RGB Model (Red, Green, Blue)

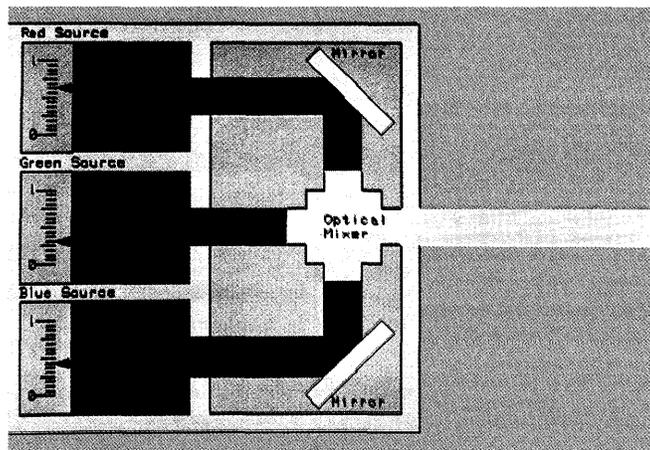
The RGB model can be thought of as mixing the output of three light sources (one each of Red, Green, and Blue). The parameters in the model specify the intensity of each of the light sources. The RGB model is selected by using a model selector of 1:

```
SET_COLOR_MODEL (1);
```

Once the RGB color model has been selected, the parameters sent to SET_COLOR_TABLE represent the percentage of full intensity of the red, green, and blue light sources:

```
SET_COLOR_TABLE (TableEntry, Red, Green, Blue);
```

The following picture illustrates a physical model for the RGB system.



RGB Color Model

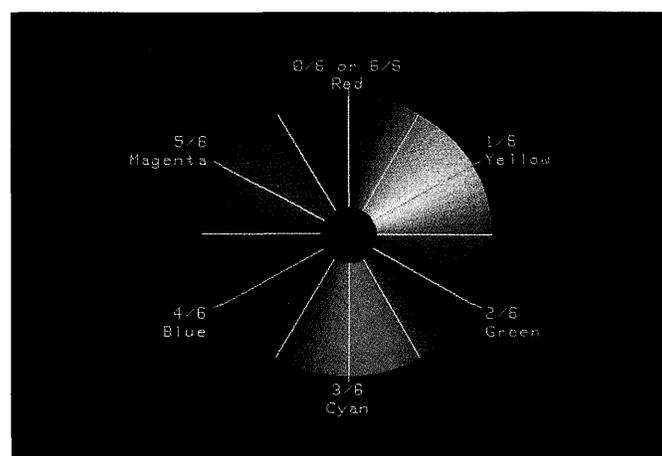
Whenever the red, green, and blue parameters have the same value, the resulting color is a gray tone (i.e. it has no hue component). The RGB model is based on the additive primaries, the colors used for describing mixing light, as opposed to mixing pigments, which are subtractive. It is a good system for interacting with color CRT displays, since it requires little conversion to translate it to a set of signals suitable for driving a color CRT.

The HSL Model (Hue, Saturation, Luminosity)

The HSL model is closer to the intuitive model of color used by artists, and is very effective for interactive color selection. It is similar in concept to the methods used by artists for mixing paints, where pure hues are selected, and then white and black are mixed to dilute the color and/or darken it. The three parameters represent *hue* (the pure color to be worked with), *saturation* (the ratio of the pure color mixed with white), and *luminosity* (the brightness-per-unit area.) To better understand the parameters, let's build a model for the HSL system.

If we start with a white light source we should be able to get any color we want by filtering it. (A perfect white light source contains equal parts of all possible colors.)

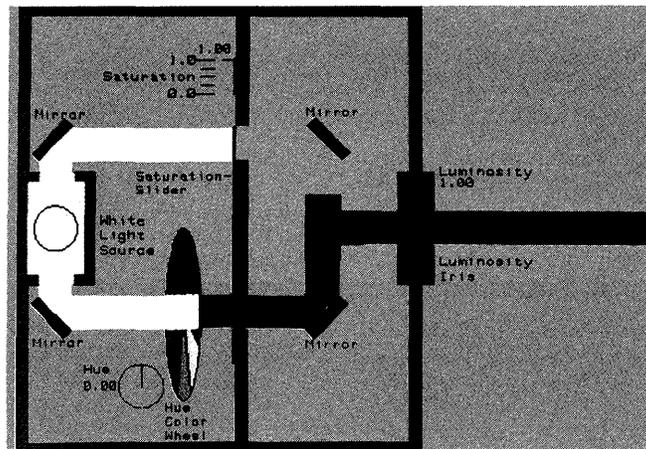
The first step is to select the Hue to work with. This can be done with a color filter. In fact, if we take several color filters, and arrange them to form a disk, we could rotate the disk in front of the white light source and choose any of the colors on the filter wheel. Since the model we are working with is a model for understanding rather than one that we actually have to build, we can consider the wheel to consist of an arbitrarily large set of color filters, so that any rotational movement of the wheel will select a different color filter. Now we will provide a mechanism to drive the wheel which will position it angularly, based on a number we send to it, a number between 0 and 1 (inclusive). We will arrange the filters as a conventional color wheel (there are advantages to this, which are discussed under "Effective Use of Color," later in this chapter). Since it is a wheel, it must meet itself somewhere, and Red is as good a place as any, so two parametric values (0 and 1) describe red. Such a color wheel would look something like this:



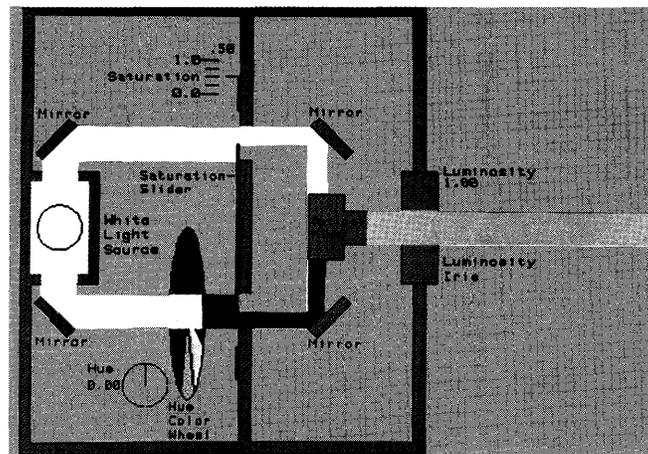
A Color Wheel for the HSL Model

5-6 Color Graphics

This arrangement is fine for producing highly saturated colors (bright, pure, intense colors), but there are other types of colors, and we need to be able to produce them. For a start, we can mix some white light (remember our white light source?) with the filtered light, to desaturate the color. Combining the filtered and unfiltered lights directly would produce 50% saturation, and would double the luminosity of the resultant color. We want to have variable control of the saturation, and, to keep the model simple, it would be better if the result of the saturation control produced a unit luminosity. If, instead of mixing the two light beams directly, we mix the outputs of two simple optical gates that are linked with a mechanical slider to control the proportions of the colored and filtered light, we can control of the saturation while maintaining a constant luminosity (intensity-per-unit-area). Once again, we will provide a mechanism which takes a number between 0 (no color - pure white) and 1 (fully saturated color) and positions the slider appropriately. The two pictures below show the model we have described, with a fully saturated red in the first one, and a 50% saturated red in the second one.

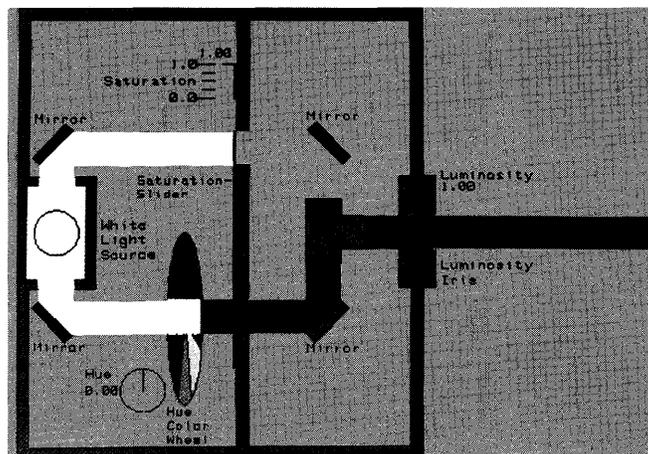


Fully Saturated Red

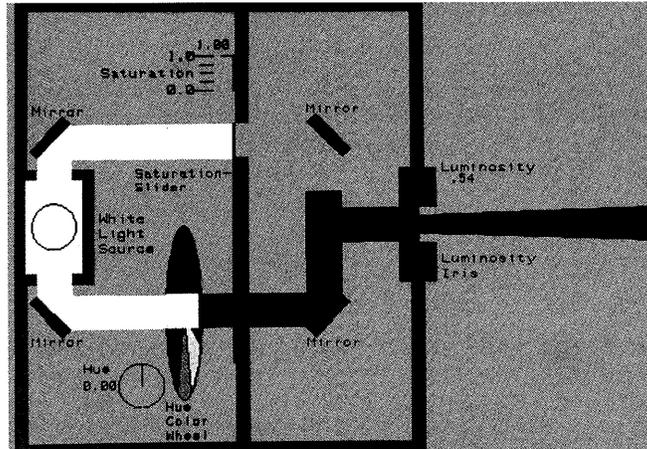


50% Saturated Red

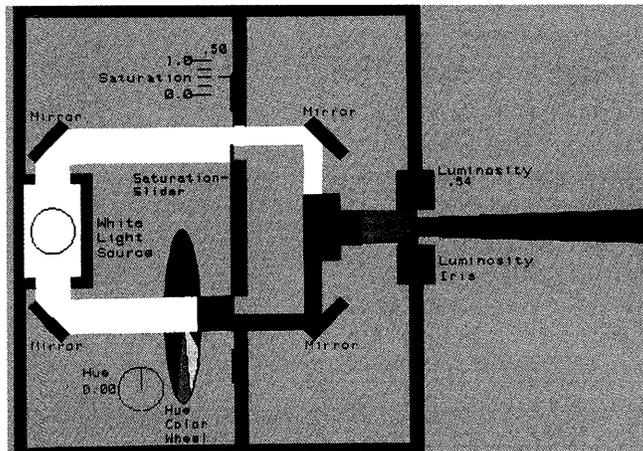
Finally, we may wish to change the luminosity, or brightness of a color (for example, brown is a dark red). This can be accomplished by putting an iris (like the one found on a 35 mm camera) after the mixer that combines the output from the saturation slider. The same 0 through 1 numerical control interface is used to control the iris, and thus the luminosity. The following three pictures show some combinations of the various controls:



Fully Saturated, Fully Luminous red.



Fully Saturated, 50% Luminous Red.



50% Saturated, 50% Luminous Red.

To recap, the Hue parameter rotates a color wheel to select a “pure” color to use. This color is then mixed with white light. The ratio of the pure colored light to the white light is controlled by the Saturation slider. Finally, the output passes through the luminosity iris (think of it as a hole you can adjust the size of) that controls the brightness of the output.

The HSL model is specified by a model selector of 2 in the SET_COLOR_MODEL statement:

```
SET_COLOR_MODEL (2);
```

A program called “COLOR” on the DGLPRG: or DOC: disc uses HSL model for interactive color selection. (“COLOR” only works correctly on the following: Model 236 Color Computer, HP 98543A, HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98550A and HP 98700A.) It produces two arrays for use with the SET_COLOR_TABLE statement, one for INTENSITY and one for COLOR. The program is over 300 lines long, almost all of which is simply a human interface to the following code in the update routine:

```
SET_COLOR_TABLE (TableEntry,
                HueVal[TableEntry],
                SatVal[TableEntry],
                LumVal[TableEntry]);
```

Which Model?

Two models are provided by the DGL color system. If you are working with primaries only, or want gray scale output, the RGB model is great. If, on the other hand, you are trying to deal with pastels and shades, you are better off with a color model that is intuitive in nature, and that is where the HSL model shines.

It is possible to get the best of both worlds by using the HSL model for the human interaction, then reading the color table to get the RGB color values.

The “COLOR” program mentioned above does exactly that to calculate the correct cursor and text color to use when the user changes the background color. This is done by reading in the RGB color table values, calculating which corner of the color cube is farthest from the background color, setting the foreground pen and text displays to that color, and then writing the RGB values back into the color map. Even though the primary interaction is with the HSL model, the RGB model is used because it is more convenient to find distances between colors in it.

```
type
  Colors=          (Red, Yellow, Green, Cyan, Blue, Magenta, White, Black);
  Modes=          (Hue, Sat, Lum, Table, Copy1, Copy2);
  EntryRange=     -1..16;
  FunnyArray=     array [Colors] of char; {array for alpha color}
  .
  .
  .
const
  FunnyChar=      FunnyArray[chr(139),chr(137),  {\ Array for   }
                  chr(136),chr(140),  { \ holding the }
                  chr(142),chr(143),  { / alpha-color }
                  chr(141),chr(138)];  {/ controllers }
  .
  .
  .
```

5-10 Color Graphics

```
var
  TableEntry:      EntryRange;
  RedBack,GreenBack,BlueBack:  real;
  LabelColor:     char;
  BackSum,OldBackSum: 0..7;
  .
  .
  .
  if TableEntry=0 then begin {Background color}
    set_color_model(1);      {RGB}
    inq_color_table(0,RedBack,GreenBack,BlueBack);  {get RGB values}
    BackSum:=0;              { \ Calculate the      }
    if RedBack<0.5 then BackSum:=4;      { \ background color  }
    if GreenBack<0.5 then BackSum:=BackSum+2; { / in order to make  }
    if BlueBack<0.5 then BackSum:=BackSum+1; { / contrasting text.  }
    if OldBackSum<>BackSum then begin {Color change}
      case BackSum of
        0: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Black];   { \           }
        1: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Blue];    { \           }
        2: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Green];   { \ Translate the }
        3: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Cyan];    { \ RGB background }
        4: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Red];     { / sum to a      }
        5: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Magenta]; { / complementary }
        6: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Yellow];  { / text color.  }
        7: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[White];   { /           }
      end; {case BackSum of}
      MenuLine;                          {Print the menu line}
      OldBackSum:=BackSum;                 {store for future comparisons}
      set_color_table(1,1-RedBack,
                     1-GreenBack,
                     1-BlueBack);         { \ Make pen one  }
                                           { > complementary, }
                                           { / too.          }
    end; {if}
    set_color_model(2);                    {HSL}
  end; {if TableEntry=0}
```

One point brought out by the preceding example is that the models can be mixed freely. There is nothing to prevent using the RGB model to set a gray background color and a black pen, and then using the HSL model to produce the rest of the palette. Use whatever is easiest for what you want to do.

If you are interested in pursuing the color models, the RGB model is called a Color Cube and the HSL model is called the Color Cylinder. These models represent idealized color spaces and are discussed next.

Color Spaces

If you ask broadcast engineers what the primary colors are, they will probably tell you “Red, green, and blue.” If you ask printers what the primary colors are, they will probably tell you “Cyan, magenta, and yellow.” If you ask physicists, they will probably smile and say “That’s not the right question.” Let’s see if we can get enough information about color systems to ask the right question.

Primaries and Color Cubes

The reason for the confusion is that there are two sets of color primaries. Red, green and blue are additive primaries. Cyan, magenta, and yellow are subtractive primaries. Each of these sets of primaries can be used to construct what is referred to as a *color cube*. These are called the RGB color cube and the CMY color cube.

Each of the color cubes can be used to describe a *color space*. Color spaces are mathematical abstractions which are convenient for scientific descriptions of color. This is because the color spaces provide a coordinate system for describing colors. Once you have a coordinate system, you can talk about and manipulate colors mathematically.

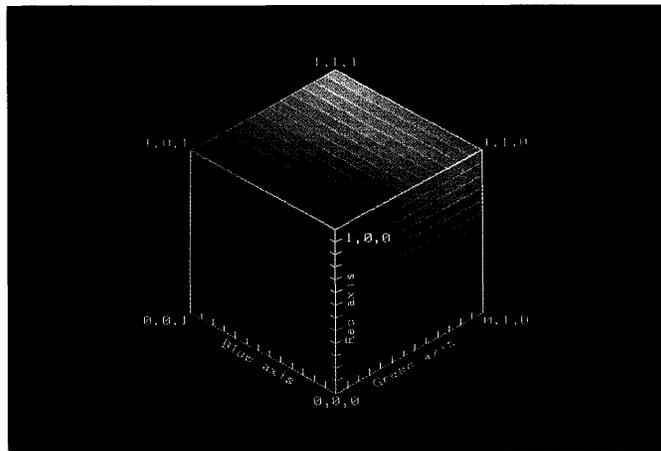
In addition to the color cubes, other color coordinate systems exist. While there are many, we will only look at HSL Color Space, because it is one of the available color models in DGL. First, the cubes.

The RGB Color Cube

The RGB color cube describes an *additive* color system. In an additive color system, color is generated by mixing various colored light sources. (Color mixing is discussed in “Effective Use of Color,” below.)

The origin (0,0,0) of the RGB color cube is black. Increasing values of each of the additive primaries (Red, Green, and Blue) move towards white (the opposite corner of the cube.) The maximum for all three colors is white (1,1,1).

A diagonal of the cube connecting (0,0,0) and (1,1,1) represents gray shades, which are generated by incrementing all three color axes equally.



The RGB Color Space

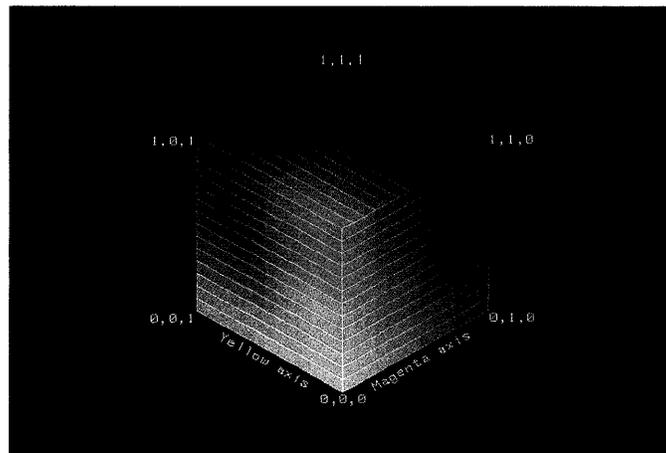
NOTE: This photo is a multiple exposure of Model 236 Color Computer CRT.

The CMY Color Cube

The CMY color cube represents a subtractive color system. In a subtractive color system, colors are created by subtracting colors out of a pure white (containing all colors equally) light source. This most often occurs when light is reflected off of surfaces containing, or coated with, pigments. This happens in printing and painting, among other operations.

The origin (0,0,0) for the CMY color cube is white. This represents all the colors in a perfect white light source being reflected by a white (reflecting all colors) surface. Increasing values of each of the subtractive primaries (Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow) move towards black (the opposite corner of the cube.) The maximum for all three colors is black (1,1,1).

A diagonal of the cube connecting (0,0,0) and (1,1,1) represents gray shades, which are generated by incrementing all three color axes equally. While the CMY color model is not supported by the DGL, it is important to understand when you get to color hard copy.



CMY Color Space

NOTE: This photo is a multiple exposure of Model 236 Color Computer CRT.

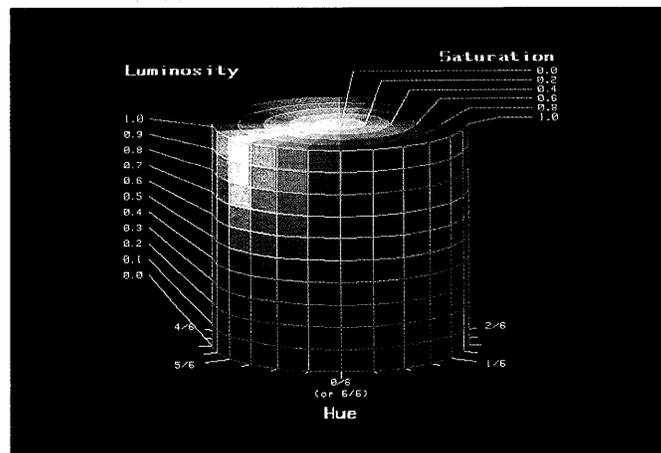
The HSL Color Cylinder

The color cubes are very useful for working with physical systems that are based on color primaries. They are not always intuitive, though.

The HSL color cylinder resides in a cylindrical coordinate system. A cylindrical coordinate system is one in which a polar coordinate system representing the X-Y plane is combined with a Z-axis from a rectangular coordinate system.

- The coordinates are normalized (range from 0 through 1).
- **Hue** (H) is the angular coordinate.
- **Saturation** (S) is the radial coordinate.
- **Luminosity** (L) is the altitude above the polar coordinate plane.

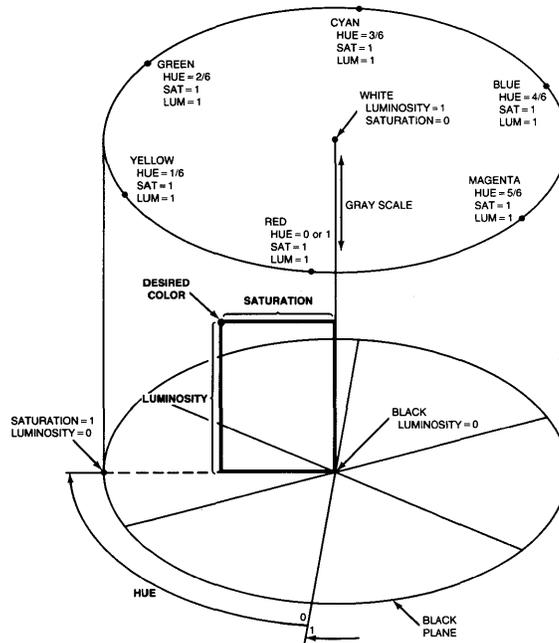
The cylinder rests on a black plane ($L = 0$) and extends upward, with increasing altitude (Luminosity) representing increasing brightness. Whenever luminosity is at 0, the values of saturation and hue do not matter.



HSL Color Cylinder

NOTE: This photo is a multiple exposure of Model 236 Color Computer CRT.

White is the center of the top of the cylinder ($L = 1, S = 0$). The center line of the cylinder ($S = 0$) is a line which connects the center of the black plane ($L = 0, S = 0$) with white ($L = 1, S = 0$) through a series of gray steps. (L from 0 to 1, $S = 0$). Whenever saturation is 0, the value of hue does not matter. The outer edge of the cylinder ($S = 1$) represents fully saturated color.



HSL Color Specification

Using the above drawing (HSL Color Specification,) hue is the angular coordinate, saturation is the radius, and luminosity is the altitude of the desired color.

Reality Intrudes

It would be fantastic if that were all you needed to understand in order to use the color capabilities in DGL. Unfortunately, "Reality rears its ugly head." HP does not make a piece of hardware capable of supporting the system described above. HP color computers come close to the color modeling system described above, but only approximate it.

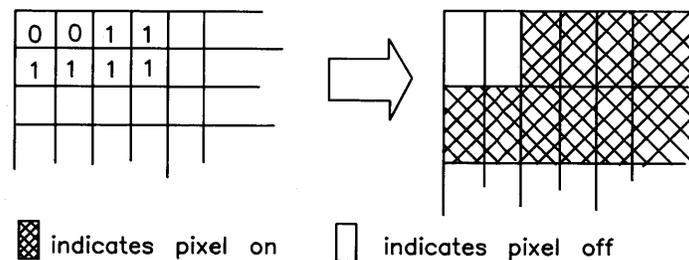
However, now that the idealized color system has been described, we can tackle some real hardware that DGL supports. We will start with the simplest display device (a plotter) and work up to the most complex (the internal color-mapped frame buffer in a color computer). Along the way, some of the hardware dependencies that make each device unique will be brought out.

Plotters

Numerous plotters are supported by DGL. All plotters support color as an attribute of graphics primitives to the extent it is possible with the number of pens available on the plotter. The SET_COLOR and SET_PGN_COLOR procedures select the pen used used to draw the primitives. Using a color selector of 0 will usually put whatever pen is in use away. *Calls to SET_COLOR_TABLE are ignored when a plotter is specified as the display device.* Plotters do not support the color modeling system.

The high-resolution displays use square pixels to display the image; the Y:X aspect ratio of the pixels is 1:1. This results in a 1024×768 -pixel displayable image. The low-resolution displays use non-square pixels to display the image; the Y:X aspect ratio is 2:1—the pixels are twice as high as they are wide. The resultant displayable resolution is 1024×400 . For the low-resolution displays, one pixel in the frame buffer is not the same as one DGL-accessible pixel. This is because DGL “pairs” the frame buffer pixels to give DGL pixels.

The following diagram illustrates DGL’s non-square pixels. As you can see, the “image” in the frame buffer, which uses frame-buffer-pixel pairs, is too short, top to bottom. In the display, though, the pixels are stretched vertically into non-square entities, yielding the desired shape of the object drawn.



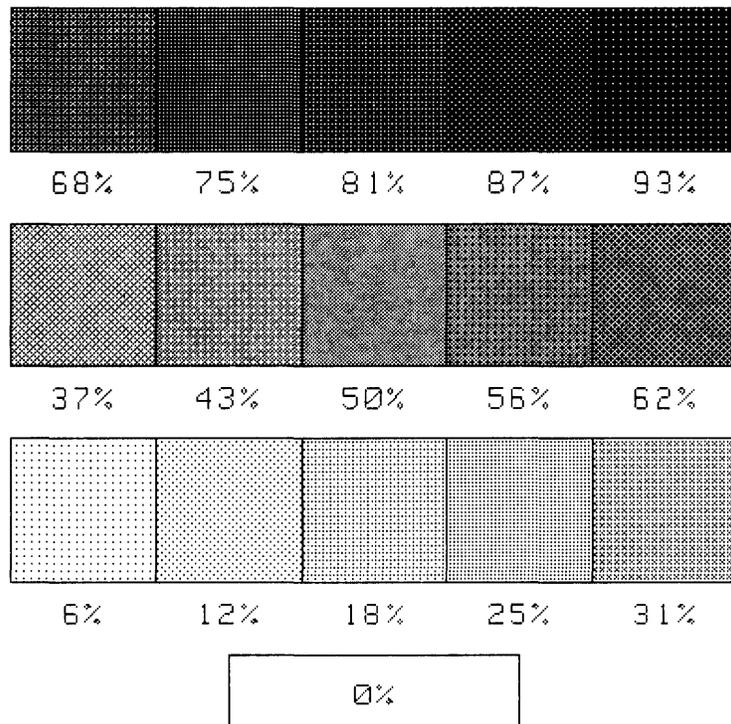
In graphics, with the low-resolution displays, DGL “doubles up” the even/odd pairs of rectangular pixels to simulate square pixels at a displayable resolution of 512×400 . Alpha does not double up the display pixels; it uses all horizontal pixels. This results in an alpha resolution of 1024×400 , or 26 lines of 80 characters, with a little extra space on the top, left, and right of the screen. Alpha can produce pixel pairs in which one of the pixels has a different value than the other. DGL will always produce pixel pairs in which the pixels have the same value.

Faking More Colors From a Frame Buffer

If you have a one-bit frame buffer and need more colors, you can go up to a three- or four-bit frame buffer to solve the problem. If you already have a four-bit frame buffer and need more colors, the problem is more difficult to solve. The same solution that allows you to add more colors to the four-bit frame buffer also allows you to add more colors to a three-bit frame buffer, or even to a one bit frame buffer. (O.K., it’s actually shades of gray in a one-bit frame buffer.) The technique is called *dithering*, and is supported on all Series 200/300 frame buffers.

Dithering

In early color systems which did not provide control of the intensity of individual pixels, dithering became a very popular method of increasing the number of shades available to the machine. In dithering, *halftoning* is used to create the impression of a larger palette than the system hardware actually supports. This is done by creating patterns of dots of the available colors which the eye will (hopefully) combine into a perceived color different from the colors used to produce the patterns. The effectiveness of this technique depends on the distance from the display, the patterns involved, and the eye of the beholder. For example, if you want to produce a half intensity red, you can turn on half the dots in an area, and it will look half-bright. The 50% pattern fools the eye quite effectively.



Half Tone Color Selection

Thus, by reducing the effective resolution of the system, it is possible to provide a large number of shades of color. On color computers, this is done by imposing a grid of 4x4 squares on the CRT, that is, each of the squares is 4 pixels square. With a one-bit frame buffer, it is possible to get 17 shades of gray in the square (all pixels off, and 1 thru 16 pixels on). On a three-bit frame buffer (the HP 98627) there are three colors available, providing 4913 (17³) shades. For a four-bit frame buffer there would be 83521 (17⁴) shades. While for a six-bit frame buffer there are 24137569 shades, and an eight-bit buffer has 6975757441 shades (if the colors represented by the frame buffer were fixed). On color computers, however, it is possible to alter the colors represented by the frame buffer value, so the number of colors representable is variable – it could be larger or smaller than 83521 (which is more than the number of dithering squares available on the display, anyway) depending on the contents of the color map.

Creating A Dithered Color

The following discussion gets a little abstract, and it is not absolutely necessary to understand how dithering works to use it. It is interesting information, and can be useful knowledge if dithered areas don't do what you expect.

A color vector is a directed line connecting two points in RGB color space. The dithering process tries to match a *target vector* by constructing a *solution vector* from colors available to the frame buffer. The actual dithered color to be produced will be 16 times the target vector, since 16 points in the dither area will be combined to create it.

The color matching process requires sixteen steps. First, the target vector is compared to the vectors produced by each color in the color map. The one which is closest to the target vector is selected as the first component of the solution vector. The distance between the points in the RGB color space is used to determine how far apart the vectors are.

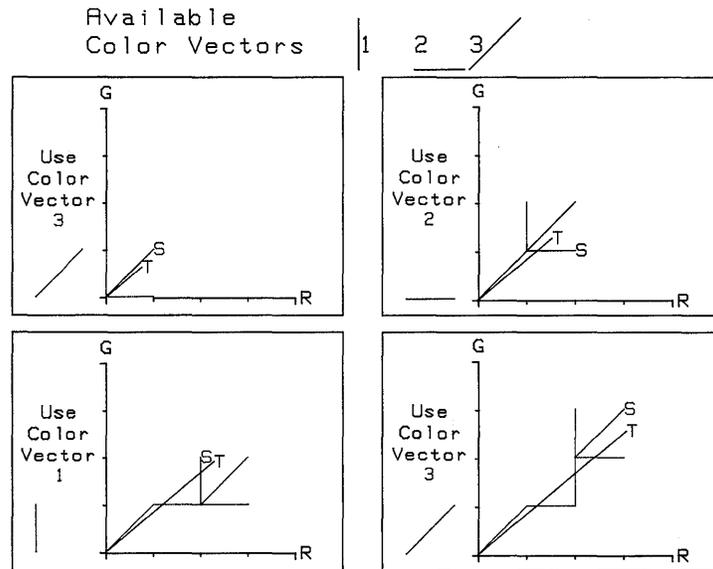
The following process is then repeated 15 times:

1. The original target vector is added to the preceding target vector to produce a new target vector.
2. A trial solution vector is created for each color in the color map by adding the vector for the color map entry to the previous solution vector. The trial solution vector that is closest to the target vector is selected as the new solution vector.

At this point, the target vector is 16 times the original target vector, and the solution vector consists of a summation of color vectors available to the frame buffer that produce, at each iteration, the vector closest to the target vector.

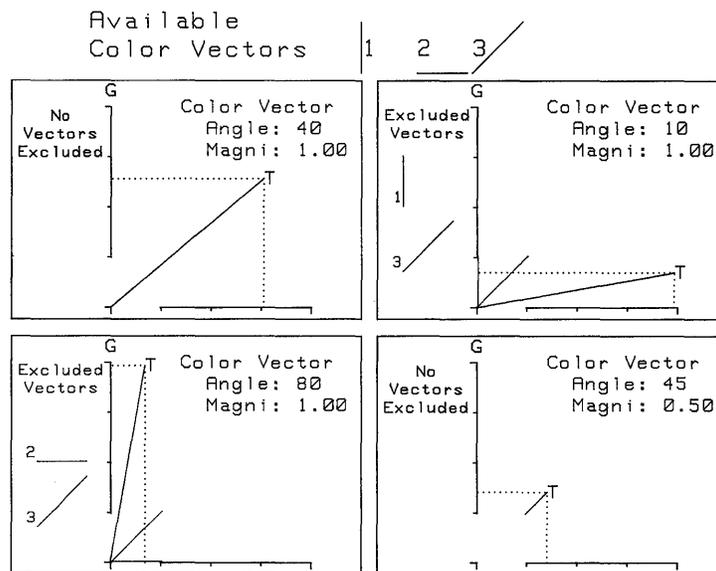
If all this has left your head spinning, let's take a look at a simplified system to see how the process works. Our simplified system will be a two color system (to keep it a two dimensional problem) with a 2×2 dither cell (which means we only have to look at four steps in the total process).

We will use green and red (let's not get "tangled up in blues") for the two axes. There will be three colors available to the frame buffer - a unit green, a unit red, and a combination of a unit red and a unit green. The vectors each of these colors produce is drawn at the top of the "Color Vector Matching" Diagram, shown below. At each step in the process, the target vector is labeled "T" and the solution vector is labeled "S." In addition, the test vectors that are not used are shown, with no labels on the endpoints.



Color Vector Matching

In actuality, the entire set of colors available to the frame buffer is not necessarily used for creating a color. Before the color matching process is started, the colors available to the frame buffer are sorted into two groups; those within the target cube, and those outside the target cube. The target cube is the cube formed by using the origin of the RGB color space and a point representing 16 times the target vector as diagonal corners to form a cube. Going back to our two dimensional model, we will construct a target square for the system. For a vector near one of the axes, the unit vector on the other axes will be excluded from the solution set, since it lies outside the target square.



Two Dimensional Target Square

Once the colors have been selected for the solution vector, the colors are sorted by luminosity and filled into the following precedence matrix (the most luminous color is filled into the lowest numbered pixel):

1	13	4	16
9	5	12	8
3	15	2	14
11	7	10	6

The dither precedence matrix is actually tied to pixel locations on the CRT. The matrix is repeated across the CRT and from the top to the bottom of the CRT (just divide the number of pixels on each axis by 4 to get the number of repeats). Areas to be filled are mapped against the fixed dithering pattern. All dither cells completely within an outline to be filled are turned on according to the precedence pattern. Cells which are only partially within the border are only partially enabled. If the area fill pattern calls for a pixel outside the boundary to be set, it will not be.

There are problems with dithering:

- The dithered colors are not necessarily accurate representations of the color specified. Looking at the “Color Vector Matching” Diagram shown above, the solution vector does not actually match the target vector, it just comes near it. This is highly dependent on the colors available to the frame buffer. A 4-by-4 dither cell with one full intensity green pixel does not look the same as the same cell filled with 1/15 green.
- The dithered color selection tends to produce textures. In some cases, the textures overwhelm the shade produced.
- The dithered colors are not stable if the color map is altered on a color computer. (This is discussed in more detail under “Color Maps,” below.)
- The dithering operation produces anomalies when the area to be filled is thin. If it is less than four pixels wide or high, it cannot contain the entire dither cell and the results can be surprising for colors which turn on small portions of the cell.

If You Need More Colors

If you have an application that requires more colors than are available to your frame buffer, the first thing to do is see if you can redefine it to use the colors available to the frame buffer. In many cases this is possible, and the higher quality of the frame buffer palette is worth a little checking to see if you can use it.

If you have to use dithering, here are some hints for getting the best results:

- Check the colors to see if you are going to get objectionable texturing. Sometimes relatively minor shifts in color definition can produce significant differences in the patterns used in dithering.
- Remember – *you can't draw lines with dithered colors*. DGL will automatically use the closest available color from the frame buffer.
- If you are on a color computer, make sure your color palette is correctly set up for dithering.

On all frame buffers other than the color computers, all the color table entries are potential dithered colors. On a color computer, however, only the upper 16 entries of the color table are dithered colors. The lower half of the color table maps directly to the hardware *color map*. The color map is one of the most powerful graphic tools yet invented. It is described below, under "Series 200/300 Color Graphics System."

Frame Buffer Contents

Now that you understand frame buffers and dithering, it's possible to describe what is actually found in a frame buffer. At any given time, the values written to the frame buffer fall into four categories:

- *Background Value* - Whenever CLEAR_DISPLAY is executed, all the pixel locations in the frame buffer are set to the current background color. The background color is described by entry 0 in the color table.
- *Line Value* - The SET_COLOR statement is used to determine the value written to the frame buffer for all lines drawn. This includes all lines (including characters created by GTEXT) and outlines (for polygons with the edge parameter true in the polygon style table).
- *Polygon Interiors* - The SET_PGN_COLOR statement is used to specify the value written to the frame buffer for filling areas (for polygons with the fill attribute true in the polygon style table).
- *Dithered Colors* - when an application uses more colors than the frame buffer can support directly (see "Frame Buffer Depth," below), dithering is used to create as close an approximation of the color as can be done by mixing colors available to the frame buffer. Dithered colors can only be used for the background and for polygon interiors, not for lines.

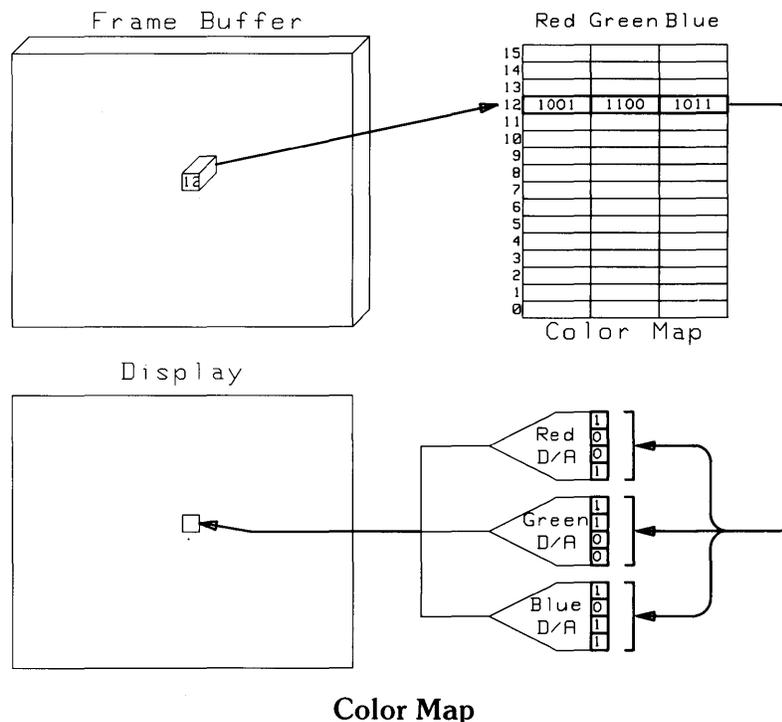
Series 200/300 Color Graphics System

The biggest benefit of the color computer is that it makes experimenting with color so easy. With a bit-mapped frame buffer and a color map, it is easy to test out ideas before you use them. It is also possible to use the color map for simple animation effects and some just plain impressive images.

It is possible to use the color computer with the default color map. The color used will depend directly on the value in the frame buffer. This is fine if the work you are doing can be accomplished using the 16 (or 64, or 256) colors supplied as the system defaults. This is often not the case, and this overlooks one of the most powerful features of the color computer – the color map.

Color Map (Model 236 Color Computer)

The color-mapped system uses the value in the frame buffer as an index into a color map. The color map contains a much larger description of the color to be used and, just as importantly, the color description used is *indirect*. Thus, the value in the frame buffer does not say “use color 12”, but rather “use the color described by register number 12”.



The CRT refresh circuitry reads the value from the pixel location in the frame buffer, uses it to look up the color value in the color map, and displays that color at that pixel location on the CRT. Thus, it is possible to draw a picture with a given set of colors in the color map (a set of colors is called a *palette*) and then change palettes and produce a new picture by redefining the colors, rather than having to redraw the picture. (The binary numbers in the color map are created by the system. The user deals with normalized values, as described under “Color Specification.”)

Other color display models are similar in concept, but differ in detail.

True User Definable Color

The colors available are true user definable colors. The color can be changed on a pixel-by-pixel basis, so there are no restrictions on how the colors can be used (as there are with dithered shades, which can only be used for filling polygons). There are also no problems with texturing, as the color is not produced by mixing dot patterns.

Retroactive Color Changes

Another advantage of the color map colors comes from the indirect nature of the color map. Since the frame buffer contents only point to locations in the color map, it is possible to change the contents of the color map after an image has been created in the frame buffer, allowing “fine tuning” of the image after it has been created.

If You Need More Colors

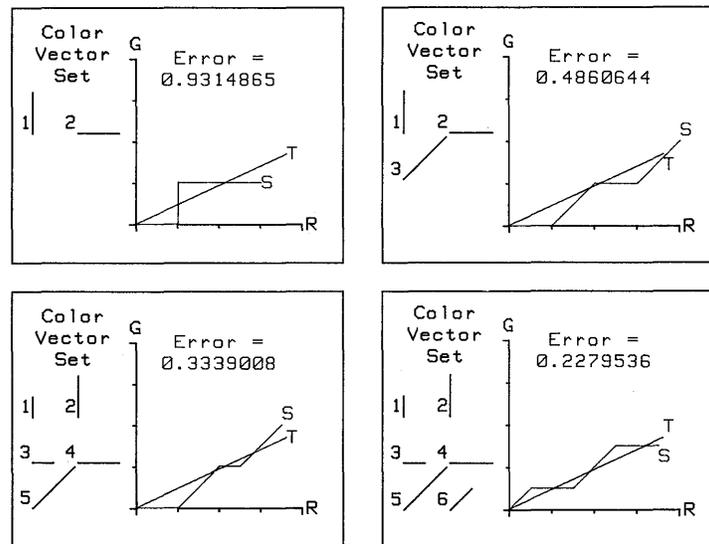
If you have an application that requires more colors than the number that are available, the first thing to do is see if you can redefine the application to use the available colors. In many cases this is possible, and the higher quality of the color mapped palette is worth a little checking to see if you can use it.

The color computer provides dithering for applications that require more shades than are available at any single time with the color map. The upper part of the color table (last real entry plus one, through last real entry plus sixteen) provide access to dithered colors, although they will fill with a single pen if the color requested exists in the current color map.

If you absolutely have to get at a larger palette, then load a palette optimized for dithering (optimizing for dithering is described below) and **stick with dithering**. Don't try to mix color map redefinition and dithering - it will probably cause you a lot of grief. Especially, do not try to do interactive redefinition of the color map in a system that is also using dithering.

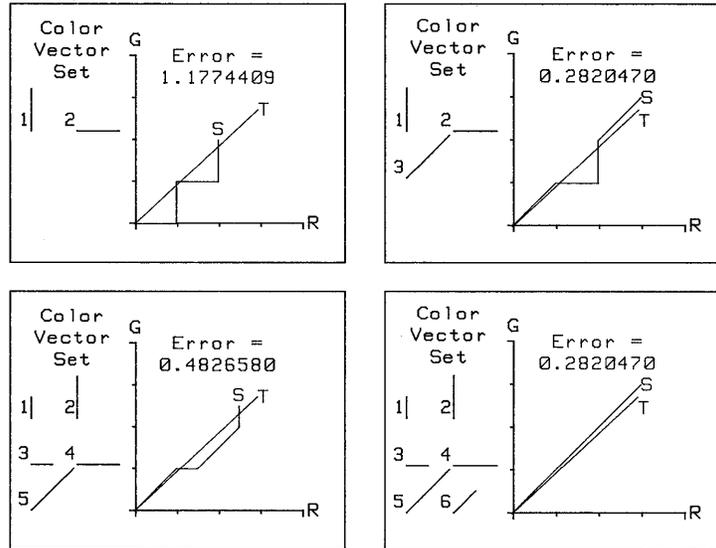
Optimizing For Dithering

The actual color palette you require determines the optimum color map values. Below are some plots of color matching on the simplified color system introduced under the discussion of dithering. Each plot is trying to match the same target vector, but using a different palette. The effect of various color maps on the distance between the target and solution vectors is striking.



Color Map Effect on Color Vector Matching

It's obvious from the drawing above that the larger the color map, the closer the match to the target color, right? Well, it's obvious from that drawing, but let's take a look at a slightly different color to match, and see what happens.



Color Map Effect on Color Vector Matching - Part 2

The point is, that the quality of color matching depends on both the contents of the color map **and** the color to be matched.

Resolution and Color Models

The resolution available with the two color models depends on the hardware being used to generate the color. Resolution on devices that use dithering is complicated by the variation in quality of the colors produced by dithering. Resolution of the color map is easier to deal with, so let's see what's available.

RGB Resolution

The resolution of the RGB model is limited by the digital to analog converters in the color computer graphics hardware. The converters allow $2^{(n)}$ states to exist for each of the CRT electron guns, so the resolution of each of the RGB parameters is $1/2^{(n)}-1$, from 0 thru 1. In fact, since the SET_COLOR_TABLE statement accepts real arguments, you can express the values as fractions, and let the computer convert to decimals. The following call would set the background to about 50% gray.

```
SET_COLOR_TABLE (0, 7/15, 7/15, 7/15)
```

HSL Resolution

The resolution of the HSL model is not specified anywhere. This is because the resolution for the various parameters is not a fixed value. The resolution for any parameter of the HSL system is dependent on all three of the parameters. The resolution is not only changed by the other two parameters, but also by the magnitude of the parameter you are varying.

Writing Modes and Color

Since HP color computer frame buffer devices are bit mapped, it makes sense that various logical combinations of the bits in the frame buffer with the bits being added by a drawing operation should be possible. Since this is a highly device dependent operation, the various drawing modes are specified with calls to OUTPUT_ESC. Four drawing modes are available:

- Dominant
- Non-Dominant
- Erase
- Complement

Three of these drawing modes have already been introduced (all but non-dominant) in Chapter 2. The meaning of the modes is slightly different for a color system than for monochromatic systems. The actual meaning of each of the modes is discussed below, but first, a slightly modified version of the DrawingMode procedure presented in Chapter 2 is listed below. The non-dominant drawing mode has been added to it.

```

$page$ {*****}
procedure DrawingMode(Mode: DrawingModeType);
{-----}
{   This procedure selects drawing modes for a color-mapped CRT,   }
{-----}
const
  SetDrawingMode=      1052;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
var
  DrawMode:      array [1..1] of integer;      { \   This is all stuff that   }
  Rarray:        array [1..1] of real;         { >   is needed by the       }
  Error:         integer;                      { /   "output_esc" procedure. }
begin
  {procedure "DrawingMode"}
  case Mode of
    Dominant:     DrawMode[1]:=0;              { \   Convert DrawingMode enumerated   }
    NonDominant: DrawMode[1]:=1;              { \   type into the appropriate       }
    Erase:        DrawMode[1]:=2;             { /   value for OUTPUT_ESC procedure. }
    Complement:   DrawMode[1]:=3;             { /                                     }
  end; {case}
  { /                                     }
  output_esc(SetDrawingMode,1,0,DrawMode,Rarray,Error);      {set it}
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,' in procedure "DrawingMode".');
end;
  {procedure "DrawingMode"}

```

The global TYPE declaration for DrawingModeType must also be changed:

```

DrawingModeType = (Dominant, Erase, Complement, NonDominant);

```

“Draw” has been changed to “Dominant” to make it consistent with references to the non-dominant mode.

Dominant Writing

Dominant writing is the easiest to understand. When DGL has a new value to write to a location in the frame buffer, whatever is already in the frame buffer is overwritten, and thus lost. The system wakes up in the dominant mode.

Non-Dominant Writing

All the techniques described up until now have dealt with dominant writing to the frame buffer. In the dominant writing mode, the color selector is written directly to the color map, and overwrites whatever is currently in the frame buffer. In non-dominant writing, a bit-by-bit logical-or is performed on the contents of the frame buffer and the table entry selector value being written to the frame buffer. Thus, if color selector 1 is written to a buffer location that has already been written to with color selector 6, the buffer location will contain 7, but writing color selector 2 to a buffer location that has already been written to with color selector 6 will not change the contents.

Erasing

Erasing is a fairly simple concept in frame buffers that are a single bit deep. You just restore the background by setting the portion of the frame buffer you wish to erase to 0. The concept is a little more complex in frame buffers with more depth (such as a color computer.) At the simplest level, you can simply set the contents of the frame buffer to the background color, using a call to CLEAR_DISPLAY.

It is also valuable to erase a single line. This can be done by setting the drawing mode to erase, and then re-drawing the line you wish to erase. In the erase mode, the erasure is done non-dominantly. This means that the bits which have a 1 value in the current color table entry selector are cleared to 0 in the frame buffer entries that are modified by the line drawn in the erase mode. For example, if a table entry selector of 5 is used to erase the a line written with a table entry of 5, the frame buffer entries are returned to 0. If, however, the same line crosses a frame buffer entry of 7, the result is a value of 2 (only the bits set in 5 are cleared to 0 by the operation).

The only method that *insures* erasing a line is to select the dominant writing mode and draw over the line in the background color. This is done with a table entry selector of 0 (for the frame buffer background) or a table entry selector equal to a "local background," if the line you are trying to erase is drawn across an area filled with a color other than the background color.

Complementary Writing

The complementary drawing mode is provided for operations (such as making your own cursor) that need to put an image on the screen that is always visible, but that can also be taken off the screen without damaging the background. On a color computer, the concept of a complementary pen is extended to deal with the bit values (n) in the color map. In the non-dominant mode, the bit pattern represented by the table entry selector will be exclusively-ORed with the contents of the frame buffer.

The complement occurs only for the bits which are one in the table entry selector. Thus an entry selector of -6 would complement bits 1 and 2 of the frame buffer. If a 1 exists in a frame buffer location and a line is drawn over it with entry selector 6, a 7 will now be in the location. Writing over the pixel with the same table entry selector will return it to a 1.

Making Sure Echoes Are Visible

It is important to understand that the complementing is of the frame buffer, not the color map. You are responsible for making sure that the complemented frame buffer values are visible against one another. Be careful of placing the same color in two locations on the color map that are complements of one another. If you pick one of them as an echo color and then try to use the echo over an area filled with the other value, you will not be able to see it.

Drawing Modes and the Frame Buffer

Let's try to make things a little more concrete. We will look at a 9×9 section of a frame buffer, and draw some lines in the various modes, with different table entry selectors. Starting in the dominant mode, if we draw a cross with a table entry selector of 5, and then put a square with a table entry selector of 7 down on top of it, the following frame buffer results:

0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	7	7	7	7	7	0	0
0	0	7	0	5	0	7	0	0
5	5	7	5	5	5	7	5	5
0	0	7	0	5	0	7	0	0
0	0	7	7	7	7	7	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0

Dominant Writing to the Frame Buffer

If we then set the erase drawing mode and use a table entry selector of 5 to try to erase the horizontal element of the cross, we end up with two pixels of the horizontal element *not* erased, since the square had changed those locations to a 7, and the erase mode only erases the bits that are set to one in the table entry selector. The frame buffer ends up looking like this:

0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	7	7	7	7	7	0	0
0	0	7	0	5	0	7	0	0
0	0	2	0	0	0	2	0	0
0	0	7	0	5	0	7	0	0
0	0	7	7	7	7	7	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0

Erase Writing to the Frame Buffer

If you want to set a line to the background color, do it in dominant mode, with a table entry selector (in SET_COLOR) of 0.

Now, clear the frame buffer, and let's take a look at non-dominant writing. Non-dominant writing ORs the contents of the frame buffer with the table entry selector. Let's put the cross and the square in the frame buffer, again, but this time we will use non-dominant mode, and a pen selector of 2 for the square. The cross will be written first, and then the square. The following frame buffer results:

0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	2	2	7	2	2	0	0
0	0	2	0	5	0	2	0	0
5	5	7	5	5	5	7	5	5
0	0	2	0	5	0	2	0	0
0	0	2	2	7	2	2	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0

Non-Dominant Writing to the Frame Buffer

Now let's try some complementary writing to the frame buffer we got from the non-dominant writing example, above. We will draw over the horizontal line, using a color table entry selector of 7. The first time, we get the following:

0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	2	2	7	2	2	0	0
0	0	2	0	5	0	2	0	0
2	2	0	2	2	2	0	2	2
0	0	2	0	5	0	2	0	0
0	0	2	2	7	2	2	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0

Complementary Writing to the Frame Buffer

If we do it again, we end up with this:

0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	2	2	7	2	2	0	0
0	0	2	0	5	0	2	0	0
5	5	7	5	5	5	7	5	5
0	0	2	0	5	0	2	0	0
0	0	2	2	7	2	2	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0

More Complementary Writing to the Frame Buffer

Notice that the first line is highly visible (assuming the color map contents do not produce the same colors for several entries in the frame buffer), but that the frame buffer is restored to its original values after the second operation. *This will not be true if a line is drawn through the area before the complementary line is “undrawn.”* Always undraw complementary lines before you try to add things to the frame buffer.

Special Considerations

The drawing modes mentioned above are only available on frame buffers. There are some special interactions with various primitives in the graphics system that need to be taken into consideration.

Text

When text is written in the complementary mode, gaps will be produced in the characters, wherever the character intersects itself. This includes crossovers *and* endpoints of lines that overlap. Readability of the text can be heavily impacted by this. Make sure you want the result before putting GTEXT calls while the drawing mode is complementary.

Polygons

Device independent polygons (INT_POLYGON and POLYGON) are written to the frame buffer using the current drawing mode. Device dependent polygons (INT_POLYGON_DD and POLYGON_DEV_DEP) **ignore** the drawing mode. Make sure you use the correct one if you want the drawing mode to work.

Effective Use of Color

At the beginning of this chapter, it was pointed out that color is a very powerful tool, and that it is also easy to misuse. While it is beyond the scope of this book to provide an exhaustive guide to color use, a few comments can be made on using color effectively.

This section will deal with seeing color first, to lay the groundwork. This is followed by a discussion on designing effective display images, since effective color use is almost impossible if the image is fundamentally unsound.

After laying the groundwork, effective color use is discussed, from both the objective and subjective standpoints.

Seeing Color

The human eye responds to wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation from about 400 nm to about 700 nm (4000 to 7000 angstrom). We call this visible light. Visible light ranges from violet (400 nm) to red (700 nm). If all the frequencies of visible light are approximately equally mixed, the result is called white light.

The eye's ability to discriminate color is reduced as the light level is reduced. This means that the variety of colors perceivable at low light levels is smaller than the variety at higher light levels.

The eye is most sensitive to colors in the middle of the visible spectrum, a yellow-green color. The eye is least sensitive to the shorter wavelengths, which are at the blue end of the spectrum. Sensitivity to red is between that of yellow-green and blue. Two things seem to be associated with the sensitivity of the eye to various colors:

- The eye can distinguish the widest range of colors in the yellow-green region, and the smallest variety of colors in the blue region.
- The eye is most sensitive to detail in the yellow-green region.

Why and how any of the above works is explained by color theorists. There are a large number of theories of color, and all of them work for explaining the specific phenomena the researchers were studying when they developed the theory, but none of them seem to be able to explain it all. The list of references at the end of this chapter include several on how vision works.

It's All Subjective, Anyway

One of the reasons that there are so many color theories is that no two people seem to perceive color the same way. In fact, the same person will many times perceive color differently at different times. In addition to the physiological and psychological variables in color perception, many environmental factors are important. Ambient lighting and surrounding color affect the perceived color tremendously.

At this point, it will be well worth your time to compile and execute the program "COLOR", from the "DGLPRG:" or "DOC:" disc. Try setting the background color to each of the pen colors, and see how different the foreground colors look against the different colors. In some cases, the lines even look slightly different from the filled rectangles of the same color. It turns out that the size of a color sample affects how it is interpreted, too.

The subjectivity of color, and the importance of background color in interpreting colors is the whole reason the program “COLOR” is provided. The color selector program lets you select the background color and provides both filled areas and lines due to the effect of the background color and the size of the color sample on the perception of color. The only way to insure a set of colors works well together is to try it and see.

Mixing Colors

If two distinct audio tones are played simultaneously, you will hear both of them. If the same area is illuminated by two or more different colors of light, you will not perceive the original colors of light, but rather a single color, and it will be not be one of the original colors. What you will perceive is called the *dominant wavelength*.

The CRT uses three different colored phosphors (Red, Green, and Blue) and mixes various intensities of the resulting lights to produce one of 4096 colors at any point on the CRT. What you actually see is the resulting dominant wavelength. This is an additive color system.

Mixing with pigments is a little different. Pigments in inks and paints absorb light. The idea with pigments is to subtract all but the color you want out of a white light source. This is a subtractive color system, and the primary colors are cyan, magenta, and yellow.

The different mechanisms for mixing additive and subtractive colors make it difficult to reproduce images created with additive colors (like a CRT) in a subtractive medium (like a plotted or printed page.) Photographing the CRT is the best method currently available for color hard copy. This problem is discussed in more depth at the end of this chapter under “Color Hard Copy.”

Designing Displays

While the design of displays is not really a color topic, a few words about it are in order before we get into the effective use of color. If the design of an image is fundamentally unsound, all the good color usage in the world is not going to help it.

Whenever you put an image on a CRT, you have created a graphic design. The design will either be a good one or a bad one, and if you know this, you have automatically increased your chances of creating a good design. If you are going to be creating a lot of displays, either in a lot of programs or in a single large program, you need a graphic designer. Many people have a natural talent for graphics - an ability to look at an image and tell whether it is graphically sound or not. If you don't have that talent (or feel you could use some help) there are two courses of action that might be productive for you; you can hire a graphic designer or become one. Renting one is expensive and becoming one is time-consuming, but if you are trying to communicate with users, *you have to understand graphic design*. While getting a degree in graphic arts may be impractical for some programmers, a course or two in the field will prove very useful if you do very much programming.

While this book can't turn you into a graphic designer, a few simple hints may help you on your next program.

The most important thing in communicating with people is to keep it simple. Don't try to communicate the total sum of human knowledge in a single image. It is much more effective to have several screens of information that a user can call up as required, than a single screen so complicated that the user can't find what he wants on it.

Try to encode everything redundantly, in case one of the encoding methods fails. For example, if you color code information, use positional coding (the location of the information tells something about the nature of the information) too. Remember, the person reading the screen is probably *not* the person who wrote the program, and even if you are writing the program for yourself, you may forget how it works by the next time you try to use it.

Another important thing to remember is to be consistent. Always try to place the same type of information in the same area of the CRT and use the same encoding methods for similar messages. Don't use flashing to encode important information on one display and then use inverse video for the same thing seven displays into the program.

Objective Color Use

In spite of the subjectivity of color, there are some fairly objective things that you should know about color. Some of the things that can be done with color don't depend heavily on subjective interpretation.

Color Blindness

A fact of life that it is dangerous to ignore is that some people are color-blind. The most common form of color blindness is red-green color blindness (the inability to distinguish red and green). Avoid encoding information using red-green discrimination, or these people will have difficulty using the system.

Subjective Color Use

Choosing appropriate colors for a program to use can be tricky, and constitutes a significant part of the job of a good graphic designer. In the final analysis, it is a largely a matter of trying combinations until you come up with a set of colors that look good together. If your application is complex, it will be well worth your while to consult with a graphic designer about the color scheme and layout of information displays for your program. There are, however, a few fairly fundamental things to remember in designing your programs.

Choosing Colors

First, and probably most important, is to use color sparingly. Color always has a communication value and using it when it carries no specific information adds noise to the communication.

Use some method for selecting the colors - one of the best is a color wheel, similar to the one shown in the section on the HSL color model.

- Try varying the luminosity or saturation of a color and its complement (opposite it on the color wheel).
- Try color triplets (three equally-spaced colors) and other small sets of colors equally-spaced around the color wheel.
- Pastels (less than fully-saturated colors) tend not to clash.

Give careful attention to your background color. Remember that a filled area can become the background color for a portion of the image on the CRT.

- If you are using a small number of colors, use the complement of one of them for the background.
- If you are using a large number of colors, use a gray background.

If two colors are not harmonious, a thin black border between them can help.

Use subtle changes (such as varying the saturation or luminosity of a hue) for differentiating subtly different messages and major changes (such as large changes in the hue of saturated colors) to convey major differences.

Most of all, think and experiment. The final criteria is “Does this display communicate the message?”.

Psychological Color Temperature

Temperatures ranging from cool to hot are associated with colors ranging from blue to red (ice blue - fire red). This is actually the opposite of physical reality, where the higher the temperature, the shorter the wavelength (blue is a black body radiation of about 7600° K while red is about 3200° K) but this is what people *perceive* as the relation between temperature and color. This is probably because people very seldom deal with the high temperatures and associate the blues with non-temperature related natural phenomena (oceans and ice). If you are trying to portray temperature, electrical field strength, stress, or some other continuous physical system, using the psychological color temperature can serve as a useful starting point for color coding the values.

Cultural Conventions

When trying to use color for communicating, cultural conventions are useful. Red is widely associated with danger in most western cultures, giving extra emphasis to a flashing red indicator. By the same token, a flashing green indicator would be less effective for communicating an out of range value in a system. In any specific application, it is important to understand the color associations that are common for the group using the application.

Reproducing Color Graphics

Color Gamuts

The range of colors a physical system can represent is called its *color gamut*. Color gamuts are important when you want to convert between different physical systems, because the source system may be able to produce colors the destination system cannot reproduce. An exhaustive treatment of color gamuts is beyond the scope of this book. However, here are some rules of thumb:

- The color gamuts for CRTs and photographic film are not the same, but are fairly close. If you are lucky, you can photograph the CRT and catch it on film. It may take more than one exposure, so be careful and bracket everything with several exposures.
- The color gamut for printing is significantly smaller than that of either photographic film or of a CRT. The fact that you have a picture of a CRT does not mean you can hand it to a printer and get a faithful reproduction of it.
- The color gamut of a plotter is much smaller than that of a CRT. You have to create images with the limitations of a plotter in mind if you intend to reproduce them on a plotter (see “Plotting and the CRT,” below.)

The different color gamuts available are not a problem unless you forget the differences and try to act like all physical systems have the same gamut. Think ahead if you have to reproduce images - it will save a lot a trouble.

Color Hard Copy

Color hard copy represents a translation between color systems, and many of the problems in color hard copy arise from the fact that the color gamuts available to the CRT and the hard copy device are different.

There are two basic ways to get a color hard copy of what is displayed on a color computer:

- Take a picture of the CRT.
- Re-run the program that generated the image with an external plotter selected as the display device.

The first method is the easiest and can capture (usually) whatever is on the CRT, regardless of what colors are used (see “Color Gamuts,” above.) The second requires setting up the color map to match the pens in a plotter, and is not as likely to capture what you see on the screen. Both methods are discussed below.

Photographing the CRT

Photography is an art, not a science. Capturing images off a CRT is relatively straightforward, but sometimes unpredictable due to the different color gamuts available for film and the CRT. The following guidelines will provide a starting point. If your images are not “typical” (whatever that means) you may have to go back and re-photograph some of them. Many of the CRT images in this book were captured using these guidelines.

- Use ISO 64 Color film. (Most of the color photos in this book were taken on Kodak Ektachrome 64.)
- Set up your equipment in a room that can be darkened. It will have to be darkened for the one-second exposure.
- Use a telephoto lens (the longer the better). This minimizes the effects of the curvature of the CRT.
- Use a tripod.
- Darken the room and take a one-second exposure.
- Bracket the aperture around f5.6. (One stop above and below.)

Plotting and the CRT

There are two basic reasons the CRT is hard to capture on a plotter.

- The CRT is an additive color device and a plotter is a subtractive color device.
- The color gamut of the CRT is much larger than that of the plotter.

The conversion from additive to subtractive colors is not a huge problem if the plot is a simple line drawing with few intersections and area fills. If the plot is complex, especially with lots of intersections and overlapping filled areas, the plot is much less likely to capture the display image accurately.

A possible technique described below *purposely* limits the color gamut of the CRT to give the plotter some chance of capturing it.

To set up the color map and plotter to match one another:

- Set your background to white.
- Set up pens matching the color map colors in slots 1 through 8 in the same order they are presented in the default color map listed under “Default Colors.”
- Use color table entry selectors from 8 through 15 in your drawings.
- Run the program with the color mapped CRT as the display device, modifying it as necessary to produce the image you want on the CRT.
- Re-run the program with the plotter as the display device. You will need to subtract 8 from the color table entry selectors to properly select the pens on the plotter.

While it is possible to get some idea of the plot that will be produced on the plotter, don't be surprised if they don't look exactly the same. Colors on a CRT are different in source and form from colors on a plotter, as described under “Seeing Color,” above.

Color References

The following references deal with color and vision. Texts that serve as useful introductions to the topic are starred.

* Cornsweet, T., *Visual Perception*. New York: Academic Press, 1970

Farrell, R. J. and Booth, J. M., *Design Handbook for Imagery Interpretation Equipment* (AD/A-025453) Seattle: Boeing Aerospace Co., 1975

Graham, C. H., (Ed.) *Vision and Visual Perception* New York: J. Wiley & sons, Inc., 1965

* Hurvich, L. M., *Color Vision: An introduction*. Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Assoc., 1980

Judd, D. B., *Contributions to Color Science* (Edited by D. MacAdam; 545) NBS special publication Washington: U. S. Government Printing Office, 1979

* Rose, A., *Vision: human and electronic*. New York: Plenum, 1973

Listings of Example Programs

Appendix

A

Note

Examples that include files on “DGLPRG:” may require modification. If your system was shipped on double-sided 3½ inch discs, all of the example programs are found on the “DOC:” disc. Statements such as \$INCLUDE 'DGLPRG:FILE'\$ should read \$INCLUDE 'DOC:FILE'\$.

Directory

AxesGrid:	Shows visual impact of axes and grids.
BAR_KNOB:	Shows interactivity with one degree of freedom.
BAR_KNOB2:	Shows interactivity with two degrees of freedom.
CharCell:	Relationship between characters and characters cells.
COLOR:	Demonstrates the color map.
CsizeProg:	Shows how to select character size.
DataPoint:	Supplies the data for all programs whose names start with “Sin”.
DrawMdPrg:	How to specify drawing modes (draw, erase, complement).
FillProg:	Shows how to do hatched and dithered area fills.
FillGraph:	Does a broken-line chart with the area beneath the curve shaded.
GstorProg:	Storing and retrieving graphic images.
IsoProg:	Isotropic scaling.
JustProg:	Label justification.
LdirProg:	How to specify label direction.
LOCATOR:	Demonstrates interactive drawing with many types of graphics cursors.
LogPlot:	Shows how to make logarithmic axes.
MarkrProg:	Uses markers to highlight data points on a curve.
PLineProg:	Demonstrates the POLYLINE procedure.
PolyProg:	Using POLYGON procedure.
SinAspect:	Defining aspect ratio of plotting device.
SinAxes1:	Unclipped axes.
SinAxes2:	Labelled, clipped axes.
SinClip:	Clipped axes.
SinLabel1:	Single-sized, horizontal letters.
SinLabel2:	Labels with sizes and directions specified.
SinLabel3:	Bold main title.
SinLine:	No viewport, no window, not much information.
SinViewpt:	Data displayed inside framed viewport.
SinWindow:	Data mapped into user window.

AxesGrid

```

Program AxesGrid(output);
import dgl_lib,dgl_inq;           {set graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=          3;           {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=     0;           {device control; 0 for CRT}
type
  RoundType=      (Up, Down, Near);   {used by function Round2}
var
  Ratio:          real;
  VirtXmax, VirtYmax:  real;
  LeftEdge, RightEdge:  real;
  BottomEdge, TopEdge:  real;
  ClipXmin, ClipXmax:  real;
  ClipYmin, ClipYmax:  real;
  ErrorReturn:    integer;           {variable for initialization outcome}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure Frame;
{-----}
{   This procedure draws a frame around the current window limits.   }
{-----}
const
  WindowLimits= 450;             {mnemonic better than magic number}
type
  LimitOrder=    (Xmin, Xmax, Ymin,Ymax);
  LimitType=    array [LimitOrder] of real;
var
  Pac:          packed array [1..1] of char;   { \ These are the sundries }
  Iarray:      array [1..1] of integer;       { \ needed by the call to }
  Window:      LimitType;                    { / the DGL procedure }
  Error:       integer;                       { / "inq_ws", }
begin
  inq_ws(WindowLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Window,Error);
  if Error=0 then begin
    move(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymin]);          {move to lower left corner}
    line(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymax]);          {draw to upper left corner}
    line(Window[Xmax],Window[Ymax]);          {draw to upper right corner}
    line(Window[Xmax],Window[Ymin]);          {draw to lower right corner}
    line(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymin]);          {draw to lower left corner}
  end {Error=0?}
  else writeln('Error ',Error:0,' occurred in "Frame"');
  end; {procedure "Frame"}                  {return}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure ClipLimit(Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax: real);
{-----}
{   This procedure defines the four global variables which specify where the }
{   soft clip limits are. }
{-----}

```

```

begin
if Xmin<Xmax then begin
  ClipXmin:=Xmin;
  ClipXmax:=Xmax;
end
else begin
  ClipXmin:=Xmax;
  ClipXmax:=Xmin;
end;
if Ymin<Ymax then begin
  ClipYmin:=Ymin;
  ClipYmax:=Ymax;
end
else begin
  ClipYmin:=Ymax;
  ClipYmax:=Ymin;
end;
end;
end;
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure ClipDraw(X1, Y1, X2, Y2: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure takes the endpoints of a line, and clips it. The soft
{ clip limits are the real global variables ClipXmin, ClipXmax, ClipYmin,
{ and ClipYmax. These may be defined through the procedure ClipLimit.
{-----}
label
  1;
type
  Edges= (Left,Right,Top,Bottom); {possible edges to cross}
  OutOfBounds= set of Edges; {set of edges crossed}
var
  Out,Out1,Out2:OutOfBounds;
  X, Y: real;
{-----}
Procedure Code(X, Y: real; var Out: OutOfBounds);
begin
  Out:=[]; {nested procedure "Code"}
  if x<ClipXmin then Out:=[left] {off left edge?}
  else if x>ClipXmax then Out:=[right]; {off right edge?}
  if y<ClipYmin then Out:=Out+[bottom] {off the bottom?}
  else if y>ClipYmax then Out:=Out+[top]; {off the top?}
end;
{-----}
begin
Code(X1,Y1,Out1); {body of procedure "ClipDraw"}
Code(X2,Y2,Out2); {figure status of point 1}
while (Out1<>[]) or (Out2<>[]) do begin {loop while either point out of range}
  if (Out1*Out2)<>[] then goto 1; {if intersection non-null, no line}
  if Out1<>[] then Out:=Out1
  else Out:=Out2; {Out is the non-empty one}
  if left in Out then begin {it crosses the left edge}
    y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmin-X1)/(X2-X1);{adjust value of y appropriately}
    x:=ClipXmin; {new x is left edge}
  end {left in Out?}
  else if right in Out then begin {it crosses right edge}
    y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmax-X1)/(X2-X1);{adjust value of y appropriately}
    x:=ClipXmax; {new x is right edge}
  end {right in Out?}
end

```



```

$Page$ {*****}
Procedure XaxisClip(Spacing, Location: real; Major: integer;
  Majsize, Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an X-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis. }
{ Location: The Y-value of the X-axis. }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major. }
{ Majsize: The length, in world units, of the major tick marks. }
{ Minsize: The length, in world units, of the minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
  X: real;
  SemiMajsize: real;
  SemiMinsize: real;
  Counter: integer; {keeps track of when to do major ticks}
begin {body of procedure "XaxisClip"}
  SemiMajsize:=MajSize*0.5;
  SemiMinsize:=MinSize*0.5;
  Counter:=0; {start with a major tick}
  ClipDraw(ClipXmin,Location,ClipXmax,Location);
  X:=Round2(ClipXmin,Spacing*Major,Down); {round to next lower major}
  while X<=ClipXmax do begin
    if Counter=0 then
      ClipDraw(X,Location-SemiMajsize,X,Location+SemiMajsize)
    else
      ClipDraw(X,Location-SemiMinsize,X,Location+SemiMinsize);
    Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major;
    X:=X+Spacing;
  end; {while}
end; {procedure "XaxisClip"}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure YaxisClip(Spacing, Location: real; Major: integer;
  Majsize, Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an Y-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis. }
{ Location: The X-value of the Y-axis. }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major. }
{ Majsize: The length, in world units, of the major tick marks. }
{ Minsize: The length, in world units, of the minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
  Y: real;
  SemiMinsize: real;
  SemiMajsize: real;
  Counter: integer; {keeps track of when to do major ticks}
begin {body of procedure "YaxisClip"}
  SemiMajsize:=Majsize*0.5;
  SemiMinsize:=Minsize*0.5;
  Counter:=0; {start with a major tick}
  ClipDraw(Location,ClipYmin,Location,ClipYmax);
  Y:=Round2(ClipYmin,Spacing*Major,Down); {round to next lower major}

```

A-6 Listings of Example Programs

```

while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
  if Counter=0 then
    ClipDraw(Location-SemiMajsize,Y,Location+SemiMajsize,Y)
  else
    ClipDraw(Location-SemiMinsize,Y,Location+SemiMinsize,Y);
  Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major;
  Y:=Y+Spacing;
end; {while}
end;
{procedure "YaxisClip"}
$Page$ {*****}
procedure Grid(Xspacing,Yspacing,XlocY,YlocX: real; Xmajor, Ymajor: integer;
  Xminsize, Yminsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws a grid on the plotting surface, with user-definable }
{ minor tick size. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Xspacing: The distance between tick marks on the X axis. }
{ Yspacing: The distance between tick marks on the Y axis. }
{ XlocY: The X-value of the Y-axis. }
{ YlocX: The Y-value of the X-axis. }
{ Xmin,Xmax: The left and right ends of the X-axis, respectively. }
{ Xmajor, The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ Ymajor: mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major. }
{ Xminsize: The length, in world units, of the X minor tick marks. }
{ Yminsize: The length, in world units, of the Y minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
  X, Y: real;
  Xstart,Ystart:real;
  XsemiMinsize: real;
  YsemiMinsize: real;
  Counter: integer;
begin {body of procedure "Grid"}
  XsemiMinsize:=Xminsize*0.5;
  YsemiMinsize:=Yminsize*0.5;
  Xstart:=Round2(ClipXmin,Xspacing*Xmajor,Down); {round to next lower major}
  Ystart:=Round2(ClipYmin,Yspacing*Ymajor,Down); {round to next lower major}
  {==== Draw vertical major ticks =====}
  X:=Xstart;
  while X<=ClipXmax do begin
    ClipDraw(X,ClipYmin,X,ClipYmax);
    X:=X+Xspacing*Xmajor;
  end;
  {==== Draw horizontal major ticks =====}
  Y:=Ystart;
  while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
    ClipDraw(ClipXmin,Y,ClipXmax,Y);
    Y:=Y+Yspacing*Ymajor;
  end;
end;

```

```

{==== Draw vertical minor ticks =====}
X:=Xstart;
Counter:=0;
while X<=ClipXmax do begin
  if Counter<>0 then begin
    Y:=Ystart;
    while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
      ClipDraw(X,Y-YSemiMinsize,X,Y+YSemiMinsize);
      Y:=Y+Yspacing;
    end; {while Y<=ClipYmax}
  end; {counter<>0?}
  Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Xmajor;
  X:=X+Xspacing;
end; {while}
{==== Draw horizontal minor ticks =====}
Y:=Ystart;
Counter:=0;
while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
  if Counter<>0 then begin
    X:=Xstart;
    while X<=ClipXmax do begin
      ClipDraw(X-XSemiMinsize,Y,X+XSemiMinsize,Y);
      X:=X+Xspacing;
    end; {while X<=ClipXmax}
  end; {counter<>0?}
  Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Ymajor;
  Y:=Y+Yspacing;
end; {while}
end; {procedure "Grid"}
$page$ {*****}
begin {program "AxesGrid"}
  graphics_init;
  display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn);
  if ErrorReturn=0 then begin
    {=== Do program setup =====}
    Ratio:=511/389;
    set_aspect(Ratio,1);
    if Ratio>1 then begin
      VirtXmax:=1;
      VirtYmax:=1/Ratio;
    end
    else begin
      VirtXmax:=Ratio;
      VirtYmax:=1;
    end;
    {=== Upper left viewport =====}
    LeftEdge:=0;
    RightEdge:=0.48*VirtXmax;
    BottomEdge:=0.52*VirtYmax;
    TopEdge:=VirtYmax;
    set_viewport(LeftEdge,RightEdge,BottomEdge,TopEdge);
    set_window(0,80,0,40);
    Frame;
    ClipLimit(0,80,0,40);
    XaxisClip(1,0,5,2,1);
    YaxisClip(1,0,5,2,1);
  end;
end;

```


BAR_KNOB

```

$ucsd,debug$
Program Test (keyboard,output);
import dsl_vars,dsl_types,dsl_lib,dsl_inq;
type
  States=          (On,Off);
  DrawMode=       (Draw,Erase,Comp,NonDom);
const
  FS=             chr(28);
  BS=             chr(8);
  US=             chr(31);
  LF=             chr(10);
  CR=             chr(13);
  Q=              'Q';
  Ql=             'q';
  Underline=     chr(132);
  Ind_off=       chr(128);
  Inv_On=        chr(129);
  MinBarY=       0;
  MaxBarY=       100;
  MinBarX=       180;
  MaxBarX=       220;
  IncDelta=      0.1;
var
  Error_num:     integer;
  I,TempInt:    integer;
  Level,LastLevel: real;
  Delta:         real;
  CharWidth,CharHeight: real;
  Character:     char;
  Done:         boolean;
  keyboard:     text;
  TempString:   Gstring255;
$page$ {*****}
Procedure GraphicsDisplay(State:States {On/Off});
const
  GraphicsDisp= 1050;
var
  Errors:integer;
  SwitchArray:integer;
  Dummy:real;
begin
  {procedure GraphicsDisplay}
case State of
  On:SwitchArray:=1;
  Off:SwitchArray:=0;
end; {case State of}
output_esc(GraphicsDisp,1,0,SwitchArray,Dummy,Error) ;
if Error <> 0 then
  writeln ('Error ',Error:1,' encountered in GraphicsDisplay');
end;
  {procedure GraphicsDisplay}

```

A-10 Listings of Example Programs

```

$Page$ {*****}
Procedure AlphaDisplay(State:States {On/Off});
const
  AlphaDisp=1051;
var
  Error:integer;
  SwitchArray:integer;
  Dummy:real;
begin
  {Procedure AlphaDisplay}
case State of
  On:SwitchArray:=1;
  Off:SwitchArray:=0;
end; {case State of}
output_esc(AlphaDisp,1,0,SwitchArray,Dummy,Error) ;
if Error <> 0 then
  writeln ('Error ',Error:1,' encountered in AlphaDisplay');
end;
{Procedure AlphaDisplay}
$Page$ {*****}
begin
  {Main Program}
Level:=0;
LastLevel:=Level;
graphics_init;
display_init(3,0,Error_Num);
if Error_Num=0 then begin
  AlphaDisplay(Off);
  GraphicsDisplay(On);
  set_aspect(511,389);
  set_window(0,400,-30,120);
  set_color(1);
  CharWidth:=(0.035*400);
  CharHeight:=(0.05*150);
  set_char_size(CharWidth, CharHeight);
  {---- Outline the Bar -----}
  move(MinBarX-0.5,MinBarY-0.5);
  line(MinBarX-0.5,MaxBarY+0.5);
  line(MaxBarX+0.5,MaxBarY+0.5);
  line(MaxBarX+0.5,MinBarY-0.5);
  line(MinBarX-0.5,MinBarY-0.5);
  {---- Label the bar (numeric labels) -----}
  for I:=0 to 10 do begin
    strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,I*10:3,'-');
    move (179-strlen(TempString)*CharWidth,I*10-0.24*CharHeight);
    stext (TempString);
  end; {for I:=1 to 10 }
  {---- Label the bar (textual labels) -----}
  move (221, 80-CharHeight/2);
  stext ('-High Normal');
  move (221, 80-CharHeight/2);
  stext ('-Low Normal');
  {---- How about some instructions -----}
  CharWidth:=(0.02*400);
  CharHeight:=(0.035*150);
  set_char_size(CharWidth, CharHeight);
  move (0, 5);
  TempString:='Use the Knob to'+CR+LF;
  stext (TempString);
  TempString:='Adjust the value,'+CR+LF;
  stext (TempString);

```

```

TempString:=' '+CR+LF;
stext (TempString);
TempString:='SHIFT with the knob '+CR+LF;
stext (TempString);
TempString:='speeds it up.'+CR+LF;
stext (TempString);
TempString:='';
{---- Set a good character size -----}
CharWidth:=(0.035*400);           {char width: 3.5% of screen width}
CharHeight:=(0.05*150);          {char height: 5% of screen height}
set_char_size(CharWidth, CharHeight); {install character size}
repeat
  read(Keyboard,Character);      {set character without echo to screen}
  Delta:=0;                      {start by assuming no motion}
  case Character of              {what's the character?}
    FS:  Delta:=IncDelta;        {right arrow?}
    BS:  Delta:=-IncDelta;       {left arrow (backspace)?}
    LF:  Delta:=10*IncDelta;     {down arrow?}
    US:  Delta:=-10*IncDelta;    {up arrow?}
    Q,Q1: Done:=TRUE;           {or Quit?}
  otherwise                      {if none of the above, ignore it}
  end; {case ord(Character)}
  if Delta>0 then begin          {Going Up}
    set_color(1);                {we want to draw lines}
    while (Level<LastLevel+Delta) and (Level<MaxBarY-IncDelta) do begin
      Level:=Level+IncDelta;     {new top of bar}
      move(MinBarX,Level);       {move to left edge...}
      line(MaxBarX,Level);       {...and draw to right edge}
    end {while (Level<LastLevel) and (Level<MaxBarY)}
  end {if (Delta>0) and (Level<100)}
  else begin                     {Going Down}
    if (Delta<0) and (Level>=0.5*IncDelta) then begin
      set_color(0);              {we want to erase lines}
      repeat
        move(MinBarX, Level);    {move to the left edge...}
        line(MaxBarX, Level);    {...and draw to the right edge}
        Level:=Level-IncDelta;   {new top of bar}
      until (Level<=LastLevel+Delta) or (Level<=MinBarY)
    end; {if (Delta<0) and (Level>0)}
  end;
  {---- How about some numbers? -----}
  set_color(0);                  {we want to erase lines}
  strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,LastLevel:5:1); {convert level to chars}
  move(MinBarX+(MaxBarX-MinBarX)/2-strlen(TempString)*CharWidth/2,
    MinBarY-2*CharHeight);
  stext(TempString);             {erase the old number}
  set_color(1);                  {we want to erase lines}
  strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,Level:5:1);
  move (MinBarX+(MaxBarX-MinBarX)/2-strlen(TempString)*CharWidth/2,
    MinBarY-2*CharHeight);
  stext(TempString);             {write the new}
  LastLevel:=Level;              {remember the old number}
until Done;                      {repeat until user hits [Q]}
GraphicsDisplay (Off);           {turn off graphics display}
AlphaDisplay (On);               {turn on alpha display}
display_term;                     {clean up loose ends}
end;
graphics_term;                   {terminate the graphics package}
end.                               {main program}

```

BAR_KNOB2

```

$ucsd,debug$
Program Test(keyboard,output);
import dgl_vars,dgl_types,dgl_lib,dgl_inq;
type
  DrawMode=          (Draw,Erase,Comp,NonDom);
  BarX=              array[1..5] of integer;
  States=            (On,Off);
const
  FS=                chr(28);
  BS=                chr(8);
  US=                chr(31);
  LF=                chr(10);
  CR=                chr(13);
  Q=                 'Q';
  Q1=                'q';
  Underline=        chr(132);
  Ind_off=          chr(128);
  Inv_On=           chr(129);
  MinBarY=          0;
  MaxBarY=          100;
  MinBarX=          BarX[40,130,220,310,400];
  MaxBarX=          BarX[80,170,260,350,440];
  IncDelta=         0.1;
var
  Error_num:         integer;
  I,TempInt:         integer;
  Level,LastLevel:  array [1..5] of real;
  Bar:               integer;
  Delta:             real;
  CharWidth,CharHeight: real;
  Character:         char;
  Done:              boolean;
  Keyboard:          text;
  TempString:        Gstring$255;
$page$ {*****}
procedure SetDrawMode(Mode: DrawMode);
const
  OpSelector=        1052;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
var
  IntArray:          integer;      { \ All this stuff is needed }
  RealArray:         integer;      { > by the DGL procedure }
  Error:             integer;      { / OUTPUT_ESC. }
begin
  {procedure SetDrawMode}
  case Mode of
    Draw:   IntArray:=0;          { \ }
    NonDom: IntArray:=1;          { \ Magic numbers for the }
    Erase:  IntArray:=2;          { / four drawing modes. }
    Comp:   IntArray:=3;          { / }
  end; {case Mode of}
  output_esc(OpSelector,1,0,IntArray,RealArray,Error);
end; {procedure SetDrawMode}

```

```

$page$ {*****}
procedure GraphicsDisplay(State: States {On/Off});
const
  GraphicsDisp=      1050;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
var
  Error:             integer;      { \ All this stuff is needed }
  SwitchArray:      integer;      { > by the DGL procedure }
  Dummy:            real;         { / OUTPUT_ESC, }
begin
  {procedure GraphicsDisplay}
  case State of
    On:  SwitchArray:=1;          {1=on, and...}
    Off: SwitchArray:=0;          {0=off,}
  end; {case State of}
  output_esc(GraphicsDisp,1,0,SwitchArray,Dummy,Error);
  if Error<>0 then
    writeln('Error ',Error:1,' encountered in GraphicsDisplay');
  end;
  {procedure GraphicsDisplay}
$page$ {*****}
procedure AlphaDisplay(State: States {On/Off});
const
  AlphaDisp=        1051;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
var
  Error:             integer;      { \ All this stuff is needed }
  SwitchArray:      integer;      { > by the DGL procedure }
  Dummy:            real;         { / OUTPUT_ESC, }
begin
  {procedure AlphaDisplay}
  case State of
    On:  SwitchArray:=1;          {1=on, and...}
    Off: SwitchArray:=0;          {0=off,}
  end; {case State of}
  output_esc(AlphaDisp,1,0,SwitchArray,Dummy,Error);
  if Error<>0 then
    writeln('Error ',Error:1,' encountered in AlphaDisplay');
  end;
  {procedure AlphaDisplay}
$page$ {*****}
procedure ClearInd(Bar: integer);
begin
  {procedure ClearInd}
  SetDrawMode(Erase);
  move(MinBarX[Bar],MinBarY-1.3*CharHeight);
  line(MaxBarX[Bar],MinBarY-1.3*CharHeight);
end;
  {procedure ClearInd}
$page$ {*****}
procedure SetInd(Bar: integer);
begin
  {procedure SetInd }
  SetDrawMode(Draw);
  move(MinBarX[Bar],MinBarY-1.3*CharHeight);
  line(MaxBarX[Bar],MinBarY-1.3*CharHeight);
end;
  {procedure SetInd }

```

A-14 Listings of Example Programs

```

$Page$ {*****}
procedure UpdateValue(Bar:integer);
var
  LastCharWidth,LastCharHeight: real;
begin
  LastCharWidth:=CharWidth;           {store old character width}
  LastCharHeight:=CharHeight;         {store old character height}
  CharWidth:=(0.025*512);              {new char width: 2.5% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=(0.045*150);            {new char width: 2.5% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install the character size}
  {---- Erase the old -----}
  SetDrawMode(Erase);                 {draw with black lines}
  TempString:='';                     {null out any old value}
  strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,LastLevel[Bar]:5:1); {convert to string}
  move(MinBarX[Bar]+(MaxBarX[Bar]-MinBarX[Bar])/2-   {move to right place}
    strlen(TempString)*CharWidth/2,MinBarY-2.5*CharHeight);
  stext(TempString);                   {label the string}
  {---- Write the new -----}
  SetDrawMode(Draw);                  {draw with white lines}
  TempString:='';                     {null out any old value}
  strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,Level[Bar]:5:1);     {convert to string}
  move(MinBarX[Bar]+(MaxBarX[Bar]-MinBarX[Bar])/2-   {move to right place}
    strlen(TempString)*CharWidth/2,MinBarY-2.5*CharHeight);
  stext(TempString);                   {label the string}
  {---- Reinststate the old character size -----}
  CharWidth:=LastCharWidth;           {restore old character width}
  CharHeight:=LastCharHeight;         {restore old character height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install old character size}
end; {procedure UpdateValue }
$Page$ {*****}
begin                                  {Main Program}
  graphics_init;                       {initialize the graphics system}
  display_init(3,0,Error_Num);         {which output device?}
  if Error_Num=0 then begin            {output device initialization OK?}
    AlphaDisplay(Off);                 {turn the alpha display off}
    GraphicsDisplay(On);               {turn the graphics display on}
    set_aspect(511,389);               {use the whole screen}
    set_window(0,511,-50,110);        {scale the window for the data}
    set_color(1);                      {draw with white}
    SetDrawMode(Draw);                 {dominant drawing mode}
    CharWidth:=(0.020*400);            {char width: 2% of screen width}
    CharHeight:=(0.035*150);          {char height: 3.5% of screen height}
    set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install the character size}
  }
  {---- Make the Bars -----}

```

```

for Bar:=1 to 5 do begin
  {---- Initialize the levels -----}
  Level[Bar]:=0;           {all bars at level zero}
  LastLevel[Bar]:=Level[Bar]; {old values, too}
  {---- Outline the Bar -----}
  move(MinBarX[Bar]-1,MinBarY-(160/389)); {move to lower left corner...}
  line(MinBarX[Bar]-1,MaxBarY+(160/389)); {...draw to upper left...}
  line(MaxBarX[Bar]+1,MaxBarY+(160/389)); {...draw to upper right...}
  line(MaxBarX[Bar]+1,MinBarY-(160/389)); {...draw to lower right...}
  line(MinBarX[Bar]-1,MinBarY-(160/389)); {...and draw to lower left...}
  {---- Label the bar -----}
  TempString:='';           {null out any old value}
  strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,'Bar ',Bar:1); {convert to string}
  move(MinBarX[Bar]+(MaxBarX[Bar]-MinBarX[Bar])/2- {move to right place}
    strlen(TempString)*CharWidth/2,MinBarY-1.25*CharHeight);
  stext(TempString);           {label the text}
  {---- Put numbers alongside the bars -----}
  for I:=0 to 10 do begin
    TempString:='';           {null out any old value}
    strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,I*10:3,'-'); {convert to string}
    move(MinBarX[Bar]-strlen(TempString)*CharWidth, {move to right place}
      I*10-0.24*CharHeight);
    stext(TempString);           {label the text}
  end; {for I:=1 to 10 }
  UpdateValue(Bar);           {modify the bar}
end; {for}

{---- How about some instructions -----}
CharWidth:=(0.02*511);           {char width: 2% of screen width}
CharHeight:=(0.035*160);         {char height: 3.5% of screen height}
set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
move(0,-30);
TempString:='Use Number Keys to select a bar.'+CR+LF;
stext(TempString);
TempString:='' +CR+LF;
stext(TempString);
TempString:='Use the Knob to adjust the value.'+CR+LF;
stext(TempString);
TempString:='SHIFT speeds up the knob.'+CR+LF;
stext(TempString);
{---- Start the interactivity -----}
Bar:=3;                           {which bar active at first?}
SetInd(Bar);                       {tell the program so}
repeat
  read(keyboard,Character);         {read character with no echo to screen}
  Delta:=0;                         {assume no motion until told otherwise}
  case Character of
    FS:  Delta:=IncDelta;           {right arrow?}
    BS:  Delta:=-IncDelta;          {left arrow (or backspace)?}
    LF:  Delta:=10*IncDelta;        {down arrow?}
    US:  Delta:=-10*IncDelta;       {up arrow?}
    Q,Q1: Done:=true;               {or Quit?}
    '1'..'5': begin
      ClearInd(Bar);                {deactivate old bar}
      Bar:=ord(Character)-ord('0'); {determine new bar's number}
      SetInd(Bar);                  {activate new bar}
    end;
    otherwise                        {if none of the above, do nothing}
  end; {case}
end; {repeat}

```

A-16 Listings of Example Programs

```

if(Delta>0)then begin           {Going Up}
  SetDrawMode(Draw);           {draw with white lines}
  while (Level[Bar]<LastLevel[Bar]+Delta)
    and (Level[Bar]<MaxBarY-IncDelta)do begin
    Level[Bar]:=Level[Bar]+IncDelta;   {calculate new level}
    move(MinBarX[Bar],Level[Bar]); {move to the left end...}
    line(MaxBarX[Bar],Level[Bar]); {...and draw to the right edge}
  end {while}
end {if}
else begin                       {delta<0}
  if (Delta<0) and (Level[Bar]>=0.5*IncDelta) then begin {Going Down}
    SetDrawMode(Erase);           {draw with black lines}
    repeat
      move(MinBarX[Bar],Level[Bar]); {move to left edge...}
      line(MaxBarX[Bar],Level[Bar]); {...and draw to right edge}
      Level[Bar]:=Level[Bar]-IncDelta; {decrement level}
    until (Level[Bar]<=LastLevel[Bar]+Delta) or (Level[Bar]<=MinBarY)
  end; {if}
end; {else}
{---- How about some numbers? -----}
UpdateValue(Bar);               {change the bar's numeric label}
LastLevel[Bar]:=Level[Bar];     {remember the current value}
until Done;                     {pressed [Q] yet?}
GraphicsDisplay(Off);           {turn off graphics display}
AlphaDisplay(On);               {turn on alpha display}
display_term;                   {clean up loose ends}
end;
graphics_term;                  {terminate the graphics system}
end. {Main Program}

```

CharCell

```

Program CharCell(output);           {Program name same as file name}
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;           {access the necessary procedures}
const
  Crt=          3;                  {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=      0;                  {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  LorgType=     1..9;              {the valid values to pass the "Lorg"}
  Str255=       string[255];      {for the procedure "Glabel"}
var
  Error:        integer;           {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  I, X, Y:      integer;           {loop control variables}
$Page$ {*****}
begin                               {body of program "CharCell"}
graphics_init;                       {initialize graphics library}
display_init(Crt,Control,Error);      {initialize CRT}
if Error=0 then begin                {if no error occurred...}
  set_aspect(511,389);               {use the whole screen}
  move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1); line(1,-1); line(-1,-1);
  set_window(-2,38,-7.5,22.5);       {define appropriate window}
  set_char_size(1,2);                 { \
  move(1,21);                          { > Do main label.
  stext('Size of Character in Character Cell'); { /
  for X:=0 to 36 do begin              { \
    for Y:=0 to 15 do begin            { \
      move(X-0.1,y+0.1);               { \ Draw the four 9x15
      line(X+0.1,Y-0.1);               { \ character cells. Make
      move(X+0.1,Y+0.1);               { / a frame around each,
      line(X-0.1,Y-0.1);               { / and an X at every
    end; {for y}                       { / point.
  end; {for x}                         { /
  for I:=0 to 3 do begin               {draw a frame around each char cell}
    move(I*9,0); line(I*9,15); line(I*9+9,15); line(I*9+9,0); line(I*9,0);
  end;
  set_char_size(9,15);                 {big characters}
  move(1,4);                            {go to starting position}
  stext('Gby;');                       {label some characters}
end; {Error=0?}                        {end of conditional code}
graphics_term;                          {terminate graphics library}
end. {Program "CharCell"}              {end of program}

```

COLOR

```

$ucsd,debug$
Program Test(keyboard,output);
import dsl_vars,dsl_types,dsl_lib,dsl_poly,dsl_inq;
type
  Colors= (Red,Yellow,Green,Cyan,Blue,Magenta,White,Black);
  Modes= (Hue,Sat,Lum,Table,Copy1,Copy2);
  EntryRange= -1..16;
  FunnyArray= array [Colors] of char; {array for alpha color}
const
  FS= chr(28); {right arrow}
  BS= chr(8); {left arrow or backspace}
  US= chr(31); {up arrow}
  LF= chr(10); {down arrow}
  CR= chr(13); {carriage return}
  C= 'C'; { \ }
  Cl= 'c'; { \ }
  E= 'E'; { \ }
  El= 'e'; { \ }
  H= 'H'; { \ }
  Hl= 'h'; { \ These are the valid }
  L= 'L'; { / user responses. }
  Ll= 'l'; { / }
  Q= 'Q'; { / }
  Ql= 'q'; { / }
  S= 'S'; { / }
  Sl= 's'; { / }
  Display_Cont= 1050; {mnemonic better than magic number}
  Underline= chr(132); {alpha enhancement: underlining}
  Ind_off= chr(128); {turn enhancements off}
  Inv_On= chr(129); {alpha enhancement: inverse video}
  FunnyChar= FunnyArray[chr(139),chr(137), {\ Array for }
                chr(136),chr(140), {\ holding the }
                chr(142),chr(143), { / alpha-color }
                chr(141),chr(138)]; {/ controllers }

```

```

$page$ {*****}
var
  Error_num:      integer;      {return variable}
  I,TEMPInt:      integer;      {temporary variables}
  OpArray:        array[1..5] of gshortint;
  Xarray,Yarray,  {locations of points}
  Yfill_array:    array[1..5] of real;  {same points, but filled}
  Delta:          real;
  HueVal:         array[0..15] of real;  { \ For each of the }
  SatVal:         array[0..15] of real;  { \ sixteen pens, we }
  LumVal:         array[0..15] of real;  { \ need to know the }
  GreenVal:       array[0..15] of real;  { / HSL values as }
  BlueVal:        array[0..15] of real;  { / well as the RGB }
  RedVal:         array[0..15] of real;  { / values. }
  Hue_ind:        char;          { \ }
  Sat_ind:        char;          { > Various indicators. }
  Lum_ind:        char;          { / }
  Tab_ind:        char;          {and another}
  Character:      char;          {utility variable}
  Done:           boolean;       {are we through yet?}
  Keyboard:       text;          {non-echoing input}
  TempString:     Gstrings255;    {temporary holding place for text}
  Mode,LastMode:  Modes;
  CursorColor:    EntryRange;
  Copy_Source:    EntryRange;
  LastTableEntry: EntryRange;
  TableEntry:     EntryRange;
  X_Loc:          array[0..15] of integer;
  Y_Loc:          array[0..15] of integer;
  Int_a:          integer;
  Real_A:         real;
  RedBack,GreenBack,BlueBack:  real;
  LabelColor:     char;
  BackSum,OldBackSum:  0..7;
$page$ {*****}
Procedure MenuLine;
begin
  {Procedure MenuLine}
  writeln(LabelColor); {write in appropriate color}
  gotoxy(0,0); {go to upper left corner of the screen}
  write('Color Selector:',Underline,'H',Ind_off,'ue,');
  write(Underline,'S',Ind_off,'aturation,');
  write(Underline,'L',Ind_off,'uminosity,');
  write('table ',Underline,'E',Ind_off,'ntry,');
  write(Underline,'C',Ind_off,'opy color,');
  writeln(Underline,'Q',Ind_off,'uit');
end; {Procedure MenuLine}

```

A-20 Listings of Example Programs

```

$page$ {*****}
Procedure DisplayStuff;
begin
    writeln(LabelColor);
    case Mode of
        Hue:      Hue_Ind:=Inv_On;
        Sat:      Sat_Ind:=Inv_On;
        Lum:      Lum_Ind:=Inv_On;
        Table:    Tab_Ind:=Inv_On;
        Copy1,Copy2: {No Indicators on};
    end; {case}
    gotoxy(0,3);
    writeln(Hue_ind,' Hue ',Ind_off);
    writeln(HueVal[TableEntry]:5:2);
    writeln(Sat_ind,' Sat ',Ind_off);
    writeln(SatVal[TableEntry]:5:2);
    writeln(Lum_ind,' Lum ',Ind_off);
    writeln(LumVal[TableEntry]:5:2);
    writeln(Tab_ind,' Entry ',Ind_off);
    writeln(TableEntry:3);
    gotoxy(0,20);
    Hue_ind:=chr(128);
    Sat_ind:=chr(128);
    Lum_ind:=chr(128);
    Tab_ind:=chr(128);
end; {Procedure DisplayStuff}
$page$ {*****}
Procedure UpdateCursor(TableEntry:integer);
{-----}
Procedure DrawCursor(TableEntry:integer);
begin
    Xarray[1]:=X_Loc[TableEntry]+0.1;
    Xarray[2]:=X_Loc[TableEntry]+0.5;
    Xarray[3]:=X_Loc[TableEntry]+0.9;
    Xarray[4]:=X_Loc[TableEntry]+0.1;
    Yarray[1]:=Y_Loc[TableEntry]-0.09;
    Yarray[2]:=Y_Loc[TableEntry]-0.01;
    Yarray[3]:=Y_Loc[TableEntry]-0.09;
    Yarray[4]:=Y_Loc[TableEntry]-0.09;
    set_pgn_style(15);
    polygon_dev_dep(4,Xarray,Yarray,OPArray);
end;
{-----}
begin
    if LastTableEntry<>TableEntry then begin
        set_pgn_color(0);
        DrawCursor(LastTableEntry);
    end; {if}
    set_pgn_color(CursorColor);
    DrawCursor(TableEntry);
    LastTableEntry:=TableEntry;
end; {Procedure UpdateCursor}

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
begin                                     {Main Program}
Hue_ind:=chr(128);                        { \
Sat_ind:=chr(128);                        { \ All highlights initially }
Lum_ind:=chr(128);                        { / off,
Tab_ind:=chr(128);                        { /
TableEntry:=0;                            {currently indicated entry}
LastTableEntry:=0;                        {previously indicated entry}
Mode:=Table;                              {selection mode first}
CursorColor:=1;                           {make sure the cursor is visible}
LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Black];             {labels contrast with background}

graphics_init;                            {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(3,0,Error_Num);              {which output device?}
if Error_Num=0 then begin                  {successfully initialized}
  set_char_size(0,175,0,15);               {define the character size}
  set_pgn_style(15);                       {select the polygon style}
  set_aspect(511,389);                     {use the whole screen}
  set_window(-1,1,8,-0,7,2,2);             {scale the window for the data}
  {---- Set up color system and set background color -----}
  set_color_model(2);                      {HSL}
  HueVal[TableEntry]:=0;                   { \ Current TableEntry: 0,
  SatVal[TableEntry]:=0;                   { > Current entry's color:
  LumVal[TableEntry]:=0,6;                 { / 60% gray,
  set_color_table(TableEntry,              { \
    HueVal[TableEntry],                    { \ Install the currently-
    SatVal[TableEntry],                    { / defined color,
    LumVal[TableEntry]);                   { /

  {---- Read the colors from the color map -----}
  for I:=0 to 15 do inq_color_table(I,HueVal[I],SatVal[I],LumVal[I]);
  {---- Initialize arrays for polygon -----}
  OPArray[1]:=2;                            {2: First vertex of a polygon}
  for I:=2 to 5 do OPArray[I]:=1;           {1: Draw from the last vertex to this}
  {---- Set up arrays for the lower row -----}
  Yarray[1]:=0,1;                          { \
  Yarray[2]:=0,1;                          { \ Define the outline of
  Yarray[3]:=0,9;                          { > the tall, unfilled
  Yarray[4]:=0,9;                          { / rectangle,
  Yarray[5]:=0,1;                          { /
  Yfill_array:=Yarray;                     { \ Define the outline of
  Yfill_array[3]:=0,5;                     { > the short, filled
  Yfill_array[4]:=0,5;                     { / rectangle,

  {---- Draw the lower row -----}
  for I:=0 to 7 do begin
    Xarray[1]:=I;                          { \
    Xarray[2]:=I+0,9;                      { \ Define the X positions
    Xarray[3]:=I+0,9;                      { > for this particular
    Xarray[4]:=I;                          { / rectangle,
    Xarray[5]:=I;                          { /
    strwrite(TempString,1,TempInt,I:2);    {convert to a string}
    set_color(1);                          {set the color for text}
    move(I+0,5-0,075,0);                   {move to just right of bottom center}
    stext(TempString);                     {label the table entry number}
    set_pgn_color(I);                      {set the color for polygon fills}
    set_color(I);                          {set the color for lines}
    polyline(5,Xarray,Yarray);             {draw the tall unfilled rectangle}
    polygon_dev_dep(5,Xarray,Yfill_array,OPArray); {draw and fill shortie}
    X_Loc[I]:=round(Xarray[1]);            {store X locations}
    Y_Loc[I]:=round(Yarray[1]);            {store Y locations}
  end; {for I:=0 to 15}

```

A-22 Listings of Example Programs

```

{---- Set up the arrays for the upper row -----}
Yarray[1]:=1.1;           { \ }
Yarray[2]:=1.1;           { \ }
Yarray[3]:=1.9;           { > Redefine Y values only. }
Yarray[4]:=1.9;           { / }
Yarray[5]:=1.1;           { / }
Yfill_array:=Yarray;     { \ }
Yfill_array[3]:=1.5;     { > Redefine Y values only. }
Yfill_array[4]:=1.5;     { / }
{---- Draw the upper row -----}
for I:=0 to 7 do begin
  Xarray[1]:=I;           { \ }
  Xarray[2]:=I+0.9;       { \ Define the X positions }
  Xarray[3]:=I+0.9;       { > for this particular }
  Xarray[4]:=I;           { / rectangle. }
  Xarray[5]:=I;           { / }
  strwrite(TEMPString,1,TEMPInt,I+8:2); {convert to a string}
  set_color(1);           {set the color for text}
  move(I+0.5-0.075,1);   {move to just right of bottom center}
  stext(TEMPString);     {label the table entry number}
  set_pgn_color(I+8);    {set the color for polygon fills}
  set_color(I+8);        {set the color for lines}
  polyline(5,Xarray,Yarray); {draw the tall unfilled rectangle}
  polygon_dev_dep(5,Xarray,Yfill_array,OPArray); {draw and fill shortie}
  X_Loc[I+8]:=round(Xarray[1]); {store X locations}
  Y_Loc[I+8]:=round(Yarray[1]); {store Y locations}
end; {for I:=0 to 15}
{---- Start interactivity -----}
MenuLine;                 {write the menu}
UpdateCursor(TableEntry); {initial cursor}
DisplayStuff;             {initial readouts}
Done:=false;              {not done yet}
repeat                    {this starts the actual color selector}
  read(Keyboard,Character); {set a character,no echo}
  Delta:=0;                {start by assuming zero}
  case Character of        {analyze the character}
    FS: Delta:=0.01;      { \ }
    BS: Delta:=-0.01;    { \ Cursor-control }
    LF: Delta:=0.1;      { / characters }
    US: Delta:=-0.1;     { / }
    H,H1: Mode:=Hue;     {Hue-changing mode}
    L,L1: Mode:=Lum;     {Luminosity-changing mode}
    Q,Q1: Done:=true;    {Quit the program}
    S,S1: Mode:=Sat;     {Saturation-changing mode}
    E,E1: Mode:=Table;   {Entry-changing mode}
    C,C1: begin
      if Mode=Copy1 then begin {Have source, will copy.}
        Copy_Source:=TableEntry; {Put it where?}
        CursorColor:=Copy_Source;
        UpdateCursor(TableEntry); {note current entry}
        gotoxy(0,21);           {twenty-second row, first column}
        write('Use Knob to select location to ');
        write('copy color to,then press');
        writeln(' C');
        Mode:=Copy2           {do second section next time}
      end
    end
  end
end

```

```

else begin
  if Mode=Copy2 then begin {Copy color to}
    gotoxy(0,21);          {this location}
    writeln(strfmt(' ',79));    {"erase" old text}
    inq_color_table(Copy_Source,    { \ Get the   }
                   HueVal[TableEntry],  { \ HSL values }
                   SatVal[TableEntry],  { / from the  }
                   LumVal[TableEntry]); { / table.   }

    CursorColor:=1;          {reinitialize cursor color}
    UpdateCursor(TableEntry);  {indicate new cursor position}
    Mode:=LastMode          {third section next time}
  end
  else begin                {Initiate copy mode}
    LastMode:=Mode;
    Copy_Source:=TableEntry;
    gotoxy(0,21);
    write('Use Knob to select color ');
    write('to be copied, then press');
    writeln(' C');
    Mode:=Copy1
  end;
end;
end;
end;
otherwise
end; {case}
{---- use delta created above to modify the proper value -----}
case Mode of                {what am I doing?}
  Hue: begin
    HueVal[TableEntry]:=HueVal[TableEntry]+Delta;    {adjust it}
    if HueVal[TableEntry]>1 then HueVal[TableEntry]:=0; {keep it...}
    if HueVal[TableEntry]<0 then HueVal[TableEntry]:=1; {...in limits}
  end;
  Sat: begin
    SatVal[TableEntry]:=SatVal[TableEntry]+Delta;    {adjust it}
    if SatVal[TableEntry]>1 then SatVal[TableEntry]:=1; {keep it...}
    if SatVal[TableEntry]<0 then SatVal[TableEntry]:=0; {...in limits}
  end;
  Lum: begin
    LumVal[TableEntry]:=LumVal[TableEntry]+Delta;    {adjust it}
    if LumVal[TableEntry]>1 then LumVal[TableEntry]:=1; {keep it...}
    if LumVal[TableEntry]<0 then LumVal[TableEntry]:=0; {...in limits}
  end;
  Table,Copy1,Copy2: begin
    if Delta<>0 then begin
      if Delta>0 then TableEntry:=TableEntry+1    { \ Adjust   }
      else TableEntry:=TableEntry-1;              { / the value }
      if TableEntry>15 then TableEntry:=15;       { \ Keep it   }
      if TableEntry<0 then TableEntry:=0;         { / in limits  }
      UpdateCursor(TableEntry);                    {indicate new entry}
    end;
  end;
end; {case}

```

A-24 Listings of Example Programs

```

set_color_table(TableEntry,           { \
    HueVal[TableEntry],             { \  Modify the   }
    SatVal[TableEntry],             { /  color map.   }
    LumVal[TableEntry]);           { /
if TableEntry=0 then begin {Background color}
    set_color_model(1);              {RGB}
    inq_color_table(0,RedBack,GreenBack,BlueBack); {set RGB values}
    BackSum:=0;                      { \  Calculate the   }
    if RedBack<0.5 then BackSum:=4;   { \  background color }
    if GreenBack<0.5 then BackSum:=BackSum+2; { /  in order to make }
    if BlueBack<0.5 then BackSum:=BackSum+1; { /  contrasting text. }
    if OldBackSum<>BackSum then begin {Color change}
        case BackSum of
            0: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Black]; { \
            1: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Blue];  { \
            2: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Green];  { \  Translate the   }
            3: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Cyan];   { \  RGB background }
            4: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Red];    { /  sum to a       }
            5: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Magenta]; { /  complementary }
            6: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[Yellow]; { /  text color.    }
            7: LabelColor:=FunnyChar[White];  { /
        end; {case BackSum of}
        MenuLine;                      {print the menu line}
        OldBackSum:=BackSum;           {store for future comparisons}
        set_color_table(1,1-RedBack,
            1-GreenBack,
            1-BlueBack);               { \  Make pen one   }
                                         { > complementary, }
                                         { /  too.           }
        end; {if}
        set_color_model(2);             {HSL}
    end; {if TableEntry=0}
    DisplayStuff;                      {update alpha information}
until Done;                            {until user pushes [Q]}
writeln(FunnyChar[Green],chr(128));    {restore text screen to normal}
{---- Report all this good stuff -----}
Int_A:=0;
output_esc(Display_Cont,1,0,Int_A,Real_A,Error_Num);
set_color_model(1);                    {RGB}
for I:=0 to 15 do inq_color_table(I,RedVal[I],
    GreenVal[I],
    BlueVal[I]);                       { \  Get the RGB   }
                                         { > definition }
                                         { /  of the color }

writeln('Table');
write('Index      Hue      Sat      Lum');
writeln('          Red      Green      Blue');
for I:=0 to 15 do begin
    write(I:3,' ');
    write(HueVal[I]:3:2,' ');
    write(SatVal[I]:3:2,' ');
    write(LumVal[I]:3:2,' ');
    write(RedVal[I]:3:2,' ');
    write(GreenVal[I]:3:2,' ');
    writeln(BlueVal[I]:3:2);
end;
display_term;
end;
graphics_term;
end.

```

CsizeProg

```

Program CsizeProg(output);
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;           {get graphics routines}
const
  Crt=          3;                 {address of internal CRT}
  Control=     0;                 {device control; 0 for CRT}
var
  Error:       integer;          {variable for initialization outcome}
  I, J:        integer;          {utility variables}
  Strng:       string[10];       {temporary holding place for strings}
#include 'DGLPRG:ConvVtoW'$       {virtual-to-world conversion}
$page$ {*****}
procedure CharSize(Height, AspectRatio: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure defines character cell size and the puts the Width and }
{ Height values into global variables for later use. The arguments passed }
{ in are the height of the character cell in VIRTUAL coordinates, and the }
{ aspect ratio of the character cell. The values for the window limits }
{ may be anything; they are taken into account and do not affect the size }
{ of the characters, since they are defined in virtual coordinates. This }
{ procedure, along with Lorg and Ldir, define global variables for use by }
{ Glabel. }
{-----}
var
  Width:       real;             {temporary spot for width}
  X0, Y0:      real;             {0,0 (virtual) in world}
  X1, Y1:      real;             {1,1 (virtual) in world}
begin
  {body of procedure "CharSize"}
  ConvertVirtualToWorld(0,0,X0,Y0); {convert 0,0 in virtual to world}
  ConvertVirtualToWorld(1,1,X1,Y1); {convert 1,1 in virtual to world}
  Height:=Height*(Y1-Y0);          {convert height in virtual to world}
  Width:=Height*AspectRatio*(X1-X0)/(Y1-Y0); {convert width in virtual to world}
  set_char_size(Width,Height);     {invoke the parameters}
end;                                {procedure "CharSize"}
$page$ {*****}
begin
  {body of program "CsizeProg"}
  graphics_init;                   {initialize the graphics system}
  display_init(Crt,Control,Error); {which output device?}
  if Error=0 then begin            {output device initialization OK?}
    set_aspect(511,389);           {use the whole screen}
    set_window(1,2,100,0);        {scale the window for the data}
    for I:=1 to 6 do begin        {six different character sizes}
      CharSize(I*I*0.01,0.6);     {install character size}
      move(1,I*I*I*0.4+I);        {move to a appropriate place}
      strwrite(Strng,1,J,I*I:0);  {convert number to string}
      stext(Strng+'%');           {label the string}
    end; {for i}
  end; {Error=0?}
  graphics_term;                  {terminate the graphics package}
end.                               {program "CsizeProg"}

```

DataPoint

```

$Page$ {*****}
function DataPoint(I: integer): real; {function that returns the y-values}
{-----}
{ This function returns one of the one hundred values in the structured }
{ constant "Voltages" every time it is called. This function is called by }
{ the "Progressive Example" programs in the graphics techniques chapters. }
{-----}
type
  VoltsType= array [1..100] of real;
const
  Voltages= VoltsType[0.1610, 0.1625, 0.1625, 0.1628, 0.1636,
                    0.1631, 0.1627, 0.1608, 0.1610, 0.1606,
                    0.1607, 0.1617, 0.1614, 0.1626, 0.1634,
                    0.1640, 0.1656, 0.1660, 0.1644, 0.1651,
                    0.1635, 0.1641, 0.1628, 0.1619, 0.1630,
                    0.1624, 0.1627, 0.1644, 0.1644, 0.1657,
                    0.1660, 0.1670, 0.1672, 0.1666, 0.1658,
                    0.1662, 0.1646, 0.1633, 0.1634, 0.1636,
                    0.1645, 0.1652, 0.1656, 0.1677, 0.1689,
                    0.1680, 0.1696, 0.1680, 0.1674, 0.1677,
                    0.1669, 0.1655, 0.1665, 0.1662, 0.1667,
                    0.1668, 0.1681, 0.1688, 0.1687, 0.1707,
                    0.1716, 0.1716, 0.1694, 0.1698, 0.1683,
                    0.1683, 0.1671, 0.1681, 0.1683, 0.1684,
                    0.1681, 0.1698, 0.1705, 0.1723, 0.1730,
                    0.1734, 0.1714, 0.1722, 0.1716, 0.1696,
                    0.1702, 0.1699, 0.1684, 0.1706, 0.1696,
                    0.1715, 0.1730, 0.1737, 0.1739, 0.1751,
                    0.1732, 0.1747, 0.1729, 0.1717, 0.1710,
                    0.1707, 0.1706, 0.1709, 0.1713, 0.1720];
begin
  DataPoint:=Voltages[I]; {body of function "DataPoint"}
end; {function "DataPoint"} {assign it to the function name} {return}

```

DrawMdPrg

```

Program DrawMdPrg(output); {Program name same as file name}
import dsl_lib; {access the necessary procedures}
const
  Polygons= 100; {how many polygons?}
  Sides= 3; {how many sides a piece?}
  crt= 3; {device address of graphics raster}
  control= 0; {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  short_int= -32768..32767; {16-bit integer}
  DrawingModeType= (Dominant,Erase,Complement);
  DisplayStates=(Off,On);
var
  X: array [0..Polygons-1,1..Sides] of short_int;
  Y: array [0..Polygons-1,1..Sides] of short_int;
  Dx, Dy: array [1..Sides] of short_int;
  Poly, Side: short_int; {loop control variables}
  DrawMode: DrawingModeType;
  Temp: short_int; {temporary holding area}
  New,Previous: short_int; {for efficient use of arrays}
  seed: integer; {random number seed}
  error: integer; {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}

```

```

$page$ {*****}
procedure Alpha(State: DisplayStates);
{-----}
{ This procedure turns the alpha raster on or off. }
{-----}
const
  AlphaRaster= 1051;           {mnemonic better than magic number}
var
  AlphaOn:    array [1..1] of integer;    { \ This is all stuff that }
  Rarray:    array [1..1] of real;        { > is needed by the }
  Error:     integer;                    { / "output_esc" procedure. }
begin
  {procedure "Alpha"}
  if State=On then AlphaOn[1]:=1
  else AlphaOn[1]:=0;
  output_esc(AlphaRaster,1,0,AlphaOn,Rarray,Error);
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,' in procedure "Alpha".');
  end;
  {procedure "Alpha"}
$page$ {*****}
procedure DrawingMode(Mode: DrawingModeType);
{-----}
{ This procedure selects drawing modes for a monochromatic CRT. }
{-----}
const
  SetDrawingMode= 1052;       {mnemonic better than magic number}
var
  DrawMode:    array [1..1] of integer;    { \ This is all stuff that }
  Rarray:    array [1..1] of real;        { > is needed by the }
  Error:     integer;                    { / "output_esc" procedure. }
begin
  {procedure "DrawingMode"}
  case Mode of
    Erase:      DrawMode[1]:=2;    { \ Convert DrawingMode enumerated }
    Dominant:   DrawMode[1]:=0;    { > type into the appropriate }
    Complement: DrawMode[1]:=3;    { / value for OUTPUT_ESC procedure. }
  end; {case}
  { / }
  output_esc(SetDrawingMode,1,0,DrawMode,Rarray,Error); {set it}
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,' in procedure "DrawingMode".');
  end;
  {procedure "DrawingMode"}
$page$ {*****}
function Rand: short_int;
begin
  {function "Rand"}
  Seed:=((Seed+13579)*39777) mod 10000; {make new seed}
  Rand:=Seed; {return current value of seed}
end;
{function "Rand"}
$page$ {*****}
procedure DefineDeltas;
var
  Side: short_int;
begin
  {body of procedure "DefineDeltas"}
  for Side:=1 to Sides do begin
    {for each vertex}
    Dx[Side]:=Rand mod 5+2; {magnitude of this dx}
    if Rand>=5000 then Dx[Side]:=-Dx[Side]; {sign of this dx}
    Dy[Side]:=Rand mod 5+2; {magnitude of this dy}
    if Rand>=5000 then Dy[Side]:=-Dy[Side]; {sign of this dy}
  end; {for side}
end;
{body of procedure "DefineDeltas"}

```

A-28 Listings of Example Programs

```

$page$ {*****}
begin {body of program "DrawMdPrs"}
DrawMode:=Dominant; {specify drawing mode}
Seed:=1173; {initialize random number seed}
graphics_init; {initialize graphics library}
display_init(crt,control,error); {initialize CRT}
if error=0 then begin {if no error occurred...}
  set_aspect(511,389); {use the whole screen}
  set_window(0,511,0,389); {one user unit=one pixel}
  Alpha(Off); {turn off the alpha screen}
  DrawingMode(DrawMode); {select specified drawing mode}
  for Side:=1 to Sides do begin {define the first polygon}
    X[0,Side]:=Rand mod 511; {define X component}
    Y[0,Side]:=Rand mod 389; {define Y component}
    if Side=1 then { \ }
      int_move(X[0,Side],Y[0,Side]) { \ Move to the first }
    else { > point, and draw to }
      int_line(X[0,Side],Y[0,Side]); { / all the rest. }
  end; {for side}
  if Sides>2 then {if simple line, don't close}
    int_line(X[0,1],Y[0,1]); {define dx and dy for each vertex}
  DefineDeltas; {draw all the polygons}
  for Poly:=1 to Polygons-1 do begin {each vertex of each polygon}
    for Side:=1 to Sides do begin {avoid recalculation}
      Temp:=X[Poly-1,Side]+Dx[Side]; { \ }
      if Temp>511 then { \ Is X off the }
        Dx[Side]:=-Dx[Side] { / screen? }
      else if Temp<0 then { / }
        Dx[Side]:=-Dx[Side]; { / }
      X[Poly,Side]:=X[Poly-1,Side]+Dx[Side]; {calculate next x}
      Temp:=Y[Poly-1,Side]+Dy[Side]; {avoid recalculation}
      if Temp>389 then { \ }
        Dy[Side]:=-Dy[Side] { \ Is Y off the }
      else if Temp<0 then { / screen? }
        Dy[Side]:=-Dy[Side]; { / }
      Y[Poly,Side]:=Y[Poly-1,Side]+Dy[Side]; {calculate next y}
      if Side=1 then int_move(X[Poly,Side],Y[Poly,Side]) {move to first point,}
      else int_line(X[Poly,Side],Y[Poly,Side]); {draw to all the rest}
    end; {for side}
    if Sides>2 then {if simple line, don't close polygon}
      int_line(X[Poly,1],Y[Poly,1]);
  end; {for poly}
  New:=0; {start re-use at entry 0}
  while true do begin {ad infinitum...}
    if New=0 then Previous:=Polygons-1 {start re-using over}
    else Previous:=(Previous+1) mod Polygons; {re-use next entry}
    if DrawMode=Dominant then DrawMode:=Erase; { \ If Dominant, toggle state}
    DrawingMode(DrawMode); {select specified drawing mode}
    for Side:=1 to Sides do begin {erase the oldest line}
      if Side=1 then { \ Move to the }
        int_move(X[New,Side],Y[New,Side]) { \ first point, }
      else { / draw to all the }
        int_line(X[New,Side],Y[New,Side]); { / rest. }
    end; {for Side}
    if Sides>2 then {if simple line, don't close polygon}
      int_line(X[New,1],Y[New,1]);
    if DrawMode=Erase then DrawMode:=Dominant; { \ If Erase, toggle state}
    DrawingMode(DrawMode); {select specified drawing mode}
  end;

```

```

for Side:=1 to Sides do begin
    Temp:=X[Previous,Side]+Dx[Side];
    if Temp>511 then
        Dx[Side]:=-Dx[Side]
    else if Temp<0 then
        Dx[Side]:=-Dx[Side];
    X[New,Side]:=X[Previous,Side]+Dx[Side];
    Temp:=Y[Previous,Side]+Dy[Side];
    if Temp>389 then
        Dy[Side]:=-Dy[Side]
    else if Temp<0 then
        Dy[Side]:=-Dy[Side];
    Y[New,Side]:=Y[Previous,Side]+Dy[Side];
    if Side=1 then int_move(X[New,Side],Y[New,Side])
    else int_line(X[New,Side],Y[New,Side]);
end; {for side}
if Sides>2 then
    int_line(X[New,1],Y[New,1]);
New:=(New+1) mod Polygons;
end; {while}
end; {error=0?}
graphics_term;
end. {Program "DrawMdPrs"}

```

FillProg

```

Program FillProg(output);
import
    dsl_lib,dsl_types,dsl_poly,dsl_line;
const
    MaxPoints=      27;
    Crt=            3;
    Control=       0;
type
    Reals=          array [1..MaxPoints] of real;
    Word=          -32768..32767;
    Integers=      array [1..MaxPoints] of Word;
const
    Xvalues=       Reals[ 1.5, 2.5, 2.5, 1.5,-1.5,-2.5,-2.5,-1.5,
                        -2.5, 2.5, 2.5,-2.5,-2.5,
                        -2.5,-4.5,-2.5,-5.0,-4.0,
                        2.5, 4.5, 2.5, 5.0, 4.0,
                        -0.5,-1.0, 1.0, 0.5];
    Yvalues=       Reals[ 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 4.0, 3.0, 2.0, 1.0,
                        1.0, 1.0,-2.0,-2.0, 1.0,
                        -2.0,-4.0, 0.0,-4.0,-4.0,
                        -2.0,-4.0, 0.0,-4.0,-4.0,
                        -2.0,-3.0,-3.0,-2.0];
    OpCodes=       Integers[2,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,
                        2,1,1,1,1,
                        2,1,1,2,1,
                        2,1,1,2,1,
                        2,1,1,1];
var
    Error:         integer;
    I:             integer;
    LemX, LemY:   Reals;
    OpSelectors:  Integers;
    Points:       integer;

```


GstorProg

```

$sysProg on$                                {so we can define array addresses}
Program GstorProg(Keyboard,output);         {Program name same as file name}
label 1;
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;                    {access the necessary procedures}
const
  Crt=          3;                           {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=      0;                           {device control word; ignored for CRT}
  GRasterAddr= hex('530000');                {address of graphics memory}
  GRasterSize= 6240;                         {32-bit integers in graphics raster}
  Ratio=        1.31362467886;               {aspect ratio of the Model 36 CRT}
type
  GRasterType= array [1..GRasterSize] of integer;
  HJustifyType= (Left,HCentered,Right);
  VJustifyType= (Bottom,VCentered,Top);
  DisplayStates=(Off,On);
  AngType=      (Deg,Rad,Grad);              {used by procedure Ldir}
  RoundType=    (Up, Down, Near);            {used by function Round2}
  Str255=       strings[255];                {used by procedure Glabel}
var
  Error:        integer;                     {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  Decade, Units: integer;                    {for logarithmic X-axis}
  X,Dx:         real;                         {x-axis variables}
  Xmin,Xmax,Xrange: integer;                 {more x-axis variables}
  Y,Dy:         real;                         {y-axis variables}
  Ymin,Ymax,Yrange: integer;                 {more y-axis variables}
  I:            integer;                      {utility variable}
  Strng:        Str255;                       {another utility variable}
  Character:    char;                         {and yet another}
  Temperature: real;                         {need a larger range than an integer}
  OldX, OldY:   real;                         {last point drawn to}
  GRaster[GRasterAddr]: GRasterType;         {actual graphics raster}
  Screen:       GRasterType;                  {user's screen image}
  Keyboard:     text;                         {allow GETs from the keyboard}
  CharWidth,CharHeight: real;                 { \ These are global variables      }
  HJustification: HJustifyType;              { / used by the CharSize/           }
  VJustification: VJustifyType;              { / LabelDirection/LabelJustify/   }
  CharTheta:    real;                         { / Glabel series of procedures.    }
  ClipXmin, ClipXmax: real;                   {soft clip limits in x}
  ClipYmin, ClipYmax: real;                   {soft clip limits in y}
#include 'DGLPRG:ConvVtoW'$
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure CharSize(Height, AspectRatio: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure defines character cell size and the puts the Width and }
{ Height values into global variables for later use. The arguments passed }
{ in are the height of the character cell in VIRTUAL coordinates, and the }
{ aspect ratio of the character cell. The values for the window limits }
{ may be anything; they are taken into account and do not affect the size }
{ of the characters, since they are defined in virtual coordinates. This }
{ procedure, along with Lorg and Ldir, define global variables for use by }
{ Glabel. }
{-----}

```

A-32 Listings of Example Programs

```

var
  Width:      real;      {temporary spot for width}
  X0, Y0:    real;      {0,0 (virtual) in world}
  X1, Y1:    real;      {1,1 (virtual) in world}
begin
  ConvertVirtualToWorld(0,0,X0,Y0);  {body of procedure "CharSize"}
  ConvertVirtualToWorld(1,1,X1,Y1);  {convert 0,0 in virtual to world}
  ConvertVirtualToWorld(1,1,X1,Y1);  {convert 1,1 in virtual to world}
  Height:=Height*(Y1-Y0);           {convert height in virtual to world}
  Width:=Height*AspectRatio*(X1-X0)/(Y1-Y0); {convert width in virtual to world}
  set_char_size(Width,Height);       {invoke the parameters}
end;                                  {procedure "CharSize"}
$page$ {*****}
procedure LabelDirection(Direction: real; Units: AngType);
{-----}
{ This procedure is used in conjunction with LabelOrigin, CharSize and }
{ Glabel. It sets the labelling direction to be used, and places the }
{ direction into a global variable so Glabel can use it. }
{-----}
const
  Deg_per_rad= 57.2957795131; {180/Pi: for converting degrees to radians}
  Grad_per_rad= 63.6619772368; {200/Pi: for converting grads to radians}
begin
  {procedure "LabelDirection"}
case Units of
  Deg: Direction:=Direction/Deg_per_rad; {degrees to radians}
  Rad: ; {correct units already}
  Grad: Direction:=Direction/Grad_per_rad; {grads to radians}
end; {case}
CharTheta:=Direction; {put into a global variable}
set_text_rot(cos(CharTheta),sin(CharTheta)); {invoke the new text direction}
end; {procedure "LabelDirection"}
$page$ {*****}
procedure LabelJustify(HJust: HJustifyType; VJust: VJustifyType);
{-----}
{ This procedure is used in conjunction with procedures CharSize, }
{ LabelDirection, and Glabel. This just puts a value into global }
{ variables which will be subsequently used by Glabel. }
{-----}
begin
  {procedure "LabelJustify"}
HJustification:=HJust;
VJustification:=VJust;
end; {procedure "LabelJustify"}
$page$ {*****}
function Atan(Y, X: real): real;
{-----}
{ This function returns the value of the arctangent of Y/X, placing it }
{ in the correct quadrant. If Y and X are both zero, the result is zero. }
{-----}
const
  Pi= 3.14159265359; {Pi}
begin
  {function "Atan"}
if X=0.0 then Atan:=(Pi/2+Pi*ord(Y<0.0))*ord(Y<>0.0)
else Atan:=arctan(Y/X)+Pi*ord(X<0.0)+2*Pi*ord((X>0.0) and (Y<0.0));
end; {function "Atan"}

```

```

$page$ {*****}
Procedure Glabel(Text: Str255);
{-----}
{   This procedure labels a string of text at the current pen position.   }
{ It takes into account the current label direction (set by procedure     }
{ "LabelDirection", the current character size (set by procedure         }
{ "CharSize"), and the current label justification (set by procedure     }
{ "LabelJustify").                                                       }
{-----}
const
  CharSizeCode=      250;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
  CurrentPosition=  259;          {ditto}
type
  Positions=        (X,Y);
  PositionType=     array [Positions] of real;
  CharAttributes=   (Width,Height);
  CharAttrType=     array [CharAttributes] of real;
var
  Chars:            integer;
  CharSize:         CharAttrType;
  Len,Height:       real;          {length and height of character string}
  Dx,Dy:            real;
  R,Theta:          real;          {for rectangular-to-polar conversion}
  Pac:              packed array [1..1] of char;  { \ These are the   }
  Iarray:           array [1..1] of integer;     { \ sundry items   }
  Position:         PositionType;               { / needed for the }
  Error:            integer;                    { / call to "inr_ws"}
begin
  inr_ws(CharSizeCode,0,0,2,Pac,Iarray,CharSize,Error);  {set pen position}
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error',Error:0,' in "Glabel".');
  Chars:=strlen(text);
  Len:=CharSize[Width]*(7*Chars+2*(Chars-1))/9;  {length minus inter-char gap}
  Height:=CharSize[Height]*8/15;                {height minus inter-line gap}
  Dx:=Len*(-ord(HJustification)/2);
  Dy:=Height*(-ord(VJustification)/2);
  R:=sqrt(Dx*Dx+Dy*Dy);                          { \ Convert to polar coordinates so }
  Theta:=Atan(Dy,Dx);                             { / rotation is easy.             }
  Theta:=Theta+CharTheta;                         {add the LabelDirection angle}
  Dx:=R*cos(Theta);                               { \ Convert R and the new Theta back }
  Dy:=R*sin(Theta);                               { / to rectangular coordinates.   }
  inr_ws(CurrentPosition,0,0,2,Pac,Iarray,Position,Error);  {set pen position}
  if Error=0 then begin
    move(Position[X]+Dx,Position[Y]+Dy); {move to the new starting point}
    stext(text);
  end {Error=0?}
  else writeln('Error',Error:0,' in "Glabel".');
end;
{procedure "Glabel"}
$page$ {*****}
Procedure MainTitle(X, Y: real; Title: Str255);
{-----}
{   This procedure writes a large label for the main title of a plot.   }
{-----}
begin
  {procedure "MainTitle"}
  CharSize(0.06,0.6);
  LabelDirection(0,Des);
  LabelJustify(HCentered,Top);
  move(X,Y);
  Glabel(Title);
end;
{procedure "MainTitle"}

```

A-34 Listings of Example Programs

```

$Page$ {*****}
Procedure XAxisTitle(X, Y: real; Title: Str255);
{-----}
{   This procedure writes a small label for the X-axis title of a plot.   }
{-----}
begin
                                {procedure "XaxisTitle"}
CharSize(0.04,0.6);
LabelDirection(0,Deg);
LabelJustify(HCentered,Bottom);
move(X,Y);
Glabel(Title);
end;
                                {procedure "XaxisTitle"}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure YaxisTitle(X,Y: real; Title: Str255);
{-----}
{   This procedure writes a large label for the Y-axis title of a plot.   }
{-----}
begin
                                {procedure "YaxisTitle"}
CharSize(0.04,0.6);
LabelDirection(90,Deg);
LabelJustify(HCentered,Top);
move(X,Y);
Glabel(Title);
end;
                                {procedure "YaxisTitle"}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure ClipLimit(Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure defines the four global variables which specify where the }
{ soft clip limits are. }
{-----}
begin
if Xmin<Xmax then begin
                                { \ }
    ClipXmin:=Xmin;
                                { \ Force the minimum soft }
    ClipXmax:=Xmax;
                                { \ clip limit in X to be }
end
                                { \ the smaller of the two }
else begin
                                { / X values passed into }
    ClipXmin:=Xmax;
                                { / the procedure. }
    ClipXmax:=Xmin;
                                { / }
end;
                                { / }
if Ymin<Ymax then begin
                                { \ }
    ClipYmin:=Ymin;
                                { \ Force the minimum soft }
    ClipYmax:=Ymax;
                                { \ clip limit in Y to be }
end
                                { \ the smaller of the two }
else begin
                                { / Y values passed into }
    ClipYmin:=Ymax;
                                { / the procedure. }
    ClipYmax:=Ymin;
                                { / }
end;
                                { / }
end;
end;

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
procedure ClipDraw(X1, Y1, X2, Y2: real);
{-----}
{   This procedure takes the endpoints of a line, and clips it. The soft   }
{ clip limits are the real global variables ClipXmin, ClipXmax, ClipYmin,   }
{ and ClipYmax. These may be defined through the procedure ClipLimit.     }
{-----}
label
  1;
type
  Edges=      (Left,Right,Top,Bottom);      {possible edges to cross}
  OutOfBounds= set of Edges;                {set of edges crossed}
var
  Out,Out1,Out2:OutOfBounds;
  X, Y:      real;
{-----}
procedure Code(X, Y: real; var Out: OutOfBounds);
begin
  Out:=[];
  if x<ClipXmin then Out:=[left]           {off left edge?}
  else if x>ClipXmax then Out:=[right];    {off right edge?}
  if y<ClipYmin then Out:=Out+[bottom]    {off the bottom?}
  else if y>ClipYmax then Out:=Out+[top];  {off the top?}
end;
{-----}
begin
  Code(X1,Y1,Out1);
  Code(X2,Y2,Out2);
  while (Out1<>[]) or (Out2<>[]) do begin {loop while either point out of range}
    if (Out1*Out2)<>[] then goto 1;      {if intersection non-null, no line}
    if Out1<>[] then Out:=Out1
    else Out:=Out2;                      {Out is the non-empty one}
    if left in Out then begin            {it crosses the left edge}
      y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmin-X1)/(X2-X1);{adjust value of y appropriately}
      x:=ClipXmin;                       {new x is left edge}
    end {left in Out?}
    else if right in Out then begin      {it crosses right edge}
      y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmax-X1)/(X2-X1);{adjust value of y appropriately}
      x:=ClipXmax;                       {new x is right edge}
    end {right in Out?}
    else if bottom in Out then begin     {it crosses the bottom edge}
      x:=X1+(X2-X1)*(ClipYmin-Y1)/(Y2-Y1);{adjust value of x appropriately}
      y:=ClipYmin;                       {new y is bottom edge}
    end {bottom in Out?}
    else if top in Out then begin        {it crosses the top edge}
      x:=X1+(X2-X1)*(ClipYmax-Y1)/(Y2-Y1);{adjust value of x appropriately}
      y:=ClipYmax;                       {new y is top edge}
    end; {top in Out?}
    if Out=Out1 then begin
      X1:=x; Y1:=y; Code(x,y,Out1);      {redefine first end point}
    end {Out=Out1?}
    else begin
      X2:=x; Y2:=y; Code(x,y,Out2);      {redefine second end point}
    end; {else begin}
  end; {while}
  move(x1,y1);
  line(x2,y2);
1: end; {procedure "ClipDraw"}

```

A-36 Listings of Example Programs

```

$Page$ {*****}
function Round2(N, M: real; Mode: RoundType): real;
{-----}
{ This function rounds "N" to the nearest "M", according to "Mode". This }
{ function works only when the argument is in the range of MININT..MAXINT. }
{-----}
const
    epsilon=      1E-10;           {roundoff error fudge factor}
var
    Rounded:      real;           {temporary holding area}
    Negative:     boolean;        {flag: "It is negative?"}
begin
    Negative:=(N<0.0);            {is the number negative?}
    if Negative then begin
        N:=abs(N);                {work with a positive number}
        if Mode=Up then Mode:=Down {if number is negative, ...}
        else if Mode=Down then Mode:=Up; {...reverse up and down}
    end;
    case Mode of
        Down: Rounded:=trunc(N/M)*M; {should we round the number...}
              {...left on the number line?}
        Up:   begin
            Rounded:=N/M;          {...right on the number line?}
            if abs(Rounded-round(Rounded))>epsilon then
                Rounded:=(trunc(Rounded)+1.0)*M
            else
                Rounded:=trunc(Rounded)*M;
            end;
        Near: Rounded:=trunc(N/M+M*0.5)*M; {...to the nearest multiple?}
    end; {case}
    if Negative then Rounded:=-Rounded; {reinstate the sign}
    Round2:=Rounded;                    {assign to function name}
end;                                     {function "Round2"}
$Page$ {*****}
procedure YaxisClip(Spacing, Location: real; Major: integer;
    Majsize, Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an Y-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis. }
{ Location: The X-value of the Y-axis. }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to be before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major. }
{ Majsize: The length, in world units, of the major tick marks. }
{ Minsize: The length, in world units, of the minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
    Y:          real;
    SemiMinsize: real;
    SemiMajsize: real;
    Counter:    integer;           {keeps track of when to do major ticks}
begin
    SemiMajsize:=Majsize*0.5;
    SemiMinsize:=Minsize*0.5;
    Counter:=0;                    {start with a major tick}
    ClipDraw(Location,ClipYmin,Location,ClipYmax);
    Y:=Round2(ClipYmin,Spacing*Major,Down); {round to next lower major}
end;

```

```

while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
  if Counter=0 then
    ClipDraw(Location-SemiMajsize,Y,Location+SemiMajsize,Y)
  else
    ClipDraw(Location-SemiMinsize,Y,Location+SemiMinsize,Y);
  Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major;
  Y:=Y+Spacing;
end; {while}
end; {procedure "YaxisClip"}
$page$ {*****}
procedure Alpha(State: DisplayStates);
{-----}
{ This procedure turns the alpha raster on or off. }
{-----}
const
  AlphaRaster= 1051; {mnemonic better than magic number}
var
  AlphaOn: array [1..1] of integer; { \ This is all stuff that }
  Rarray: array [1..1] of real; { > is needed by the }
  Error: integer; { / "output_esc" procedure. }
begin {procedure "Alpha"}
  if State=On then AlphaOn[1]:=1
  else AlphaOn[1]:=0;
  output_esc(AlphaRaster,1,0,AlphaOn,Rarray,Error);
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error ',Error:0,' in procedure "Alpha".');
end; {procedure "Alpha"}
$page$ {*****}
function Log10(X: real): real;
{-----}
{ This function returns the logarithm to the base ten of a number. }
{-----}
const
  Log_10= 2.30258509299; {log to the base e of 10}
begin {function "Log10"}
  Log10:=ln(X)/Log_10;
end; {function "Log10"}
$page$ {*****}
function XtoY(X, Y: real): real;
{-----}
{ This function evaluates X to the Yth power. }
{-----}
begin {function "XtoY"}
  XtoY:=exp(Y*ln(X)); {an logarithmic identity}
end; {function "XtoY"}
$page$ {*****}
procedure Gload(var Screen: GRasterType);
{-----}
{ This procedure loads a user's array into graphics memory. }
{-----}
begin {procedure "Gload"}
  GRaster:=Screen; {copy user array into graphics memory}
end; {procedure "Gload"}

```

A-38 Listings of Example Programs

```

$Page$ {*****}
Procedure Gstore(var Screen: GRasterType);
{-----}
{   This procedure stores graphics memory into a user's array.   }
{-----}
begin
    Screen:=GRaster;
end;
$Page$ {*****}
function Sign(X: real): integer;
{-----}
{   This function returns the sign of a number, i.e., -1 if the number is }
{   negative, 0 if the number is zero, and +1 if the number is positive.   }
{-----}
begin
    Sign:=ord(X>0)-ord(X<0);
end;
$Page$ {*****}
function Intensity(Wavelength, Temperature: real): real;
begin
    Intensity:=37410/XtoY(Wavelength,5)/(exp(14.39/(Wavelength*Temperature))-1);
end;
$Page$ {*****}
begin
    graphics_init;
    display_init(Crt,Control,Error);
    if Error=0 then begin
        Alpha(Off);
        set_aspect(Ratio,1);
        {==== Label the graph =====}
        for I:=-3 to 3 do
            MainTitle(I*0.002,1,'Blackbody Radiation');
            XaxisTitle(0,0.83,'Temperature (K): ');
            YaxisTitle(-1,0,'Intensity of Radiation');
            XaxisTitle(0,-0.92,'Wavelength (microns)');
            set_viewport(0,1,0.98,0.15/Ratio,0.9/Ratio);

            Xmin:=-4;
            Xmax:=3;
            Xrange:=Xmax-Xmin;
            Dx:=0.1;
            Ymin:=-5;
            Ymax:=25;
            Yrange:=Ymax-Ymin;
            Dy:=1;
            set_window(Xmin,Xmax,Ymin,Ymax);
            {==== Draw and label logarithmic X-axis grid =====}
            for Decade:=Xmin to Xmax do begin
                for Units:=1 to 1+8*ord(Decade<Xmax) do begin
                    X:=Decade+Log10(Units);
                    move(X,Ymin);
                    line(X,Ymax);
                end;
            end;
            X:=Xmin;
            Strngs:='';
    end;
end;

```

```

while X<=Xmax do begin
    LabelJustify(HCentered,Top);
    CharSize(0.025,0.6);
    move(X,Ymin-Yrange*0.015);
    Glabel('10 ');
    CharSize(0.015,0.6);
    LabelJustify(Left,Bottom);
    move(X+Xrange*0.01,Ymin-Yrange*0.025);
    strwrite(Strng,1,I,X:2:0);
    Glabel(strltrim(Strng));
    X:=X+Dx*10;
end; {while}
{==== Draw and label logarithmic Y-axis grid =====}
ClipLimit(Xmin,Xmax,Ymin,Ymax);
YaxisClip(1,Xmin,1,0.01,0.01);
YaxisClip(1,Xmax,1,0.01,0.01);
Y:=Ymin;
while Y<=Ymax do begin
    move(Xmin,Y);
    line(Xmax,Y);
    LabelJustify(Right,VCentered);
    CharSize(0.025,0.6);
    move(Xmin-Xrange*0.03,Y);
    Glabel('10');
    CharSize(0.015,0.6);
    LabelJustify(Left,Bottom);
    move(Xmin-Xrange*0.025,Y+Yrange*0.01);
    strwrite(Strng,1,I,Y:2:0);
    Glabel(strltrim(Strng));
    Y:=Y+5*Dy;
end; {while}
{==== Here is where the action starts =====}
Gstore(Screen);
CharSize(0.03,0.6);
LabelJustify(Left,Bottom);
while true do begin
    read(keyboard,Character);
    if Character='q' then Character:='Q';
    if (Character='1') and (Character<='9') then begin
        Gload(Screen);
        I:=ord(Character)-ord('0');
        Temperature:=I*XtoY(10,3);
        move(0,25.6);
        strwrite(Strng,1,I,Temperature:15:0);
        Glabel(strltrim(Strng));
        OldX:=Xmin;
        OldY:=Intensity(XtoY(10,OldX),Temperature);
        X:=OldX+Dx;
        while X<=Xmax do begin
            Y:=Intensity(XtoY(10,X),Temperature);
            ClipDraw(OldX,Log10(OldY),X,Log10(Y));
            OldX:=X; OldY:=Y;
            X:=X+2*Dx;
        end; {while}
    end
    else if Character='Q' then goto 1
    else write(#G);
end; {while true}
end; {Error=0?}
1: graphics_term;
end. {program "GstorProg"}

```

IsoProg

```

Program IsoProg(input,output,keyboard);
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;           {access the necessary procedures}
const
  Crt=                3;           {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=            0;           {device control word; ignored for CRT}
  Ratio=              1.31362467886; {aspect ratio of Model 236 screen}
type
  RoundType=         (Up,Down,Near); {used by function Round2}
var
  Error:              integer;      {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  Xmin,Xmax,Ymin,Ymax: real;        {isotropic units for window}
  Character:          string[1];    {for continue message}
  ClipXmin, ClipXmax: real;         {soft clip limits in X}
  ClipYmin, ClipYmax: real;         {soft clip limits in Y}
  Keyboard:           text;         {non-echoing input}
$page$ {*****}
procedure Frame;
{-----}
{   This procedure draws a frame around the current window limits.   }
{-----}
const
  WindowLimits= 450;                {mnemonic better than magic number}
type
  LimitOrder=   (Xmin, Xmax, Ymin,Ymax);
  LimitType=    array [LimitOrder] of real;
var
  Pac:          packed array [1..1] of char;   { \ These are the sundries }
  Iarray:       array [1..1] of integer;       { \ needed by the call to   }
  Window:       LimitType;                     { / the DGL procedure     }
  Error:        integer;                        { / "inq_ws",              }
begin
  inq_ws(WindowLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Window,Error);
  if Error=0 then begin
    move(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymin]);           {move to lower left corner}
    line(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymax]);           {draw to upper left corner}
    line(Window[Xmax],Window[Ymax]);           {draw to upper right corner}
    line(Window[Xmax],Window[Ymin]);           {draw to lower right corner}
    line(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymin]);           {draw to lower left corner}
  end {Error=0?}
  else writeln('Error ',Error:0,' occurred in "Frame"');
  end; {procedure "Frame"}                   {return}

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
Procedure ClipLimit(Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure defines the four global variables which specify where the }
{ soft clip limits are. }
{-----}
begin
    if Xmin<Xmax then begin
        ClipXmin:=Xmin;
        ClipXmax:=Xmax;
    end
    else begin
        ClipXmin:=Xmax;
        ClipXmax:=Xmin;
    end;
    if Ymin<Ymax then begin
        ClipYmin:=Ymin;
        ClipYmax:=Ymax;
    end
    else begin
        ClipYmin:=Ymax;
        ClipYmax:=Ymin;
    end;
end;
{-----}
{procedure "ClipLimit"}
{ \ }
{ \ Force the minimum soft }
{ \ clip limit in X to be }
{ \ the smaller of the two }
{ / X values passed into }
{ / the procedure. }
{ / }
{ \ }
{ \ Force the minimum soft }
{ \ clip limit in Y to be }
{ \ the smaller of the two }
{ / Y values passed into }
{ / the procedure. }
{ / }
{ / }
{procedure "ClipLimit"}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure ClipDraw(X1, Y1, X2, Y2: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure takes the endpoints of a line, and clips it. The soft }
{ clip limits are the real global variables ClipXmin, ClipXmax, ClipYmin, }
{ and ClipYmax. These may be defined through the procedure ClipLimit. }
{-----}
label
    1;
type
    Edges= (Left,Right,Top,Bottom); {possible edges to cross}
    OutOfBounds= set of Edges; {set of edges crossed}
var
    Out,Out1,Out2:OutOfBounds;
    X, Y: real;
{-----}
Procedure Code(X, Y: real; var Out: OutOfBounds);
begin
    Out:=[];
    if x<ClipXmin then Out:=[left] {off left edge?}
    else if x>ClipXmax then Out:=[right]; {off right edge?}
    if y<ClipYmin then Out:=Out+[bottom] {off the bottom?}
    else if y>ClipYmax then Out:=Out+[top]; {off the top?}
end;
{-----}

```

A-42 Listings of Example Programs

```

begin
Code(X1,Y1,Out1);
Code(X2,Y2,Out2);
while (Out1<>[]) or (Out2<>[]) do begin
  if (Out1*Out2)<>[] then goto 1;
  if Out1<>[] then Out:=Out1
    else Out:=Out2;
  if left in Out then begin
    y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmin-X1)/(X2-X1);
    x:=ClipXmin;
  end {left in Out?}
  else if right in Out then begin
    y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmax-X1)/(X2-X1);
    x:=ClipXmax;
  end {right in Out?}
  else if bottom in Out then begin
    x:=X1+(X2-X1)*(ClipYmin-Y1)/(Y2-Y1);
    y:=ClipYmin;
  end {bottom in Out?}
  else if top in Out then begin
    x:=X1+(X2-X1)*(ClipYmax-Y1)/(Y2-Y1);
    y:=ClipYmax;
  end; {top in Out?}
  if Out=Out1 then begin
    X1:=x; Y1:=y; Code(x,y,Out1);
  end {Out=Out1?}
  else begin
    X2:=x; Y2:=y; Code(x,y,Out2);
  end; {else begin}
end; {while}
move(x1,y1);
line(x2,y2);
1: end;

$PAGE$ {*****}
function Round2(N, M: real; Mode: RoundType): real;
{-----}
{ This function rounds "N" to the nearest "M", according to "Mode". This }
{ function works only when the argument is in the range of MININT..MAXINT. }
{-----}
const
  epsilon=      1E-10;      {roundoff error fudge factor}
var
  Rounded:      real;      {temporary holding area}
  Negative:     boolean;   {flag: "It is negative?"}
begin
  Negative:=(N<0.0);
  if Negative then begin
    N:=abs(N);
    if Mode=UP then Mode:=Down
    else if Mode=Down then Mode:=UP;
  end;

```

```

case Mode of
  Down: Rounded:=trunc(N/M)*M;      {should we round the number...}
  Up:   begin                       {...left on the number line?}
    Rounded:=N/M;                  {...right on the number line?}
    if abs(Rounded-round(Rounded))>epsilon then
      Rounded:=(trunc(Rounded)+1.0)*M
    else
      Rounded:=trunc(Rounded)*M;
    end;
  Near: Rounded:=trunc(N/M+M*0.5)*M;  {...to the nearest multiple?}
end; {case}
if Negative then Rounded:=-Rounded;  {reinstate the sign}
Round2:=Rounded;                     {assign to function name}
end;                                  {function "Round2"}
$PAGE$ {*****}
procedure Grid(Xspacing,Yspacing,XlocY,YlocX: real; Xmajor, Ymajor: integer;
  Xminsize, Yminsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws a grid on the plotting surface, with user-definable }
{ minor tick size. Parameters are as follows:                               }
{ Xspacing: The distance between tick marks on the X axis.                }
{ Yspacing: The distance between tick marks on the Y axis.                }
{ XlocX: The X-value of the Y-axis.                                        }
{ YlocY: The Y-value of the X-axis.                                        }
{ Xmajor, The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick     }
{ Ymajor: mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major.         }
{ Xminsize: The length, in world units, of the X minor tick marks.       }
{ Yminsize: The length, in world units, of the Y minor tick marks.       }
{-----}
var
  X, Y: real;
  Xstart,Ystart:real;
  XsemiMinsize: real;
  YsemiMinsize: real;
  Counter: integer;
begin
  XsemiMinsize:=Xminsize*0.5;
  YsemiMinsize:=Yminsize*0.5;
  Xstart:=Round2(ClipXmin,Xspacing*Xmajor,Down); {round to next lower major}
  Ystart:=Round2(ClipYmin,Yspacing*Ymajor,Down); {round to next lower major}
  {==== Draw vertical major ticks =====}
  X:=Xstart;
  while X<=ClipXmax do begin
    ClipDraw(X,CliPYmin,X,CliPYmax);
    X:=X+Xspacing*Xmajor;
  end;
  {==== Draw horizontal major ticks =====}
  Y:=Ystart;
  while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
    ClipDraw(ClipXmin,Y,CliPXmax,Y);
    Y:=Y+Yspacing*Ymajor;
  end;
end;

```

A-44 Listings of Example Programs

```

{==== Draw vertical minor ticks =====}
X:=Xstart;
Counter:=0;
while X<=ClipXmax do begin
  if Counter<>0 then begin
    Y:=Ystart;
    while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
      ClipDraw(X,Y-YsemiMinsize,X,Y+YsemiMinsize);
      Y:=Y+Yspacing;
    end; {while Y<=ClipYmax}
  end; {counter<>0?}
  Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Xmajor;
  X:=X+Xspacing;
end; {while}
{==== Draw horizontal minor ticks =====}
Y:=Ystart;
Counter:=0;
while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
  if Counter<>0 then begin
    X:=Xstart;
    while X<=ClipXmax do begin
      ClipDraw(X-XsemiMinsize,Y,X+XsemiMinsize,Y);
      X:=X+Xspacing;
    end; {while X<=ClipXmax}
  end; {counter<>0?}
  Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Ymajor;
  Y:=Y+Yspacing;
end; {while}
end; {procedure "Grid"}
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure IsotropicWindow(Wxmin,Wxmax,Wymin,Wymax: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure allows the user to specify a window which forces the }
{ units to be isotropic, i.e., X units are exactly as long as Y units are. }
{-----}
const
  ViewportLimits=      451;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
type
  LimitOrder= (Wxmin,Wxmax,Wymin,Wymax);
  LimitType= array [LimitOrder] of real;
var
  Pac: packed array [1..1] of char; { \ ...sundry variables }
  Iarray: array [1..1] of integer; { \ needed by the "inq_ws" }
  Viewport: LimitType; { / procedure, called to set }
  Error: integer; { / window limits. }
  Wxrange, Wyrange: real; {X/Y range in window (world) coordinates}
  Vxrange, Vyrange: real; {X/Y range in viewport (virtual) coordinates}
  Wratio, Vratio: real; {aspect ratios of window and viewport}
  Wxmid, Wymid: real; {X/Y midpoints of window}
  WVratio, VVratio: real; {ratios of the ratios}
  Multiplier: real; {the amount to multiply the semirange by}

```

```

begin
    inr_ws(ViewportLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Viewport,Error); {set viewport limits}
    if Error<>0 then
        writeln('Error ',Error:0,' in procedure "Show",');
        Wxrange:=Wxmax-Wxmin;           {range of X in desired window}
        Wyrange:=Wymax-Wymin;           {range of Y in desired window}
        Wratio:=Wxrange/Wyrange;        {aspect ratio of desired window}
        Vxrange:=Viewport[Vxmax]-Viewport[Vxmin]; {range of X in current viewport}
        Vyrange:=Viewport[Vymax]-Viewport[Vymin]; {range of Y in current viewport}
        Vratio:=Vxrange/Vyrange;        {aspect ratio of viewport}
        if abs(Vratio)<abs(Wratio) then begin {need more room on top and bottom}
            Wymid:=Wymin+Wyrange*0.5;    {Y midpoint in desired window}
            WVratio:=abs(Wratio/Vratio);  {ratio of aspect ratios}
            Multiplier:=Wyrange*0.5*WVratio; {what the Y range must be extended by}
            Wymin:=Wymid-Multiplier;     {new minimum Y for window}
            Wymax:=Wymid+Multiplier;    {new maximum Y for window}
        end
        else begin {need more room on right and left}
            Wxmid:=Wxmin+Wxrange*0.5;    {X midpoint in desired window}
            VWratio:=abs(Vratio/Wratio);  {ratio of aspect ratios}
            Multiplier:=Wxrange*0.5*VWratio; {what the X range must be extended by}
            Wxmin:=Wxmid-Multiplier;     {new minimum X for window}
            Wxmax:=Wxmid+Multiplier;    {new maximum X for window}
        end; {vratio<wratio?}
        set_window(Wxmin,Wxmax,Wymin,Wymax); {set window with twiddled parameters}
    end;
    $page$ {*****}
    begin {body of program "IsoProg"}
        graphics_init; {initialize graphics library}
        display_init(Crt,Control,Error); {initialize CRT}
        if Error=0 then begin {if no error occurred...}
            set_aspect(Ratio,1); {use the whole screen}
            while true do begin {until the cows come home...}
                write(#12); {clear the alpha screen}
                prompt('Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax: '); {give the user the prompt}
                readln(Xmin,Xmax,Ymin,Ymax); {read his/her answers}
                set_line_style(3); {invoke dashed line style}
                Frame; {draw dashed frame}
                IsotropicWindow(Xmin,Xmax,Ymin,Ymax); {invoke isotropic units}
                ClipLimit(Xmin,Xmax,Ymin,Ymax); {set soft clip limits to user's values}
                set_line_style(1); {invoke solid lines}
                Grid(1,1,0,0,1,1,1,1); {show isotropic grid of requested area}
                prompt('Press the space bar to go on,'); {user's continuation prompt}
                read(Keyboard,Character); {wait until user says to go on}
                clear_display; {clear graphics screen}
            end; {while}
        end; {Error=0?}
        graphics_term; {terminate graphics library}
    end. {Program "IsoProg"}

```

JustProg

```

Program JustProg(output);
import dgl_lib,dgl_inq;           {get graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=          3;           {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=     0;           {device control; 0 for CRT}
type
  HJustifyType=    (Left,HCentered,Right); {horizontal justification}
  VJustifyType=    (Bottom,VCentered,Top); {vertical justification}
  AngType=         (Deg,Rad,Grad); {used by procedure "LabelDirection"}
  Str255=          strings[255]; {for the procedure "GLabel"}
var
  ErrorReturn:     integer;      {variable for initialization outcome}
  HJust:           HJustifyType; {horizontal justification variable}
  VJust:           VJustifyType; {vertical justification variable}
  I:               integer;      {for the strwrite statement}
  Strng:           str255;       {labelled text holder}
  CharWidth,CharHeight: real;    { \ These are global variables }
  HJustification:  HJustifyType; { \ needed by the LabelJustify/ }
  VJustification:  VJustifyType; { / LabelDirection/CharSize }
  CharTheta:       real;         { / series of procedures, }
#include 'DGLPRG:ConvVtoW'$      {needed by procedure "CharSize"}
$page$ {*****}
procedure Frame;
{-----}
{ This procedure draws a frame around the current window limits. }
{-----}
const
  WindowLimits= 450;           {mnemonic better than magic number}
type
  LimitOrder=    (Xmin, Xmax, Ymin,Ymax);
  LimitType=     array [LimitOrder] of real;
var
  Pac:           packed array [1..1] of char; { \ These are the sundries }
  Iarray:        array [1..1] of integer;    { \ needed by the call to }
  Window:        LimitType;                  { / the DGL procedure }
  Error:         integer;                     { / "inq_ws", }
begin
  {body of procedure "Frame"}
  inq_ws(WindowLimits,0,0,4,Pac,Iarray,Window,Error);
  if Error=0 then begin
    move(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymin]); {move to lower left corner}
    line(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymax]); {draw to upper left corner}
    line(Window[Xmax],Window[Ymax]); {draw to upper right corner}
    line(Window[Xmax],Window[Ymin]); {draw to lower right corner}
    line(Window[Xmin],Window[Ymin]); {draw to lower left corner}
  end {Error=0?}
  else writeln('Error ',Error:0,' occurred in "Frame"');
end; {procedure "Frame"} {return}

```


A-48 Listings of Example Programs

```

$Page$ {*****}
function Atan(Y, X: real): real;
{-----}
{   This function returns the value of the arctangent of Y/X, placing it   }
{ in the correct quadrant.  If Y and X are both zero, the result is zero. }
{-----}
const
  Pi=          3.14159265359;          {pi}
begin
  {function "Atan"}
  if X=0,0 then Atan:=(Pi/2+Pi*ord(Y<0,0))*ord(Y<>0,0)
  else Atan:=arctan(Y/X)+Pi*ord(X<0,0)+2*Pi*ord((X>0,0) and (Y<0,0));
  end;
  {function "Atan"}
$Page$ {*****}
procedure Glabel(Text: Str255);
{-----}
{   This procedure labels a string of text at the current pen position.   }
{ It takes into account the current label direction (set by procedure     }
{ "LabelDirection", the current character size (set by procedure         }
{ "CharSize"), and the current label justification (set by procedure     }
{ "LabelJustify").                                                       }
{-----}
const
  CharSizeCode=      250;          {mnemonic better than magic number}
  CurrentPosition=   259;          {ditto}
type
  Positions=         (X,Y);
  PositionType=      array [Positions] of real;
  CharAttributes=    (Width,Height);
  CharAttrType=      array [CharAttributes] of real;
var
  Chars:             integer;
  CharSize:          CharAttrType;
  Len,Height:        real;          {length and height of character string}
  Dx,Dy:             real;
  R,Theta:           real;          {for rectangular-to-polar conversion}
  Pac:               packed array [1..1] of char;  { \ These are the }
  Iarray:            array [1..1] of integer;     { \ sundry items }
  Position:          PositionType;               { / needed for the }
  Error:             integer;                   { / call to "inq_ws"}
begin
  {procedure "Glabel"}
  inq_ws(CharSizeCode,0,0,2,Pac,Iarray,CharSize,Error);  {set pen position}
  if Error<>0 then writeln('Error',Error:0,' in "Glabel",');
  Chars:=strlen(text);
  Len:=CharSize[Width]*(7*Chars+2*(Chars-1))/9;  {length minus inter-char gap}
  Height:=CharSize[Height]*8/15;                 {height minus inter-line gap}
  Dx:=Len*(-ord(HJustification)/2);
  Dy:=Height*(-ord(VJustification)/2);
  R:=sqrt(Dx*Dx+Dy*Dy);                           { \ Convert to polar coordinates so }
  Theta:=Atan(Dy,Dx);                               { / rotation is easy. }
  Theta:=Theta+CharTheta;                           {add the LabelDirection angle}
  Dx:=R*cos(Theta);                                 { \ Convert R and the new Theta back }
  Dy:=R*sin(Theta);                                 { / to rectangular coordinates. }
  inq_ws(CurrentPosition,0,0,2,Pac,Iarray,Position,Error);  {set pen position}
  if Error=0 then begin
    move(Position[X]+Dx,Position[Y]+Dy); {move to the new starting point}
    stext(text);
  end {Error=0?}
  else writeln('Error',Error:0,' in "Glabel",');
  end;
  {procedure "Glabel"}

```


LdirProg

```

program LdirProg;                                {Program name same as file name}
import dgl_lib;                                  {access the necessary procedures}
const
  Crt=          3;                               {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=     0;                               {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  AngType=     (Deg,Rad,Grad); {used by procedure LabelDirection}
var
  Error:       integer;   {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  I,J:         integer;   {loop control variable and spare}
  Strng:       strings[50]; {string to label}
  CharTheta:   real;      {global variable for label direction}
$page$ {*****}
procedure LabelDirection(Direction: real; Units: AngType);
{-----}
{ This procedure is used in conjunction with LabelOrigin, CharSize and }
{ Glabel. It sets the labelling direction to be used, and places the }
{ direction into a global variable so Glabel can use it. }
{-----}
const
  Deg_per_rad= 57.2957795131; {180/Pi: for converting degrees to radians}
  Grad_per_rad= 63.6619772368; {200/Pi: for converting grads to radians}
begin
  {procedure "LabelDirection"}
case Units of
  Deg: Direction:=Direction/Deg_per_rad; {degrees to radians}
  Rad: ; {correct units already}
  Grad: Direction:=Direction/Grad_per_rad; {grads to radians}
end; {case}
CharTheta:=Direction; {put into a global variable}
set_text_rot(cos(CharTheta),sin(CharTheta)); {invoke the new text direction}
end; {procedure "LabelDirection"}
$page$ {*****}
begin
  {body of program "LdirProg"}
graphics_init; {initialize graphics library}
display_init(Crt,Control,Error); {initialize CRT}
if Error=0 then begin {if no error occurred...}
  set_aspect(511,389); {use the whole screen}
  set_window(-1,1,-1,1); {define appropriate window}
  set_char_size(0.05,0.08); {set the size for the characters}
  for I:=0 to 35 do begin {every ten degrees}
    Strng:=''; {empty the string}
    strwrite(strng,1,J,I*10:0); {convert the loop variable to degrees}
    Strng:='-----'+Strng+' deg'; {attach prefix and suffix}
    LabelDirection(I*10,Deg); {specify label direction}
    move(0,0); {move to the center of the screen}
    stext(Strng); {label the text}
  end; {for I}
end; {Error=0?}
graphics_term; {terminate graphics library}
end. {program "LdirProg"}

```

LOCATOR

```

$debug$
Program Test(outPut);
import dgl_vars,dgl_types,dgl_lib,dgl_poly,dgl_inq;
type
  Commands=          0..8;          {nine commands total}
  RealArray=        array [1..5] of real;
const
  FS=                chr(28);       {right arrow}
  BS=                chr(8);        {left arrow or backspace}
  US=                chr(31);       {up arrow}
  LF=                chr(10);       {down arrow}
  CR=                chr(13);       {carriage return}
  MinX=              0;             {minimum X value for screen}
  MinY=              0;             {minimum Y value for screen}
  MaxX=              511;           {maximum X value for screen}
  MaxY=              389;           {maximum Y value for screen}
  Xrange=            MaxX-MinX;     {total range of X}
  Yrange=            MaxY-MinY;     {total range of Y}
  LocatorAddress=    2;             {2 for Knob,706 for 9111}
var
  Error_num:         integer;       {error return variable}
  I,TempInt:         integer;       {utility variables}
  ButtonValue:       integer;       {which button selected?}
  Xin,Yin:           real;          {location of digitized point}
  Xlast,Ylast:      real;          {last digitized point}
  CharWidth,CharHeight: real;      {char size in world coords}
  Done:              boolean;       {are we supposed to quit?}
  NewLine:           boolean;       {start new line?}
  TempString:        Gstring$255;   {utility variable}
  EchoSelect,EchoSelector: real;    0..9; {menu selection}
  MenuTop:           real;
  CellWidth:         real;          {width of menu spaces}
  Command:           Commands;      {which command selected?}
$page$ {*****}
procedure DrawMenu;
var
  I:                 integer;       {loop-control variable}
  Ylabel:           real;          {Y position of entree label}
  Yarray:           RealArray;

```

A-52 Listings of Example Programs

```

{-----}
Procedure MenuCell(I:integer);
var
  TempPitch:      real;      {temporary variable}
  Xlabel:        real;      {X position of entree label}
  Xarray:        RealArray;  {X positions of entree cell}
begin
  case I of
    0: begin
      TempStrings:='STOP';      {label text}
      Xarray[1]:=0;              { \
                                }
      Xarray[2]:=2*CellWidth;    { \
                                }
      Xarray[3]:=2*CellWidth;    { > X positions for box
                                }
      Xarray[4]:=0;              { /
                                }
      Xarray[5]:=0;              { /
                                }
      Xlabel:=MinX+CellWidth-strlen(TempStrings)*CharWidth/2;
    end;
    1..10: begin
      TempPitch:=CellWidth*I;    {temporary shorthand variable}
      Xarray[1]:=CellWidth+TempPitch; { \
                                }
      Xarray[2]:=2*CellWidth+TempPitch; { \
                                }
      Xarray[3]:=2*CellWidth+TempPitch; { > X positions for box
                                }
      Xarray[4]:=CellWidth+TempPitch; { /
                                }
      Xarray[5]:=CellWidth+TempPitch; { /
                                }
      TempStrings:=' ';          {label text}
      if I<=8 then strwrite(TempStrings,I,TempInt,I:1);
      Xlabel:=Xarray[1]+CellWidth/2+strlen(TempStrings)*CharWidth/2;
    end;
  end; {case I of}
  Polyline(5,Xarray,Yarray);    {draw perimeter of cell}
  move(Xlabel,Ylabel);          {move to the right place}
  stext(TempStrings);           {label the text}
end;                             {procedure MenuCell}
{-----}
begin                             {procedure DrawMenu}
  Yarray[1]:=MinY;              { \
                                }
  Yarray[2]:=MinY;              { \
                                }
  Yarray[3]:=MenuTop;           { > Y values for box
                                }
  Yarray[4]:=MenuTop;           { /
                                }
  Yarray[5]:=MinY;              { /
                                }
  Ylabel:=MinY+(MenuTop-MinY)/2-CharHeight/2; {Y position of label}
  for I:=0 to 10 do MenuCell(I); {do all the entree cells}
end; {procedure DrawMenu}
$page$ {*****}
function CheckMenu(Xin:real):Commands;
begin                             {function CheckMenu}
  if Xin<2*CellWidth then CheckMenu:=0 {X outside of menu?}
  else begin
    TempInt:=trunc((Xin-CellWidth)/CellWidth); {which sell chosen?}
    if TempInt>8 then CheckMenu:=Command
    else CheckMenu:=TempInt
  end;
end; {function CheckMenu }

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
begin                                     {Main program}
graphics_init;                          {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(3,0,Error_Num);            {which output device?}
if Error_Num<>0 then begin                {output device initialization OK?}
  writeln('I failed to initialize the display.');
```

writeln('Error number ',Error_Num:2,' was returned.');

```
end {if Error_Num<>0}
else begin
  LOCATOR_init(LocatorAddress,Error_Num);
  if Error_Num<>0 then begin
    writeln('I failed to initialize the locator.');
```

writeln('Error number ',Error_Num:2,' was returned.');

```
end {if Error_Num<>0}
else begin                               {No errors so far}
  set_aspect(511,389);                   {use whole screen}
  set_window(0,511,0,389);               {scale window for data}
  CharWidth:=0.035*511;                  {char width: 3.5% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=0.05*389;                  {char height: 5% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight);   {install character size}
  MenuTop:=Yrange/13;                    {menu is 1/13 the total screen height}
  CellWidth:=Xrange/12;                  {each entree cell 1/12 screen width}
  DrawMenu;                              {draw the menu}
  NewLine:=true;                         {yes, we are starting a new line}
  EchoSelect:=4;                          {start program with default command}
  Command:=4;                             {ditto}
  Done:=false;                            {no, we're not done yet}
  repeat
    if NewLine then                       {starting a new line?}
      EchoSelector:=2
    else
      EchoSelector:=EchoSelect;
    await_locator(EchoSelector,ButtonValue,Xin,Yin);
    if Yin<MenuTop then begin             {user choose menu option?}
      NewLine:=true;                      {start a new line next time}
      Command:=CheckMenu(Xin);            {determine menu selection}
      case Command of                    {which command}
        0: Done:=true;                   {yes, we're done with the program}
        1: EchoSelect:=1;                 { \ }
        2: EchoSelect:=2;                 { \ }
        3: EchoSelect:=3;                 { \ }
        4: EchoSelect:=4;                 { \ Select the appropriate }
        5: EchoSelect:=5;                 { / EchoSelector. }
        6: EchoSelect:=6;                 { / }
        7: EchoSelect:=7;                 { / }
        8: EchoSelect:=8;                 { / }
      end {case}
    end {if}
  else begin                              {not a menu selection}
    if NewLine then begin                 {start a new line}
      NewLine:=false;                    {now we're in the middle of a line}
      set_echo_pos(Xin,Yin);              {move the graphics cursor}
      move(Xin,Yin);                      {cause line-drawing to start there}
      Ylast:=Yin;                         {remember the last X...}
      Xlast:=Xin;                         {...and the last Y}
    end
  end
end

```

```

else begin
  set_echo_pos(Xin,Yin);      {move the graphics cursor}
  if (Xin=Xlast) and (Yin=Ylast) then NewLine:=true
  else begin
    case EchoSelect of
      1..7: line(Xin,Yin);    {draw a line}
      8: begin
          line(Xlast,Yin);
          line(Xin,Yin);
          line(Xin,Ylast);
          line(Xlast,Ylast);
          NewLine:=true;
        end
      otherwise
    end; {case EchoSelect of}
    Xlast:=Xin;               {remember the last X...}
    Ylast:=Yin;               {...and the last Y}
  end
end;
end;
until Done;                  {are we done yet?}
locator_term;                 {terminate the locator}
display_term;                 {terminate the display}
end; {Error trap}
end;
graphics_term;                {terminate the graphics system}
end.                           {Main program}

```

LogPlot

```

Program LogPlot(keyboard,output);
import dgl_lib;
const
  Xmin=      -4;                { \
  Xmax=       2;                { \ Decade minima   }
  Ymin=       0;                { / and maxima.   }
  Ymax=       3;                { /
  Crt=        3;                {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=    0;                {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  RDataType=  array [1..15] of real;
const
  Xvalues=    RDataType[0.0003, 0.0009, 0.004, 0.008, 0.01, 0.07, 0.22, 0.5,
                    1.2, 2.6, 8.9, 18.6, 34, 56, 97];
  Yvalues=    RDataType[1.1, 4.5, 13.38, 45.9, 60.33, 130.7, 346, 690.4,
                    899, 933, 903, 841, 720, 505, 390];
var
  Error:      integer;          {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  Decade:    integer;
  Units, UpperLimit: integer;
  X, Y:      real;
  I:         integer;

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
function Log10(X: real): real;
{-----}
{ This function returns the logarithm to the base ten of a number. }
{-----}
const
  Log_10=      2.30258509299;      {log to the base e of 10}
begin
  Log10:=ln(X)/Log_10;           {function "Log10"}
end;
$Page$ {*****}
begin
  graphics_init;                {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(Crt,Control,Error);
if Error=0 then begin
  set_aspect(511,389);
  set_window(Xmin,Xmax,Ymin,Ymax);
  {==== Draw and label logarithmic X-axis grid =====}
  for Decade:=Xmin to Xmax do begin {one decade equals one mantissa cycle}
    if Decade=Xmax then UpperLimit:=1
    else UpperLimit:=9;
    for Units:=1 to UpperLimit do begin {do 2-9 if not last cycle}
      X:=Decade+Log10(Units);
      move(X,Ymin);
      line(X,Ymax);
    end; {for units}
  end; {for decade}
  {==== Draw and label logarithmic Y-axis grid =====}
  for Decade:=Ymin to Ymax do begin {one decade equals one mantissa cycle}
    if Decade=Ymax then UpperLimit:=1
    else UpperLimit:=9;
    for Units:=1 to UpperLimit do begin {do 2-9 if not last cycle}
      Y:=Decade+Log10(Units);
      move(Xmin,Y);
      line(Xmax,Y);
    end; {for units}
  end; {for decade}
  {==== Draw the logarithmic data curve =====}
  for I:=1 to 15 do begin
    if I=1 then move(Log10(XValues[I]),Log10(Yvalues[I]))
    else line(Log10(XValues[I]),Log10(Yvalues[I]));
  end; {for i}
end; {Error=0?} {end of conditional code}
graphics_term; {terminate graphics library}
end. {Program "LogPlot"}

```

MarkrProg

```

program MarkrProg(output);
import dsl_lib,dsl_inq;
const
  CrtAddr=          3;
  ControlWord=      0;
type
  MarkerNumType=    array [0..4] of integer;
  DataType=         array [0..10] of integer;
const
  MarkerNumber=     MarkerNumType[2,5,6,8,13];
  Data=             DataType[0,2,1,4,3,3,1,5,3,4,6];
var
  ErrorReturn:      integer;
  I, J:             integer;
$page$ {*****}
begin
  {Program "MarkrProg"}
  graphics_init;
  display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn);
  if ErrorReturn=0 then begin
    set_aspect(511,389);
    set_window(0,10,0,10);
    move(0,0); line(0,10); line(10,10); line(10,0); line(0,0);
    for I:=0 to 4 do begin
      for J:=0 to 10 do begin
        if J<>0 then marker(MarkerNumber[I]);
        if J=0 then move(J,Data[J]+I)
        else line(J,Data[J]+I);
      end; {for J}
    end; {for i}
  end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
  graphics_term;
end.
{Program "MarkrProg"}

```

PLineProg

```

Program PLineProg(output);
import dgl_lib,dgl_inq;
const
  CrtAddr=          3;
  ControlWord=      0;
type
  RDataType=        array [0..10] of real;
const
  Xvalues=          RDataType[0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10];
  Yvalues=          RDataType[0,2,1,4,3,3,1,5,3,4,6];
var
  ErrorReturn:      integer;
  X, Y:             RDataType;
$Page$ {*****}
begin
  {program "PLineProg"}
  graphics_init;
  display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn);
  if ErrorReturn=0 then begin
    set_aspect(511,389);
    set_window(0,10,0,10);
    move(0,0); line(0,10); line(10,10); line(10,0); line(0,0);
    X:=Xvalues; Y:=Yvalues;
    polyline(11,X,Y);
  end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
  graphics_term;
end.
{program "PLineProg"}

```

PolyProg

```

Program PolyProg(output);           {program name same as file name}
import
  dgl_lib,dgl_types,dgl_poly,dgl_inq; {access the necessary procedures}
const
  MaxPoints=      27;               {number of points in arrays}
  Crt=            3;                {device address of graphics raster}
  Control=       0;                {device control word; ignored for CRT}
type
  Reals=          array [1..MaxPoints] of real;  {to contain X and Y values}
  Word=          -32768..32767;             {16-bit word}
  Integers=      array [1..MaxPoints] of Word;  {to contain op. selectors}
const
  Xvalues=       Reals[ 1.5, 2.5, 2.5, 1.5,-1.5,-2.5,-2.5,-1.5, {Octagon}
                    -2.5, 2.5, 2.5,-2.5,-2.5,                    {Box}
                    -2.5,-4.5,-2.5,-5.0,-4.0,                  {Left leg}
                    2.5, 4.5, 2.5, 5.0, 4.0,                   {Right leg}
                    -0.5,-1.0, 1.0, 0.5];                      {Nozzle}
  Yvalues=       Reals[ 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 4.0, 3.0, 2.0, 1.0, {Octagon}
                    1.0, 1.0,-2.0,-2.0, 1.0,                  {Box}
                    -2.0,-4.0, 0.0,-4.0,-4.0,                 {Left leg}
                    -2.0,-4.0, 0.0,-4.0,-4.0,                 {Right leg}
                    -2.0,-3.0,-3.0,-2.0];                      {Nozzle}
  OpCodes=       Integers[2,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,                    {Octagon}
                        2,1,1,1,1,                            {Box}
                        2,1,1,2,1,                            {Right leg}
                        2,1,1,2,1,                            {Left leg}
                        2,1,1,1];                              {Nozzle}
var
  Error:         integer;           {display_init return variable; 0 = ok}
  I:             integer;           {loop control variable}
  LemX, LemY:    Reals;             {so we can pass it to "Polygon"}
  OpSelectors:   Integers;          {ditto}
  Points:        integer;           {ditto}
$Page$ {*****}
begin
  LemX:=Xvalues;           { \ Put into variable array so }
  LemY:=Yvalues;           { > it can be passed by }
  OpSelectors:=OpCodes;   { / reference into the DGL proc.}
  Points:=MaxPoints;      {put constant into an array variable}
  graphics_init;          {initialize graphics library}
  display_init(Crt,Control,Error); {initialize CRT}
  if Error=0 then begin
    set_aspect(511,389);   {use the whole screen}
    set_window(-13,13,-10,10); {invoke isotropic units}
    polygon(Points,LemX,LemY,OpSelectors); {draw the lines}
  end; {Error=0?}         {end of conditional code}
  graphics_term;          {terminate graphics library}
end. {Program "PolyProg"} {end of program}

```


SinAxes1

```

Program SinAxes1(output);
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;           {get graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=      3;                 {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=  0;                 {device control; 0 for CRT}
type
  RoundType=    (Up, Down, Near); {used by procedure Round2}
var
  CharWidth:    real;              {width of char in world coords}
  CharHeight:  real;              {height of char in world coords}
  Text:         string[20];        {temporary holding place for text}
  ErrorReturn: integer;           {variable for initialization outcome}
  X:            integer;
  Y:            real;
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint' $      {function: y:=f(x) }
$page$ {*****}
function Round2(N, M: real; Mode: RoundType): real;
{-----}
{ This function rounds "N" to the nearest "M", according to "Mode". This }
{ function works only when the argument is in the range of MININT..MAXINT. }
{-----}
const
  epsilon=      1E-10;            {roundoff error fudge factor}
var
  Rounded:      real;              {temporary holding area}
  Negative:     boolean;          {flag: "It is negative?"}
begin
  Negative:=(N<0.0);              {is the number negative?}
  if Negative then begin
    N:=abs(N);                    {work with a positive number}
    if Mode=Up then Mode:=Down    {if number is negative, ...}
    else if Mode=Down then Mode:=Up; {...reverse up and down}
  end;
  case Mode of
    Down: Rounded:=trunc(N/M)*M;  {...left on the number line?}
    Up:   begin
      Rounded:=N/M;              {...right on the number line?}
      if abs(Rounded-round(Rounded))>epsilon then
        Rounded:=(trunc(Rounded)+1.0)*M
      else
        Rounded:=trunc(Rounded)*M;
      end;
    Near: Rounded:=trunc(N/M+M*0.5)*M; {...to the nearest multiple?}
  end; {case}
  if Negative then Rounded:=-Rounded; {reinstate the sign}
  Round2:=Rounded;                {assign to function name}
end;                               {function "Round2"}

```

```

$page$ {*****}
procedure Xaxis(Spacing,Location,Xmin,Xmax: real;
               Major: integer;
               Majsize,Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an X-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis. }
{ Location: The Y-value of the X-axis. }
{ Xmin,Xmax: The left and right ends of the X-axis, respectively. }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major. }
{ Majsize: The length, in current units, of the major tick marks. }
{ Minsize: The length, in current units, of the minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
  X: real; {current X of tick marks}
  SemiMinsize: real; {half of minor tick size}
  SemiMajsize: real; {half of major tick size}
  Counter: integer; {keeps track of when to do major ticks}
begin {body of procedure "Xaxis"}
  move(Xmin,Location); {left end of the x-axis}
  line(Xmax,Location); {draw x-axis}
  SemiMinsize:=Minsize*0.5; {half of every tick mark needs to...}
  SemiMajsize:=Majsize*0.5; {...be on each side of the axis}
  X:=Round2(Xmin,Spacing*Major,Down); {round start point to next lower major}
  Counter:=0; {start with a major tick}
  while X<=Xmax do begin {loop until greater than Xmax}
    if Counter=0 then begin {should we do a major tick?}
      move(X,Location-SemiMajsize); {move to bottom of major tick, and...}
      line(X,Location+SemiMajsize); {...draw to the top of major tick}
    end {Counter=0?}
    else begin
      move(X,Location-SemiMinsize); {move to bottom of minor tick, and...}
      line(X,Location+SemiMinsize); {...draw to the top of minor tick}
    end; {else begin}
    Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major; {Keep track of which length tick to do}
    X:=X+Spacing; {go to next tick position}
  end; {while}
end; {procedure "Xaxis"}

```

A-62 Listings of Example Programs

```

$Page$ {*****}
Procedure Yaxis(Spacing,Location,Ymin,Ymax: real;
               Major: integer;
               Majsize,Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an Y-axis at any intersection point on the plotting
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis. }
{ Location: The X-value of the Y-axis, }
{ Ymin,Ymax: The left and right ends of the Y-axis, respectively. }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major, }
{ Majsize: The length, in current units, of the major tick marks. }
{ Minsize: The length, in current units, of the minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
  Y: real; {current Y of tick marks}
  SemiMinsize: real; {half of minor tick size}
  SemiMajsize: real; {half of major tick size}
  Counter: integer; {keeps track of when to do major ticks}
begin {body of procedure "Axes"}
  move(Location,Ymin); {lower end of the y-axis}
  line(Location,Ymax); {draw y-axis}
  SemiMinsize:=Minsize*0.5; {half of every tick mark needs to...}
  SemiMajsize:=Majsize*0.5; {...be on each side of the axis}
  Y:=Round2(Ymin,Spacing*Major,Down); {round start point to next lower major}
  Counter:=0; {start with a major tick}
  while Y<=Ymax do begin {loop until greater than Xmax}
    if Counter=0 then begin {should we do a major tick?}
      move(Location-SemiMajsize,Y); {move to left of major tick, and...}
      line(Location+SemiMajsize,Y); {...draw to the right of major tick}
    end {Counter=0?}
    else begin
      move(Location-SemiMinsize,Y); {move to left of major tick, and...}
      line(Location+SemiMinsize,Y); {...draw to the right of major tick}
    end; {else begin}
    Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major; {keep track of which length tick to do}
    Y:=Y+Spacing; {go to next tick position}
  end; {while}
end; {loop if not done}
end; {procedure "Yaxis"}

```

```

$page$ {*****}
begin {body of program "SinAxes1"}
graphics_init; {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin {output device initialization OK?}
  set_aspect(511,389); {use the whole screen}
  CharWidth:=2*0.04; {char width: 4% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.08; {char height: 4% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:='VOLTAGE VARIANCE'; {define text to be labelled}
  for X:=-3 to 3 do begin {make "bold" label}
    move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2+X*0.002,0.9); {center label}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
  end;
  set_text_rot(0,1); {vertical labels}
  CharWidth:=2*0.025; {char width: 2.5% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.04; {char height: 4% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:='Voltage'; {define the text to be labelled}
  move(-0.9,-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  Text:='Time (seconds)'; {define the text to be labelled}
  set_text_rot(1,0); {horizontal labels}
  move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,-0.92); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  set_viewport(0,1,0.99,0.12,0.7); {define subset of screen}
  move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1); line(1,-1); line(-1,-1); {frame}
  set_window(0,100,0.16,0.18); {scale the window for the data}
  Xaxis(1,0.16,-50,150,5,0.001,0.0005); {draw the x-axis}
  Yaxis(0.001,0,0.1,0.2,5,2,1); {draw the y-axis}
  for X:=1 to 100 do begin {100 points total}
    Y:=DataPoint(X); {set a point from the function}
    if X=1 then move(X,Y) {move to the first point...}
    else line(X,Y); {...and draw to all the rest}
  end; {for X:=1 to 100}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term; {terminate the graphics package}
end. {program "SinAxes1"}

```

SinAxes2

```

Program SinAxes2(output);
import dgl_lib;                {get graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=          3;          {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=     0;          {device control; 0 for CRT}
type
  RoundType=       (Up, Down, Near);    {used by function Round2}
var
  CharWidth:       real;        {width of char in world coords}
  CharHeight:     real;        {height of char in world coords}
  Text:            string[20];  {temporary holding place for text}
  ErrorReturn:    integer;     {variable for initialization outcome}
  I:               integer;     {return variable from STRWRITE}
  X:               integer;
  Y:               real;
  ClipXmin, ClipXmax: real;     {soft clip limits in x}
  ClipYmin, ClipYmax: real;     {soft clip limits in y}
  $include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint'$  {function: y:=f(x) }
$page$ {*****}
procedure ClipLimit(Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure defines the four global variables which specify where the }
{ soft clip limits are. }
{-----}
begin
  {body of procedure "ClipLimit"}
  if Xmin<Xmax then begin
    { \ Force the minimum soft }
    ClipXmin:=Xmin; { \ clip limit in X to be }
    ClipXmax:=Xmax; { \ the smaller of the two }
  end { / X values passed into }
  else begin { / the procedure. }
    ClipXmin:=Xmax; { / }
    ClipXmax:=Xmin; { / }
  end; { / }
  if Ymin<Ymax then begin { \ }
    ClipYmin:=Ymin; { \ Force the minimum soft }
    ClipYmax:=Ymax; { \ clip limit in Y to be }
  end { \ the smaller of the two }
  else begin { / Y values passed into }
    ClipYmin:=Ymax; { / the procedure. }
    ClipYmax:=Ymin; { / }
  end; { / }
end; {procedure "ClipLimit"}
$page$ {*****}
procedure ClipDraw(X1, Y1, X2, Y2: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure takes the endpoints of a line, and clips it. The soft }
{ clip limits are the real global variables ClipXmin, ClipXmax, ClipYmin, }
{ and ClipYmax. These may be defined through the procedure ClipLimit. }
{-----}

```


A-66 Listings of Example Programs

```

$page$ {*****}
function Round2(N, M: real; Mode: RoundType): real;
{-----}
{ This function rounds "N" to the nearest "M", according to "Mode". This }
{ function works only when the argument is in the range of MININT..MAXINT. }
{-----}
const
    epsilon=      1E-10;           {roundoff error fudge factor}
var
    Rounded:      real;           {temporary holding area}
    Negative:     boolean;       {flag: "It is negative?"}
begin
    Negative:=(N<0.0);           {is the number negative?}
    if Negative then begin
        N:=abs(N);              {work with a positive number}
        if Mode=Up then Mode:=Down {if number is negative, ...}
        else if Mode=Down then Mode:=Up; {...reverse up and down}
    end;
    case Mode of
        Down: Rounded:=trunc(N/M)*M; {...left on the number line?}
        Up:   begin
            Rounded:=N/M;          {...right on the number line?}
            if abs(Rounded-round(Rounded))>epsilon then
                Rounded:=(trunc(Rounded)+1.0)*M
            else
                Rounded:=trunc(Rounded)*M;
            end;
        Near: Rounded:=trunc(N/M+M*0.5)*M; {...to the nearest multiple?}
    end; {case}
    if Negative then Rounded:=-Rounded; {reinstate the sign}
    Round2:=Rounded;                   {assign to function name}
end;                                    {function "Round2"}
$page$ {*****}
procedure XaxisClip(Spacing, Location: real; Major: integer;
    Majsize, Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an X-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis, }
{ Location: The Y-value of the X-axis, }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major, }
{ Majsize: The length, in world units, of the major tick marks, }
{ Minsize: The length, in world units, of the minor tick marks, }
{-----}
var
    X: real;                       {X position of tick marks}
    SemiMajsize: real;             {half of major tick size}
    SemiMinsize: real;            {half of minor tick size}
    Counter: integer;             {keeps track of when to do major ticks}

```

```

begin
SemiMajsize:=MajSize*0.5;
SemiMinsize:=MinSize*0.5;
Counter:=0;
ClipDraw(ClipXmin,Location,ClipXmax,Location);
X:=Round2(ClipXmin,Spacing*Major,Down);
while X<=ClipXmax do begin
  if Counter=0 then
    ClipDraw(X,Location-SemiMajsize,X,Location+SemiMajsize)
  else
    ClipDraw(X,Location-SemiMinsize,X,Location+SemiMinsize);
  Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major;
  X:=X+Spacing;
end;
end;
$Page$ {*****}
procedure YaxisClip(Spacing, Location: real; Major: integer;
  Majsize, Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an Y-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis. }
{ Location: The X-value of the Y-axis. }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major. }
{ Majsize: The length, in world units, of the major tick marks. }
{ Minsize: The length, in world units, of the minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
  Y: real;
  SemiMajsize: real;
  SemiMinsize: real;
  Counter: integer;
begin
SemiMajsize:=Majsize*0.5;
SemiMinsize:=Minsize*0.5;
Counter:=0;
ClipDraw(Location,ClipYmin,Location,ClipYmax);
Y:=Round2(ClipYmin,Spacing*Major,Down);
while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
  if Counter=0 then
    ClipDraw(Location-SemiMajsize,Y,Location+SemiMajsize,Y)
  else
    ClipDraw(Location-SemiMinsize,Y,Location+SemiMinsize,Y);
  Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major;
  Y:=Y+Spacing;
end;
end;
end;
{procedure "YaxisClip"}

```

```

$Page$ {*****}
begin {body of program "SinAxes2"}
graphics_init; {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin {output device initialization OK?}
  set_aspect(511,389); {use the whole screen}
  CharWidth:=2*0.04; {char width: 4% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.08; {char height: 4% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:='VOLTAGE VARIANCE'; {define text to be labelled}
  for X:=-3 to 3 do begin {make "bold" label}
    move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2+X*0.002,0.9); {center label}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
  end;
  set_text_rot(0,1); {vertical labels}
  CharWidth:=2*0.025; {char width: 2.5% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.04; {char height: 4% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install char size}
  Text:='Voltage'; {define text to be labelled}
  move(-0.97,-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  Text:='Time (seconds)'; {define text to be labelled}
  set_text_rot(1,0); {horizontal labels}
  move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,-0.92); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  set_viewport(0.1,0.99,0.12,0.7); {define subset of the screen}
  move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1); line(1,-1); line(-1,-1); {frame}
  set_window(0,100,0.16,0.18); {scale the window for the data}
  ClipLimit(0,100,0.16,0.18); {define the soft clip limits}
  XaxisClip(1,0.16,5,0.0008,0.0004); {draw the clipped X-axis}
  YaxisClip(0.0005,0.5,2,1); {draw the clipped Y-axis}
  CharWidth:=1.3; {char width: 1.3 user X units wide}
  CharHeight:=0.0008; {char height: .0008 user Y units high}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:=''; {erase previous definitions of strings}
  for X:=0 to 10 do begin {eleven X labels}
    strwrite(Text,1,I,X*10:0); {convert number to string}
    move(X*10-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,0.1593); {center the label}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
  end; {for x}
  Y:=0.16; {starting Y position for Y labels}
  repeat
    strwrite(Text,1,X,Y:6:4); {convert number to string}
    move(-8,Y-0.0002); {center the text vertically}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
    Y:=Y+0.0025; {next Y position}
  until Y>0.18; {terminating condition}
  for X:=1 to 100 do begin {100 points total}
    Y:=DataPoint(X); {set a point from the function}
    if X=1 then move(X,Y) {move to the first point...}
    else line(X,Y); {...and draw to all the rest}
  end; {for X:=1 to 100}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term; {terminate the graphics package}
end. {program "SinAxes2"}

```

SinClip

```

Program SinClip(output);
import dgl_lib;                               {set graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=          3;                          {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=     0;                          {device control; 0 for CRT}
type
  RoundType=      (UP, Down, Near);           {used by function Round2}
var
  CharWidth:      real;                       {width of char is world coords}
  CharHeight:     real;                       {height of char is world coords}
  Text:           strings[20];               {temporary holding place for text}
  ErrorReturn:    integer;                   {variable for initialization outcome}
  X:              integer;
  Y:              real;
  ClipXmin, ClipXmax: real;                   {soft clip limits in x}
  ClipYmin, ClipYmax: real;                   {soft clip limits in y}
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint' $                 {function: y:=f(x) }
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure ClipLimit(Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure defines the four global variables which specify where the }
{ soft clip limits are. }
{-----}
begin
if Xmin<Xmax then begin { \ }
  ClipXmin:=Xmin;       { \ Force the minimum soft }
  ClipXmax:=Xmax;       { \ clip limit in X to be }
end { \ the smaller of the two }
else begin { / X values passed into }
  ClipXmin:=Xmax;       { / the procedure. }
  ClipXmax:=Xmin;       { / }
end; { / }
if Ymin<Ymax then begin { \ }
  ClipYmin:=Ymin;       { \ Force the minimum soft }
  ClipYmax:=Ymax;       { \ clip limit in Y to be }
end { \ the smaller of the two }
else begin { / Y values passed into }
  ClipYmin:=Ymax;       { / the procedure. }
  ClipYmax:=Ymin;       { / }
end; { / }
end;
$Page$ {*****}
Procedure ClipDraw(X1, Y1, X2, Y2: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure takes the endpoints of a line, and clips it. The soft }
{ clip limits are the real global variables ClipXmin, ClipXmax, ClipYmin, }
{ and ClipYmax. These may be defined through the procedure ClipLimit. }
{-----}
label
  1;
type
  Edges=      (Left,Right,Top,Bottom);       {possible edges to cross}
  OutOfBounds= set of Edges;                 {set of edges crossed}
var
  Out,Out1,Out2:OutOfBounds;
  X, Y:       real;

```

```

{-----}
procedure Code(X, Y: real; var Out: OutOfBounds);
begin
  Out:=[];
  if x<ClipXmin then Out:=[left]
  else if x>ClipXmax then Out:=[right];
  if y<ClipYmin then Out:=Out+[bottom]
  else if y>ClipYmax then Out:=Out+[top];
end;
{-----}
begin
  Code(X1,Y1,Out1);
  Code(X2,Y2,Out2);
  while (Out1<>[]) or (Out2<>[]) do begin
    if (Out1*Out2)<>[] then goto 1;
    if Out1<>[] then Out:=Out1
    else Out:=Out2;
    if left in Out then begin
      y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmin-X1)/(X2-X1);
      x:=ClipXmin;
    end {left in Out?}
    else if right in Out then begin
      y:=Y1+(Y2-Y1)*(ClipXmax-X1)/(X2-X1);
      x:=ClipXmax;
    end {right in Out?}
    else if bottom in Out then begin
      x:=X1+(X2-X1)*(ClipYmin-Y1)/(Y2-Y1);
      y:=ClipYmin;
    end {bottom in Out?}
    else if top in Out then begin
      x:=X1+(X2-X1)*(ClipYmax-Y1)/(Y2-Y1);
      y:=ClipYmax;
    end; {top in Out?}
    if Out=Out1 then begin
      X1:=x; Y1:=y; Code(x,y,Out1);
    end {Out=Out1?}
    else begin
      X2:=x; Y2:=y; Code(x,y,Out2);
    end; {else begin}
  end; {while}
  move(x1,y1);
  line(x2,y2);
1: end; {procedure "ClipDraw"}
$page$ {*****}
function Round2(N, M: real; Mode: RoundType): real;
{-----}
{ This function rounds "N" to the nearest "M", according to "Mode". This }
{ function works only when the argument is in the range of MININT..MAXINT. }
{-----}
const
  epsilon= 1E-10;
var
  Rounded: real;
  Negative: boolean;

```

```

begin                                     {body of "Round2"}
Negative:=(N<0.0);                        {is the number negative?}
if Negative then begin
  N:=abs(N);                               {work with a positive number}
  if Mode=Up then Mode:=Down              {if number is negative, ...}
  else if Mode=Down then Mode:=Up;       {...reverse up and down}
end;
case Mode of                               {should we round the number...}
  Down: Rounded:=trunc(N/M)*M;            {...left on the number line?}
  Up:   begin
    Rounded:=N/M;                         {...right on the number line?}
    if abs(Rounded-round(Rounded))>epsilon then
      Rounded:=(trunc(Rounded)+1.0)*M
    else
      Rounded:=trunc(Rounded)*M;
    end;
  Near: Rounded:=trunc(N/M+M*0.5)*M;     {...to the nearest multiple?}
end; {case}
if Negative then Rounded:=-Rounded;      {reinstate the sign}
Round2:=Rounded;                          {assign to function name}
end;                                       {function "Round2"}
$PAGE$ {*****}
procedure XaxisClip(Spacing, Location: real; Major: integer;
  Majsize, Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an X-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows:                                     }
{ Spacing:   The distance between tick marks on the axis.             }
{ Location:  The Y-value of the X-axis.                                }
{ Major:     The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{            mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major.   }
{ Majsize:   The length, in world units, of the major tick marks.    }
{ Minsize:   The length, in world units, of the minor tick marks.    }
{-----}
var
  X:          real;
  SemiMajsize: real;
  SemiMinsize: real;
  Counter:    integer;           {keeps track of when to do major ticks}
begin
  SemiMajsize:=MajSize*0.5;
  SemiMinsize:=MinSize*0.5;
  Counter:=0;                    {start with a major tick}
  ClipDraw(ClipXmin,Location,ClipXmax,Location);
  X:=Round2(ClipXmin,Spacing*Major,Down); {round to next lower major}
  while X<=ClipXmax do begin
    if Counter=0 then
      ClipDraw(X,Location-SemiMajsize,X,Location+SemiMajsize)
    else
      ClipDraw(X,Location-SemiMinsize,X,Location+SemiMinsize);
    Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major;
    X:=X+Spacing;
  end; {while}
end; {procedure "XaxisClip"}

```

A-72 Listings of Example Programs

```

$page$ {*****}
procedure YaxisClip(Spacing, Location: real; Major: integer;
  Majsize, Minsize: real);
{-----}
{ This procedure draws an Y-axis at any intersection point on the plotting }
{ surface. Parameters are as follows: }
{ Spacing: The distance between tick marks on the axis. }
{ Location: The X-value of the Y-axis. }
{ Major: The number of tick marks to go before drawing a major tick }
{ mark. If Major=5, every fifth tick mark will be major. }
{ Majsize: The length, in world units, of the major tick marks. }
{ Minsize: The length, in world units, of the minor tick marks. }
{-----}
var
  Y: real;
  SemiMinsize: real;
  SemiMajsize: real;
  Counter: integer; {keeps track of when to do major ticks}
begin {body of procedure "YaxisClip"}
  SemiMajsize:=Majsize*0.5;
  SemiMinsize:=Minsize*0.5;
  Counter:=0; {start with a major tick}
  ClipDraw(Location,ClipYmin,Location,ClipYmax);
  Y:=Round2(ClipYmin,Spacing*Major,Down); {round to next lower major}
  while Y<=ClipYmax do begin
    if Counter=0 then
      ClipDraw(Location-SemiMajsize,Y,Location+SemiMajsize,Y)
    else
      ClipDraw(Location-SemiMinsize,Y,Location+SemiMinsize,Y);
    Counter:=(Counter+1) mod Major;
    Y:=Y+Spacing;
  end; {while}
end; {procedure "YaxisClip"}
$page$ {*****}
begin {program "SinClip"}
  graphics_init; {initialize the graphics system}
  display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
  if ErrorReturn=0 then begin {output device initialization OK?}
    set_aspect(511,389); {use the whole screen}
    CharWidth:=2*0.04; {char width: 4% of screen width}
    CharHeight:=2*0.08; {char height: 8% of screen height}
    set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install the character size}
    Text:='VOLTAGE VARIANCE'; {define the text to be labelled}
    for X:=-3 to 3 do begin {make "bold" label}
      move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2+X*0.002,0.9); {center label}
      stext(Text); {label the text}
    end;
    set_text_rot(0,1); {vertical labels}
    CharWidth:=2*0.025; {char width: 2.5% of screen width}
    CharHeight:=2*0.04; {char height: 4% of screen height}
    set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
    Text:='Voltage'; {define text to be labelled}
    move(-0.9,-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2); {start point of centered label}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
    Text:='Time (seconds)'; {define text to be labelled}
    set_text_rot(1,0); {horizontal labels}
    move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,-0.92); {start point of centered label}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
  end;
end;

```


SinLabel2

```

Program SinLabel2(output);
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;                                {get graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=      3;                                     {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=  0;                                     {device control; 0 for CRT}
var
  CharWidth:    real;                                  {width of character in world coords}
  CharHeight:   real;                                  {height of character in world coords}
  Text:         string[20];                            {temporary holding place for text}
  ErrorReturn:  integer;                               {variable for initialization outcome}
  X:            integer;
  Y:            real;
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint'$                            {function: y:=f(x) }
$PAGE$ {*****}
begin {body of program "SinLabel2"}
graphics_init; {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin {output device initialization OK?}
  set_aspect(511,389); {use the whole screen}
  CharWidth:=2*0.04; {char width: 4% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.08; {char height: 8% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:='VOLTAGE VARIANCE'; {define the text to be labelled}
  move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,0.9); {go to start point for centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  set_text_rot(0,1); {vertical labels}
  CharWidth:=2*0.025; {char width: 2.5% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.04; {char height: 4% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:='Voltage'; {define the text to be labelled}
  move(-0.9,-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  set_text_rot(1,0); {horizontal labels}
  Text:='Time (seconds)'; {define the text to be labelled}
  move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,-0.92); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  set_viewport(0.1,0.99,0.12,0.7); {define subset of screen}
  move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1); line(1,-1); line(-1,-1); {frame}
  set_window(0,100,0.16,0.18); {scale the window for the data}
  for X:=1 to 100 do begin {100 points total}
    Y:=DataPoint(X); {set a point from the function}
    if X=1 then move(X,Y) {move to the first point...}
    else line(X,Y); {...and draw to all the rest}
  end; {for X:=1 to 100}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term; {terminate the graphics package}
end. {program "SinLabel2"}

```

SinLabel3

```

Program SinLabel3(output);
import dgl_lib, dgl_inq;                               {set graphics routines}
const
  CrtAddr=      3;                                     {address of internal CRT}
  ControlWord=  0;                                     {device control; 0 for CRT}
var
  CharWidth:    real;                                 {width of character in world coords}
  CharHeight:   real;                                 {height of character in world coords}
  Text:         strings[20];                          {temporary holding place for text}
  ErrorReturn:  integer;                              {variable for initialization outcome}
  X:            integer;
  Y:           real;
#include 'DGLPRG:DataPoint'$                            {function: y=f(x) }
$page$ {*****}
begin {body of program "SinLabel3"}
graphics_init; {initialize the graphics system}
display_init(CrtAddr,ControlWord,ErrorReturn); {which output device?}
if ErrorReturn=0 then begin {output device initialization OK?}
  set_aspect(511,389); {use the whole screen}
  CharWidth:=2*0.04; {char width: 4% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.08; {char height: 8% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:='VOLTAGE VARIANCE'; {define the text to be labelled}
  for X:=-3 to 3 do begin {make "bold" label}
    move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2+X*0.002,0.9); {center label}
    stext(Text); {label the text}
  end; {for X}
  set_text_rot(0,1); {vertical labels}
  CharWidth:=2*0.025; {char width: 2.5% of screen width}
  CharHeight:=2*0.04; {char height: 4% of screen height}
  set_char_size(CharWidth,CharHeight); {install character size}
  Text:='Voltage'; {define the text to be labelled}
  move(-0.9,-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  set_text_rot(1,0); {horizontal labels}
  Text:='Time (seconds)'; {define the text to be labelled}
  move(-(strlen(Text)*CharWidth)/2,-0.92); {start point of centered label}
  stext(Text); {label the text}
  set_viewport(0.1,0.99,0.12,0.7); {define subset of screen}
  move(-1,-1); line(-1,1); line(1,1); line(1,-1); line(-1,-1); {frame}
  set_window(0,100,0.16,0.18); {scale the window for the data}
  for X:=1 to 100 do begin {100 points total}
    Y:=DataPoint(X); {set a point from the function}
    if X=1 then move(X,Y) {move to the first point...}
    else line(X,Y); {...and draw to all the rest}
  end; {for X:=1 to 100}
end; {ErrorReturn=0?}
graphics_term; {terminate the graphics package}
end. {Program "SinLabel3"}

```


Graphics Procedures

Graphics Control

CLEAR_DISPLAY	Clears the graphics display.
CONVERT_WTODMM	Converts from world coordinates to millimetres on the graphics display.
CONVERT_WTOLMM	Converts from world coordinates to millimetres on the locator surface.
DISPLAY_FINISH	Enables the output of the graphics library to be sent to a file.
DISPLAY_INIT	Enables a device as the logical graphics display.
DISPLAY_TERM	Disables the enabled graphics display device.
GRAPHICSERROR	Returns an integer error code and can be used to determine the cause of a graphics escape.
GRAPHICS_INIT	Initializes the graphics system.
GRAPHICS_TERM	Terminates the graphics system.
INPUT_ESC	Allows the user to obtain device dependent information from the graphics system.
INQ_COLOR_TABLE	Inquires the color modeling parameters for an index into the device-dependent color capability table.
INQ_PGN_TABLE	Inquires the polygon style attributes for an entry in the polygon style table.
INQ_WS	Allows the user to determine characteristics of the graphics system.
MAKE_PIC_CURRENT	Makes the picture current.
OUTPUT_ESC	Performs a device dependent escape function on the graphics display device.
SET_TIMING	Selects the timing mode for graphics output.

Graphics Output Primitives

GTEXT	Draws characters on the graphics display.
INT_LINE	Draws a line from the starting position to the world coordinate specified.
INT_MOVE	Sets the starting position to the world coordinate position specified.
INT_POLYGON	Displays a polygon-set starting and ending at the specified point adhering to the specified polygon style exactly as specified (i.e., device-independent results).
INT_POLYGON_DD	Displays a polygon-set starting and ending at the specified point adhering to the specified polygon style in a device-dependent fashion.
INT_POLYLINE	Draws a connected line sequence starting at the specified point.
LINE	Draws a line from the starting position to the world coordinate specified.

MARKER	Outputs a marker symbol at the starting position.
MOVE	Sets the starting position to the world coordinate specified.
POLYGON	Displays a polygon-set starting and ending at the specified point adhering to the specified polygon style exactly as specified (i.e., device-independent results).
POLYGON_DEV_DEP	Displays a polygon-set starting and ending at the specified point adhering to the specified polygon style in a device-dependent fashion.
POLYLINE	Draws a connected line sequence starting at the specified point.

Primitive Attributes

SET_CHAR_SIZE	Sets the character size attribute for graphical text.
SET_COLOR	Sets the color attribute for output primitives except for polygon interior fill.
SET_COLOR_MODEL	Chooses the color model for interpreting parameters in the color table.
SET_COLOR_TABLE	Redefines the color description of the specified entry in the color table. This color definition is used when the color index is selected via SET_COLOR.
SET_LINE_STYLE	Sets the line style attribute.
SET_LINE_WIDTH	Sets the line-width attribute. The number of line-widths possible is device dependent.
SET_PGN_COLOR	Selects the polygon interior color attribute for subsequently generated polygons by providing a selector for the color table.
SET_PGN_LS	Selects the polygon interior line-style attribute for subsequently generated polygons by providing a selector for the device dependent line-style table.
SET_PGN_STYLE	Selects an entry in the polygon style table, thus selecting the attributes for subsequently generated polygons.
SET_PGN_TABLE	Defines the attributes of an entry in the polygon style table.
SET_TEXT_ROT	Specifies the text direction.

Viewing Transformations

SET_ASPECT	Redefines the aspect ratio of the virtual coordinate system.
SET_DISPLAY_LIM	Redefines the logical display limits of the graphics display.
SET_VIEWPORT	Sets the boundaries of the viewport in the virtual coordinate system.
SET_WINDOW	Defines the boundaries of the window.

Graphics Input

AWAIT_LOCATOR	Waits until activation of the locator button and then reads from the enabled locator device.
LOCATOR_INIT	Enables the locator device for input.
LOCATOR_TERM	Disables the enabled locator device.
SAMPLE_LOCATOR	Samples the current locator device.
SET_ECHO_POS	Defines the locator echo position on the graphics display.
SET_LOCATOR_LIM	Redefines the logical locator limits of the graphics locator.

Graphics Procedure Reference

Appendix

B

The Pascal Programming Language was designed as a teaching language, and as such was intended to be machine independent. This attribute has its good and bad points. Being machine independent makes the language more easily transportable, but also ensures that it is difficult, if not impossible, to access any innovative hardware features provided by a specific computer system.

To allow easy access to the graphics and I/O features of your Pascal system, a set of procedures and functions are provided in the LIBRARY file on the SYSVOL: disc. This reference describes the syntax and semantics for the procedures and functions provided to access graphics.

The small block of text labelled IMPORT, immediately below the title of each entry, lists the module which must be declared in an IMPORT statement in order to access the feature. Modules which are needed by these imported modules, if any, are shown in the Module Dependency Table at the end of this reference.

Concerning HP-HIL

HP-HIL, which stands for Hewlett-Packard Human Interface Link, is a new interface for connecting peripherals. DGL supports HP-HIL absolute locators (e.g., the tablet and the Touchscreen), and relative locators (e.g., mouse and knob), through high-level procedures which already interface to other locators. In the procedures library section that follows, these application-level DGL procedures deal with HP-HIL:

- `await_locator`
- `input_esc`
- `locator_init`
- `locator_term`
- `output_esc`
- `sample_locator`
- `set_locator_lim`

These calls are the only support DGL interface to HP-HIL locators.

HP-HIL locators are supported by DGL only when attached to the *built-in* HP-HIL port — the one attached to the mainframe keyboard controller 8042. HP-HIL locators are not supported on pre-3.1 revisions of the Series 200/300 Pascal operating system. Mouse and knobs have additional support in Pascal 3.2, using the driver CONFIG:REL (ACCESS:REL on double sided) with LOCATOR_INIT selector 202.

From one to seven locators can be accessed on a single HP-HIL, but the supported configuration is only one active locator (or other HP-HIL “locator device”) at a time per system. HP-HIL devices are activated and deactivated by calling OUTPUT_ESC. If more than one locator is installed, scaling and limiting is performed on the largest machine-unit limits found on any tablet, or the first mouse or knob encountered.

DGL support of HP-HIL tablets requires the files HPHIL and DGL_ABS to have been executed or put in INITLIB before accessing the tablet. Both files are found on the CONFIG: (ACCESS: for double sided) disc of your Pascal Operating System. If either of these files have not been executed, an appropriate error value is returned from the routine LOCATOR_INIT.

Enhanced DGL support of HP-HIL mouse and knob locators also requires the files HPHIL and DGL_REL to have been executed or put in INITLIB before accessing the device. As stated above, both files are found on the CONFIG: (ACCESS: for double sided) disc of your Pascal Operating System. If either of these files have not been executed, an appropriate error value is returned from the routine LOCATOR_INIT.

CAUTION

It is inadvisable to connect or disconnect HP-HIL devices while the system is running, as this may hang the system. The *only* times where connecting and disconnecting HP-HIL devices is safe is when the system's power is off, or when the system's Command Interpreter prompt is being displayed *and* the time/date display (from the Version command) is not being displayed.

HP-HIL Touchscreen

Touchscreens are considered to be tablets, and are supported, and included in the limit of one "absolute locator device"; that is, a Touchscreen and an HP-HIL tablet simultaneously active on the one system is an unsupported configuration because there are two absolute locator devices.

If you have more than one absolute locator on the HP-HIL (e.g., both a Touchscreen and a tablet), `OUTPUT_ESC` with an opcode of 1090 gives you an opportunity to deactivate all but the desired device, and automatically rescale to it.

The Touchscreen is supported in essentially the same way as the tablet, with a few device-dependent differences:

AWAIT_LOCATOR

The "button press" used for the Touchscreen is the action of removing the finger from the screen, instead of the action of touching the screen. This was chosen in order to be compatible with BASIC.

Caveats

The Touchscreen's "input pixel" size is 7.5 millimeters in both the X and the Y direction, and the actual input resolution is 57×43 . It is quite a low-resolution digitizer in the classic sense of graphics. As a *selector* ("let's choose an object from the screen") it is not bad, but DGL provides no direct support for selecting or "picking" an object; you must construct a data base design and algorithms if you wish to use the Touchscreen for this purpose.

If there are two active absolute locators of vastly different resolutions on the HP-HIL, one of them is going to suffer. The device with less lines of resolution is only going to be able to access a small part of the world coordinate system, no matter what the user does. This is due to the design of DGL, which can only really have one locator active at a time.

All HP-HIL absolute locator devices are initially lumped together, as HP-HIL does not provide a really good way of specifying a particular device on the loop (e.g., specifying the Touchscreen instead of the tablet as the locator, or vice-versa). The result of all this is that we scale the DGL locator against the active device with the most lines of input resolution. Note that X and Y are scaled independently, so if there were both a tall, narrow locator and a short, wide locator on the loop, X scaling would come from the wide device, and Y from the tall device—again compatible with BASIC. This is the essential reason more than one active absolute locator is not supported on the HP-HIL with DGL.

Again, the `output_esc` procedure allows you to selectively disable HP-HIL devices, so you can avoid having more than one active absolute locator on the loop at any one time.

HP-HIL Relative Locator

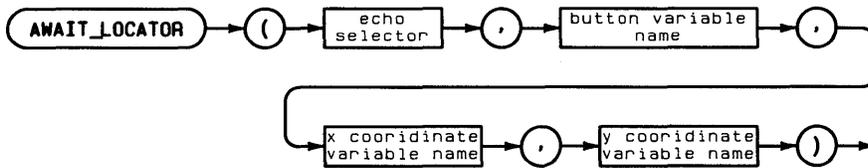
The discussion of opcode 1090 also applies to selection of mouse and knob locators. A new `LOCATOR_INIT` selector (202) has been added for HP-HIL “relative locator” devices. A new opcode (1091) supports control of termination of `AWAIT_LOCATOR` execution. As a default, both mouse buttons and keyboard keypresses can terminate `AWAIT_LOCATOR`. `OUTPUT_ESC` 1091 with `INTEGER Array[1]=0` “turns off” the keyboard.

AWAIT_LOCATOR

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** waits until activation of the locator button and then reads from the enabled locator device. Various echo methods can be selected.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
echo selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT
button variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	—
x coordinate name	Variable of TYPE REAL	—
y coordinate name	Variable of TYPE REAL	—

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE AWAIT_LOCATOR (      Echo   : INTEGER;
                             VAR Button : INTEGER;
                             VAR WX, WY : REAL   );
```

Semantics

AWAIT_LOCATOR waits until the locator button is activated and then returns the value of the selected button and the world coordinates of the locator. While the button press is awaited, the locator position can be tracked on the graphic display device. If an invalid button is pressed, the button value will be returned as 0; otherwise it will contain the value of the button pressed. On locators that use a keyboard for the button device (e.g., Model 226/236) the ordinal value of the key pressed is returned.

The **echo selector** selects the type of echo used. Possible values are:

- 0 - No echo.
- 1 - Echo on the locator device.
- 2 - Small cursor
- 3 - Full cross hair cursor
- 4 - Rubber band line
- 5 - Horizontal rubber band line
- 6 - Vertical rubber band line
- 7 - Snap horizontal / vertical rubber band line
- 8 - Rubber band box
- 9 and above - Device dependent echo on the locator device.

Locator input can be echoed on either a graphics display device or a locator device. The meaning of the various echoes on various devices used as locators and displays is discussed below.

The **button value** is the INTEGER value of the button used to terminate the locator input.

The **x and y position** represent the world coordinate point returned from the enabled locator.

AWAIT_LOCATOR implicitly makes the picture current before sending any commands to the locator device. The locator should be enabled (LOCATOR_INIT) before calling AWAIT_LOCATOR. The locator is terminated by the procedure LOCATOR_TERM.

Range and Limit Considerations

If the echo selector is out of range, the call to AWAIT_LOCATOR is completed using an echo selector of 1 and no error is reported. Echoes 2 through 8 require a graphics display to be enabled. If a display is not enabled, the call will be completed with echo 1 and GRAPHICSERROR will return 4.

If the point entered is outside of the current logical locator limits, the transformed point will still be returned in world coordinates.

Starting Position Effects

The location of the starting position is device dependent after this procedure with echo 0 or echo 1. For soft-copy devices it is typically unchanged; however, for plotters the pen position (starting position) will remain at the last position it was moved to by the operator. This is done to reduce pen movement back to the current position after each AWAIT_LOCATOR invocation.

Echo Types

Several different types of echoing can be performed. Some echoes are performed on the locator device while others use the graphics display device. When the echo selector is in the range 2 thru 8, the graphics display device will be used in echoing. All of the echoes on the graphics display start at a point on the graphics display called the locator echo position (see SET_ECHO_POS). For some of these echoes the locator echo position is also used as a fixed reference point. For example, the fixed end of the rubber band line will be at the locator echo position. The echoes available are:

2. Small cursor
Track the position of the locator on the graphics display device. The initial position of the cursor is at the locator echo position. The point returned is the locator position.
3. Full cross hair cursor
Designate the position of the locator on the graphics display device with two intersecting lines. One line is horizontal with a length equal to the width of the logical display surface. The other line is vertical with a length equal to the height of the logical display surface. The initial point of intersection is at the current locator echo position. The point returned is the locator position.
4. Rubber band line
Designate the endpoints of a line. One end is fixed at the locator echo position; the other is designated by the current locator position. The locator position can be told from the locator echo position by the presence of a small cursor (echo 2) at end representing the locator echo position. The point returned is the locator position.

5. Horizontal rubber band line

Designate a horizontal line. One endpoint of the line is fixed at the locator echo position; the other endpoint has the world Y-coordinate of the locator echo position and the world X-coordinate of the current locator position. The locator position can be distinguished from the locator echo position by the presence of a small cursor (echo 2) at end representing the locator echo position. The point returned will have the X-coordinate of the locator position and the Y-coordinate of the locator echo position.

6. Vertical rubber band line

Designate a vertical line. One endpoint of the line is fixed at the locator echo position; the other endpoint will have the world X-coordinate of the locator echo position and the world Y-coordinate of the current locator position. The locator position can be distinguished from the locator echo position by the presence of a small cursor (echo 2) at end representing the locator echo position. The point returned will have the X-coordinate of the locator echo position and the Y-coordinate of the locator position.

7. Snap horizontal/vertical rubber band line

Designate a horizontal/vertical line. One endpoint of the line is fixed at the locator echo position. The other endpoint will be either a horizontal (see echo 5) or vertical (see echo 6) rubber band line, depending on which one produces the longer line. If both lines are of equal length, a horizontal line will be used. The locator position can be distinguished from the locator echo position by the presence of a small cursor (echo 2) at end representing the locator echo position. The point returned is the endpoint of the echoed line.

8. Rubber band box

Designate a rectangle. The diagonal of the rectangle is the line from the locator echo position to the current locator position. The locator position can be distinguished from the locator echo position by the presence of a small cursor (echo 2) at end representing the locator echo position. The point returned will be the locator position.

Echo selectors of 1 and greater than or equal to 9 produce a device dependent echo on the locator device. Most locator devices support at least one form of echoing. Possible ones include beeping, displaying the value entered, or blinking a light each time a point is entered. If the specified echo is not supported on the enabled locator device, echo 1 will be used.

Echoes on Raster Displays

Raster displays support all the echoes described under "Echo Types."

Echoes on HPGL Plotters

Hard copy plotting devices (such as the 9872 or the 7580) cannot perform all the echoes listed above. The closest approximation possible is used for simulating them. The actual echo performed may also depend on whether the plotter is also being used as the locator. The echoes available on plotters are:

2. Small cursor

Initially the plotter's pen will be moved to the locator echo position. The pen will then reflect the current locator position (i.e., track) until the locator operation is terminated.

3. Full cross hair cursor

Simulated by ECHO #2.

4. Rubber band line

Simulated by ECHO #2.

5. Horizontal rubber band line
If the plotter is **not** the current locator device, the plotter's pen will initially be moved to the current locator echo position. The pen will then reflect the X coordinate of the current locator position and the Y coordinate of the current locator echo position.
If the plotter is used as the locator, this echo is simulated by echo 2 except the current locator X coordinate and the locator echo position Y coordinate are returned.
6. Vertical rubber band line
If the plotter is **not** the current locator device, the plotter's pen position will initially be moved to the current locator echo position. The pen will then reflect the X coordinate of the current locator echo position and the Y coordinate of the current locator position.
If the plotter is used as the locator, this echo is simulated by echo 2 except the locator echo position X coordinate and the current locator Y coordinate are returned.
7. Snap horizontal/vertical rubber band line
Designate a horizontal/vertical line. One endpoint of the line is fixed at the locator echo position. The other endpoint will be either a horizontal (see echo 5) or vertical (see echo 6) rubber band line, depending on which one produces the longer line. If both lines are of equal length, a horizontal line will be used. The locator position can be distinguished from the locator echo position by the presence of a small cursor (echo 2) at end representing the locator echo position. The point returned is the endpoint of the echoed line.
8. Rubber band box
Simulated by echo 2. The point returned will be the locator position.

Absolute Locators (Graphics Tablet or Plotter)

For graphics tablets, the operator moves the stylus to the desired position and depresses it. The button value returned is always one. For an echo selector of 1 the tablet beeper is sounded when the stylus is depressed. An echo selector greater than or equal to 9 uses the same echo as an echo selector of 1. (Some HPGL plotters have the ability of using the physical pen as a locator. See the subsequent section called "HPGL Plotters as Absolute Locators" for details.)

Relative Locators (Knob or Mouse) – LOCATOR_INIT Selector 2

When the knob is specified as the locator (LOCATOR_INIT with device selector of 2) the keyboard keys have the following meanings:

Arrow keys	Move the cursor in the direction indicated.
Knob	Move the cursor right and left.
Knob with shift key pressed	Move the cursor up and down.
Mouse	Move the cursor in the direction of mouse movement (mouse left = cursor left; mouse forward = cursor up; etc.).
Number of keys 1 → 9	Change the distance the cursor is moved per arrow keypress, knob rotation, or mouse movement. 1 provides the least movement and 9 provides the most.

All other keys act as the locator buttons. The ordinal value of the locator button (key) struck is returned in BUTTON.

For an echo selector of 1 the position of the locator is indicated by a small crosshair cursor on the graphics display.

The initial position of the cursor is located at the current starting position of the graphics display. This is the point obtained by the last invocation of `await_locator`, or the lower left hand corner of the locator limits if no point has been received since `LOCATOR_INIT` was executed. For back to back `AWAIT_LOCATOR` calls this would mean the second `AWAIT_LOCATOR` would begin where the first `AWAIT_LOCATOR` left the cursor. Echo selectors greater than or equal to 9 have the same effect as an echo selector of 1.

Locator input can be echoed on either a graphics display device or a locator device. Echoes 2 thru 8 are explained above under "Echoes on Raster Displays" and "Echoes on HPGL Plotters". For an echo selector of 0 or 1 the pen tracks the locator position. Echo selectors greater than or equal to 9 have the same effect as an echo selector of 1.

Relative Locators (Knob or Mouse) – LOCATOR_INIT selector 202

When `LOCATOR_INIT` is performed with selector 202, the keyboard keys are initially enabled to terminate subsequent `AWAIT_LOCATOR` calls. The arrow keys do not have any special meaning, and pressing them will not move the cursor, but will instead terminate `AWAIT_LOCATOR`. Also, number keys are not special. Mouse and knob devices work as for `LOCATOR_INIT` with selector 2, but the cursor is much more responsive and cursor motions have a "crisp" feel.

Echo selectors are the same as for the HP-HIL tablets. The mouse or knob "remembers" where it was from one `AWAIT_LOCATOR` call to another. The cursor is initially displayed in this last position unless the device was moved in the intervening time. `SAMPLE_LOCATOR` makes sense with this driver, as DGL is "watching" the device position continuously from the time `LOCATOR_INIT` is executed, until `LOCATOR_TERM` occurs. The position can be changed outside of `AWAIT_LOCATOR` calls, which is not true using `LOCATOR_INIT` with selector 2.

Buttons on the device are defined as:

First button	128
Second button	130
Third button	132

For keyboard keys, the button has the same value as the ordinal of the key would return when reading a character from input.

We recommend using this new capability when you are using a mouse or knob with DGL. This capability is available on the HP 98203C HP-HIL keyboard knob. However, it is not supported on the HP 98203A and HP 98203B (non-HP-HIL keyboard) knobs.

HPGL Plotters as Absolute Locators

The `AWAIT_LOCATOR` function enables a digitizing mode in the device. For HPGL plotters the operator then positions the pen to the desired position with the cursor buttons or joy stick and then presses the enter key. The pen state (0 for 'up', and 1 for 'down') is returned in the button parameter.

Following locator input (echo on the locator device), the pen position will remain at the last position it was moved to by the operator. This means that the starting position for the next graphics primitive will be wherever the pen was left.

Locator input can be echoed on either a graphics display device or a locator device. Echoes 2 thru 8 are explained above under “Echoes on Raster Displays” and “Echoes on HPGL Plotters”. For an echo selector of 0 or 1 the pen tracks the locator position. Echo selectors greater than or equal to 9 have the same effect as an echo selector of 1.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized and the locator device must be enabled or the call will be ignored. If the echo selector is between 1 and 9 and the graphics display is not enabled, the call will be completed with an echo selector of 1. If any of the preceding errors are encountered, an ESCAPE (-27) is generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

HP-HIL Absolute Locator Semantics

`ECHO` defines an echoing mechanism for feedback to the user. Echo has the same meaning as when applied to a HP 9111A (HP-IB) data tablet.

`Button` is an integer returned to indicate which key or “button” on the digitizer completed the digitize operation. `Button` will always be returned as 128 on HP-HIL tablets which have only a stylus; if the tablet has buttons on the cursor, or a keypad, the value returned will be the HP-HIL keycode for the button pressed:

First button (or stylus)	128
Second button	130
Third button	132
Fourth button	134

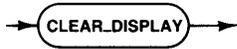
`Wx` and `Wy` are the world coordinate real values returned by the locator when the digitizing is completed. `Await_locator` does not return to the calling program until the digitizing operation has been completed by the user; the completion of the digitizing is considered a “button press” and is device-dependent. For the HP-HIL tablet, the digitizing action is to close the switch or button on the stylus or “puck,” while in “proximity range” of the platen. If multiple tablets are active on the HP-HIL, there is the potential for confusion as to whether proximity is in range or out of range; DGL does not reliably resolve this situation, and multiple tablets presents the possibility of digitizing spurious data. See the section on “`output_esc`” for information on disabling HP-HIL absolute locators.

CLEAR_DISPLAY

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** clears the graphics display.

Syntax



Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE CLEAR_DISPLAY;
```

Semantics

The graphics system provides the capability to clear the graphics display of all output primitives at any time in an application program. This procedure has different meaning for different graphics display devices. CLEAR_DISPLAY makes the picture current. The starting position is not effected by this procedure.

HPGL Plotters

Plotters with page advance will be sent a command to advance the paper. On devices such as fixed page plotters, a call to CLEAR_DISPLAY simply makes the picture current.

Raster Displays

On CRT displays, this procedure clears the display to the background color. This means slightly different things on different displays:

Monochrome	If color table location 0 is 0 then the display is cleared to black. Otherwise, the display is cleared to white.
HP 98627A	The display is cleared to the non-dithered color closest to the color represented specified by color table location 0. (e.g., If color table location 0 was Red = .5, Green = .2, Blue = 0, the display would be cleared to red.)
Color bit-map	The display is cleared to the color represented by color table location 0.

Error conditions:

The graphics system must be initialized and a display must be enabled or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and the GRAPHICSEERROR function will return a non-zero value.

CONVERT_WTODMM

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** converts from world coordinates to millimetres on the graphics display.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
world x	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
world y	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
metric x name	Variable of TYPE REAL	—
metric y name	Variable of TYPE REAL	—

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE CONVERT_WTODMM (      WX, WY   : REAL ;
                              VAR MmX, MmY : REAL );
  
```

Semantics

This procedure returns a coordinate pair (**metric X, metric Y**) representing the **world X** and **Y** coordinates. The metric X and Y values are the number of millimetres along the X and Y axis from the supplied world coordinate point to the origin of the metric coordinate system on the device. The location of this origin is device dependent.

For raster devices, the metric origin is the lower-left dot. For HPGL plotters, it is the lower-left corner of pen movement.

Since the origin of the world coordinate system need not correspond to the origin of the physical graphics display, converting the point (0.0,0.0) in the world coordinate system may not result in the value (0.0,0.0) offset from the physical display device's origin.

CONVERT_WTODMM will take any world coordinate point, inside or outside the current window, and convert it to a point offset from the physical display device's origin.

Error conditions:

The graphics system must be initialized and the graphics display must be enabled or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

CONVERT_WTOLMM

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** converts from world coordinates to millimetres on the locator surface.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
world x	expression of TYPE REAL	—
world y	expression of TYPE REAL	—
metric x name	variable of TYPE REAL	—
metric y name	variable of TYPE REAL	—

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE CONVERT_WTOLMM (      WX, WY   : REAL;
                               VAR MmX, MmY : REAL );
  
```

Semantics

This procedure returns a coordinate pair (**metric x, metric y**) representing the **world X** and **Y** coordinates. The metric x and y values are the number of millimetres along the X and Y axis from the supplied world coordinate point to the origin of the metric coordinate system on the device. The location of this origin is device dependent.

For raster devices, the metric origin is the lower-left dot. For HPGL plotters, it is the lower-left corner of pen movement.

Since the origin of the world coordinate system need not correspond to the origin of the physical locator device, converting the point (0.0,0.0) in the world coordinate system does not necessarily result in the value (0.0,0.0) offset from the physical locator device's origin.

CONVERT_WTOLMM will take any world coordinate point, inside or outside the current window, and convert it to a point offset from the physical locator origin.

Error Conditions

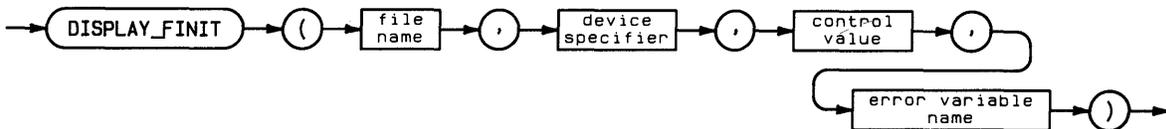
The graphics system must be initialized, the graphics device must be enabled, and the locator must be initialized or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

DISPLAY_FINISH

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This procedure enables the output of the graphics library to be sent to a file.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
file name	Expression of TYPE Gstring255; can be a STRING of any length up to 255 characters.	Must be a valid file name (see "The File System")	—
device specifier	Expression of TYPE Gstring255; can be a STRING of any length up to 255 characters. First six characters are significant.	9872A, 9872B, 9872C, 9872S, 9872T, 7440A, 7470A, 7475A, 7550A, 7570, 7570A, 7575, 7575A, 7576, 7576A, 7580, 7580A, 7580B, 7585, 7585A, 7585B, 7586, 7586B, 7595, 7595A, 7596, and 7596A	—
control value	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT	see below
error variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	—	—

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE DISPLAY_FINISH (
    File_Name : Gstring255,
    Device_Name : Gstring255,
    Control : INTEGER,
    VAR Ierr : INTEGER );
  
```

Semantics

DISPLAY_FINISH allows output from the graphics library to be sent to a file. This file can then be sent a graphics display device by use of the operating system's file system (e.g. FILER, or SRM spooler). The contents of the file are device dependent, and MUST be sent only to devices of the type indicated in device name when the file was created.

The **file name** specifies the name of the file to send device dependent commands to.

The **device specifier** tells the graphics system the type of device that the file will be sent to. Only some types of devices may use this command. For example raster devices (i.e. the internal display) may not use this command. For the currently supported devices, see the range restrictions under Syntax, above.

The **control value** is used to control characteristics of the graphics display device and should be set according to the display device the file is intended for. See "Control Values," below, for the meaning of the control value.

The **error variable name** will contain a value indicating whether the graphics display device was successfully initialized.

Value	Meaning
0	The graphics display device was successfully initialized.
1	The graphics display device (indicated by <i>device name</i>) is not supported by the graphics library.
2	Unable to open the file specified. File error is returned in ESCAPECODE and IORESULT (see the <i>Pascal Workstation System</i> manual).

DISPLAY_FINIT enables a file as the logical graphics display. The file can be of any type, although the current spooling mechanisms can only handle TEXT and ASCII files. The file need not exist before this procedure is called. If this procedure is successful, the file will be closed with 'LOCK' when DISPLAY_TERM is executed.

This procedure initializes and enables the graphics display for graphics output. Before the device is initialized, the device status is 0, the device address is 0, and the device name is the default name. The default name is ' ' (six ASCII blanks).

When the device is enabled the device status is set to 1 (enabled) and the internal device specifier used by the graphics library is set to the file name provided by the user. The device name is set to the supplied device name. This information is available by calling INQ_WS with operation selectors of 11050 and 12050.

Initialization includes the following operations:

- The graphics display surface is cleared (e.g., CRT erased, plotter page advanced) if Bit 7 of CONTROL is not set.
- The starting position is set to a device dependent location.
- The logical display limits are set to the default limits for the device.
- The aspect ratio of the virtual coordinate system is applied to the logical display limits to define the limits of the virtual coordinate system.
- All primitive attributes are set to the default values.
- The locator echo position is set to its default value.

Only one graphics output device can be initialized at a time. If a graphics display device is currently enabled, the enabled device will be terminated (via DISPLAY_TERM) and the call will continue.

A call to MOVE or INT_MOVE should be made after this call to update the starting position and in so doing, place the physical pen or beam at a known location on the graphics display device.

The Control Value

The control value is used to control characteristics of the graphics display device. Bits should be set according to the following bit map. All unused bits should be set to 0.

0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

Bits	Meaning
0 thru 6	Currently unused. Should be set to 0.
7	If this bit is set (BIT 7 = 1), it will inhibit clearing of the graphics display as part of the DISPLAY_FINISH procedure. Some devices have the ability to not clear the graphics display, or not to perform a page advance during device initialization. This bit is ignored on devices that do not support the feature.
8 thru 15	Not used by DISPLAY_FINISH.

HPGL Plotter Initialization

When an HPGL device is initialized the following device dependent actions are performed, in addition to the general initialization process:

- Pen velocity, force, and acceleration are set to the default for that device.
- ASCII character set is set to 'ANSI ASCII'.
- Paper cutter is enabled (HP 9872S / HP 9872T).
- Advance page option is enabled (HP 9872S / HP 9872T / HP 7550A).
- Paper is advanced one full page (HP 9872S / HP 9872T / HP 7550A) (unless DISPLAY_INIT CONTROL bit 7 is set).
- The automatic pen options are set (HP 7580 / HP 7585 / HP 7586B / HP 7550A).

The default initial dimensions for the HPGL plotters supported by the graphics library are:

Plotter	Wide mm	High mm	Wide points	High points	Aspect	Resolution points/mm
7440A	272.5	191.25	10900	7650	.7018	40.0
7470	257.5	191.25	10300	7650	.7427	40.0
7475	416	259.125	16640	10365	.6229	40.0
7550A/B	411.25	254.25	16450	10170	.6182	40.0
7570A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7575A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7576A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7580	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7585	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7586	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7595A/B	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7596A/B	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7599A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
9872	400	285	16000	11400	.7125	40.0

Any device not in this list is **not** supported. The 7550B, 7595B, and 7599A plotters are only supported in 7550A, 7595A, or 7596A emulation mode.

Any device not in this list is **not** supported.

The default logical display surface is set equal to the maximum physical limits of the device. The view-surface is always justified in the lower left corner of the current logical display surface (corner nearest the turret for the HP 7580 and HP 7585 plotters). The physical origin of the graphics display is at the lower left boundary of pen movement.

Error Conditions

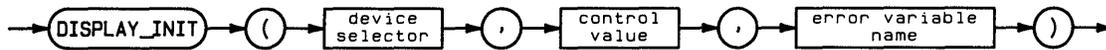
If the graphics system is not initialized, the call is ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) is generated, and GRAPHICSError returns a non-zero value.

DISPLAY_INIT

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** enables a device as the logical graphics display.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
device selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT	
control value	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT	—
error variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	—	—

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE DISPLAY_INIT (      Dev_Adr : INTEGER ,
                             Control  : INTEGER ,
                             VAR IErr  : INTEGER );
  
```

Semantics

DISPLAY_INIT enables a device as the logical graphics display. It initializes and enables the graphics display device for graphics output.

Before the device is initialized the device status is 0, the device address is 0, and the device name is the default name. The default name is ' ' (six ASCII blanks).

When the device is enabled the device status is set to 1 (enabled) and the internal device specifier used by the graphics library is set equal to the device selector provided by the user. The device name is set to the device being used. This information is available by calling INQ_WS with operation selectors 11050 and 12050.

The **device selector** specifies the physical address of the graphics output device.

device selector = 3: Primary internal graphics CRT (i.e., the display designated as the console—where the command line is displayed).

device selector = 6: Secondary internal graphics CRT, if present (i.e., any display other than the console that does not require a select code and/or bus address to access it).

8 ≤ device selector ≤ 31: Interface card select code (HP 98627A default = 28).

700 ≤ device selector ≤ 3199: Composite HP-IB/device selector.

The **control value** is used to control device dependent characteristics of the graphics display device.

B-18 Graphics Procedure Reference

The **error variable name** will contain a value indicating whether the graphics display device was successfully initialized.

Value	Meaning
0	The graphics display device was successfully initialized.
2	Unrecognized device specified. Unable to communicate with a device at the specified address, non-existent interface card or non-graphics system supported interface card.

If an error is encountered, the call will be ignored.

The graphics library attempts to directly identify the type of device by using its device selector in some way. The meanings for device address are listed above.

At the time that the graphics library is initialized, all devices which are to be used must be connected, powered on, ready, and accessible via the supplied device selector. Invalid device selectors or unresponsive devices result in that device not being initialized and an error being returned.

Only one graphics output device maybe initialized at a time. If a graphics display device is currently enabled, the enabled device will be terminated (via DISPLAY_TERM) and the call will continue.

A call to MOVE or INT_MOVE should be made after this call to update the starting position and in so doing, place the physical pen or beam at a known location on the graphics display device.

The Control Value

Used to control characteristics of the graphics display device. Bits should be set according to the following bit map. All unused bits should be set to 0.

0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

Bits	Meaning
0 thru 6	Currently unused. Should be set to 0.
7	If this bit is set (BIT 7 = 1), it will inhibit clearing of the graphics display as part of the DISPLAY_INIT procedure. Some devices have the ability to not clear the graphics display, or not to perform a page advance during device initialization. This bit is ignored on devices that do not support the feature.
8 thru 15	Bits 8 through 15 are used by some devices to control device dependent features of those devices.

Device Dependent Values

Bits 8, 9, and 10 of DISPLAY_INIT's CONTROL parameter determine the type of display for the HP 98627A card and the default dimensions assumed by the graphics system.

CONTROL	Bits 10 9 8 Description		
256	001	US STD	(512 × 390, 60 hz refresh)
512	010	EURO STD	(512 × 390, 50 hz refresh)
768	011	US TV	(512 × 474, 15.75 Khz horizontal refresh, interlaced)
1024	100	EURO TV	(512 × 512, 50 hz vertical refresh, interlaced)
1280	101	HI RES	(512 × 512, 60 hz)
1536	110	Internal	(HP) use only

Out of range values are treated as if CONTROL = 256.

When using a Model 237 computer, HP 98700A display, or Series 300 display that is designated the console, bit 8 of DISPLAY_INIT's CONTROL parameter determines if the entire screen will be used for graphics. A value of 256 (i.e., bit 8 = 1) turns off the echo of the typeahead buffer, and allocates the entire screen for graphics. The typeahead buffer echo is re-enabled by the DISPLAY_TERM procedure call. If bit 8 is set and the program aborts before DISPLAY_TERM is called, you must reboot to get the typeahead buffer echo back.

General Initialization Operations

Initialization includes the following operations:

- The graphics display surface is cleared (e.g., CRT erased, plotter page advanced) unless Bit 7 of the control value is set.
- The starting position is set to a device dependent location. (This is undefined for HPGL plotters.)
- The logical display limits are set to the default limits for the device.
- The aspect ratio of the virtual coordinate system is applied to the logical display limits to define the limits of the virtual coordinate system.
- All primitive attributes are set to the default values.
- The locator echo position is set to its default value.
- If the display and locator are the same physical device, the logical locator limits are set to the limits of the view surface.

Raster Display Initialization

When a raster display is initialized the following device dependent actions are performed, in addition to the general initialization process:

- The starting position is in the lower left corner of the display.
- Graphics memory is cleared if bit 7 of the control word is 0.
- Initialize the color table to default values. If the device has retroactive color definition (Model 236 color computer, HP 98543A, HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98550A, and HP 98700A) and the color table has been changed from the default colors, the colors of an image will change even if bit 7 is set to 1.
- The graphics display is turned on.
- The view surface is centered within the logical display limits.
- The drawing mode (see OUTPUT_ESC) is set to dominate.
- The DISPLAY_INIT CONTROL parameter is used as specified above.

The following table describes the internal raster display for Series 200/300 computer:

Computer	Wide mm	High mm	Wide points	High points	Memory Planes	Color Map
Model 216	160	120	400	300	1	no
Model 217	230	175	512	390	1	no
Model 220 (HP 82913A)	210	158	400	300	1	no
Model 220 (HP 82912A)	152	114	400	300	1	no
Model 226	120	88	400	300	1	no
Model 236	210	160	512	390	1	no
Model 236 Color	217	163	512	390	4	yes
Model 237	312	234	1024	768	1	no
98700	360	270	1024	768	4/8	yes
98542A	210	164	512	400	1	no
98543A	210	164	512	400	4	yes
98544A	312	234	1024	768	1	no
98545A	360	270	1024	768	4	yes
98547A	360	270	1024	768	6	yes
98548A	343	274	1280	1024	1	no
98549A	360	270	1024	768	6	yes
98550A	343	274	1280	1024	8	yes
362/382 VGA	290	210	640	480	8	yes
382 Medium Res	300	225	1024	768	8	yes
382 High Res	340	272	1280	1024	8	yes

The HP 98627A is a 3 plane non-color mapped color interface card which connects to an external RGB monitor. Bits 8,9, and 10 of DISPLAY_INIT's CONTROL parameter determine the type of display for the HP 98627A card and the default dimensions assumed by the graphics system.

CONTROL	Bits			
	10	9	8	Description
256	001			US STD (512 x 390, 60 hz refresh)
512	010			EURO STD (512 x 390, 50 hz refresh)
768	011			US TV (512 x 474, 15.75 Khz horizontal refresh, interlaced)
1024	100			EURO TV (512 x 512, 50 hz vertical refresh, interlaced)
1280	101			HI RES (512 x 512, 60 hz)
1536	110			Internal (HP) use only

Out of range values are treated as if CONTROL = 256.

The physical size of the HP 98627A display (needed by the SET_DISPLAY_LIM procedure) may be given to the graphics system by an escape function (OPCODE = 250). The physical limits assumed until the escape function is given are:

CONTROL =	256	153.3mm wide and 116.7mm high.
	512	153.3mm wide and 116.7mm high.
	768	153.3mm wide and 142.2mm high.
	1280	153.3mm wide and 153.3mm high.

The default logical display surface of the graphics display device is the maximum physical limits of the screen. The physical origin is the lower left corner of the display.

The view surface is always centered within the current logical display surface.

HPGL Plotter Initialization

When an HPGL device is initialized the following device dependent actions are performed, in addition to the general initialization process:

- Pen velocity, force, and acceleration are set to the default for that device.
- ASCII character set is set to 'ANSI ASCII'.
- Paper cutter is enabled (HP 9872S / HP 9872T).
- Advance page option is enabled (HP 7550A / HP 7586B / HP 7596A / HP 9872S / HP 9872T).
- Paper is advanced one full page (HP 7550A / HP 7586B / HP 7596A / HP 9872S / HP 9872T) (unless DISPLAY_INIT CONTROL bit 7 is set).
- The automatic pen options are set (HP 7570A / HP 7575A / HP 7576A / HP 7580A / HP 7585 / HP 7595A).

The default initial dimensions for the HPGL plotters supported by the graphics library are:

Plotter	Wide mm	High mm	Wide points	High points	Aspect	Resolution points/mm
7440A	272.5	191.25	10900	7650	.7018	40.0
7470	257.5	191.25	10300	7650	.7427	40.0
7475	416	259.125	16640	10365	.6229	40.0
7550A/B	411.25	254.25	16450	10170	.6182	40.0
7570A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7575A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7576A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7580	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7585	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7586	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7595A/B	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7596A/B	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7599A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
9872	400	285	16000	11400	.7125	40.0

The 7550B, 7595B, 7596A, and 7599A plotters are only supported in 7550A, 7595A, or 7596A emulation mode.

The maximum physical limits of the graphics display for an HPGL device not listed above are determined by the default settings of P1 and P2. The default settings of P1 and P2 are the values they have after an HPGL 'IN' command. Refer to the specific device manual for additional details.

The default logical display surface is set equal to the area defined by P1 and P2 at the time DISPLAY_INIT is invoked. The view surface is always justified in the lower-left corner of the current logical display surface (corner nearest the turret for the HP 7570A, HP 7575A, HP 7576A, HP 7580, HP 7585, HP 7586, HP 7595A, and HP 7596A plotters). The physical origin of the graphics display is at the lower-left boundary of pen movement.

Note

If the paper is changed in an HP 7570A, HP 7575A, HP 7576A, HP 7580, HP 7585, HP 7586, HP 7595A/B, HP 7596A/B, or HP 7599A plotter while the graphics display is initialized, it should be the same size of paper that was in the plotter when DISPLAY_INIT was called. If a different size of paper is required, the device should be terminated (DISPLAY_TERM) and re-initialized after the new paper has been placed in the plotter.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

DISPLAY_TERM

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** disables the enabled graphics display device.

Syntax



Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE DISPLAY_TERM;
```

Semantics

DISPLAY_TERM terminates the device enabled as the graphics display. DISPLAY_TERM completes all remaining display operations and disables the logical graphics display. It makes the picture current and releases all resources being used by the device. The device name is set to the default name ' ' (six ASCII blanks), the device status is set to 0 (not enabled) and the device address is set to 0. DISPLAY_TERM does not clear the graphics display.

The graphics display device should be disabled before the termination of the application program. DISPLAY_TERM is the complementary routine to DISPLAY_INIT.

Error Conditions

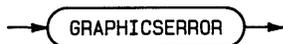
The graphics system should be initialized and the display should be enabled or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

GRAPHICSEERROR

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **function** returns an integer error code and can be used to determine the cause of a graphics escape.

Syntax



Function Heading

```
FUNCTION GRAPHICSEERROR: INTEGER;
```

Semantics

When an error occurs that uses the escape function, escape-code -27 is used. After the escape is trapped and it has been determined that the graphics library is the source of the error (the escape code equal to -27), GRAPHICSEERROR can be used to determine the cause of the error. The function returns the value of the last error generated and then clears the value of the return error. A user who is trapping errors and wishes to keep the value of the error must save it in some variable.

The following list of returned values and the error they represent can be used to interpret the value returned by GRAPHICSEERROR.

Value	Meaning
0	No errors since the last call to GRAPHICSEERROR or since the last call to GRAPHICS_INIT.
1	The graphics system is not initialized. ACTION: Call ignored.
2	The graphics display is not enabled. ACTION: Call ignored.
3	The locator device is not enabled. ACTION: Call ignored.
4	Echo value requires a graphics display to be enabled. ACTION: Call completes with echo value = 1.
5	The graphics system is already initialized. ACTION: Call ignored.
6	Illegal aspect ratio specified. X-SIZE and Y-SIZE must be greater than 0. ACTION: Call ignored.
7	Illegal parameters specified. ACTION: Call ignored.
8	The parameters specified are outside the physical display limits. ACTION: Call ignored.
9	The parameters specified are outside the limits of the window. ACTION: Call ignored.
10	The logical locator and the logical display are the same physical device. The logical locator limits cannot be defined explicitly, they must correspond to the logical view surface limits. ACTION: Call ignored.

- 11 | The parameters specified are outside the current virtual coordinate system boundary. ACTION: Call ignored.
- 13 | The parameters specified are outside the physical locator limits. ACTION: Call ignored.
- 14 | Color table contents cannot be inquired or changed. ACTION: Call ignored.
- 18 | The number of points specified for a polygon or polyline operation is less than or equal to zero. ACTION: Call ignored.

GRAPHICS_INIT

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** initializes the graphics system.

Syntax



Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE GRAPHICS_INIT;
```

Semantics

GRAPHICS_INIT initializes the graphics system. It must be the first graphics system call made by the application program. Any procedure call other than GRAPHICS_INIT will be ignored. GRAPHICS_INIT performs the following operations:

- Get dynamic storage space for the graphics library.
- Sets the aspect ratio to 1.
- Sets the virtual coordinate and viewport limits to range from 0 to 1.0 in the X and Y directions.
- Sets the world coordinate limits to range from -1.0 to 1.0 in the X and Y directions.
- Sets the starting position to $(0.0,0.0)$ in world coordinate system units.
- Sets all attributes equal to their default values.

GRAPHICS_INIT does not enable any logical devices. The graphics system is terminated with a call to GRAPHICS_TERM. Calling GRAPHICS_INIT while the graphics system is initialized will result in an implicit call to GRAPHICS_TERM, before the system is reinitialized.

GRAPHICS_TERM

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** terminates the graphics system.

Syntax

→ GRAPHICS_TERM →

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE GRAPHICS_TERM;
```

Semantics

GRAPHICS_TERM terminates the graphics system. Termination includes terminating both the graphics display and the locator devices. GRAPHICS_TERM does not clear the graphics display.

GRAPHICS_TERM should be called as the last graphics system call in the application program.

GRAPHICS_TERM releases dynamic memory allocated during GRAPHICS_INIT. In order that this memory actually be returned the compiler option \$HEAP_DISPOSE ON\$ must be used.

Error Conditions

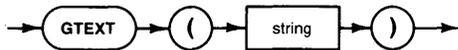
If the graphics system is not initialized, the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

GTEXT

IMPORT: dgl_types
dgl_lib

This **procedure** draws characters on the graphics display.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
string	Expression of TYPE <i>Gstring255</i> . Can be a string of any length up to 255 characters	length ≤ 255 characters

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE GTEXT ( String : Gstring255 );
```

Semantics

The **string** contains the characters to be output.

GTEXT produces characters on the graphics display. A series of vectors representing the characters in the string is produced by the graphics system.

When the text string is output, the starting position will represent the lower left-hand corner of the first character in STRING. Text is normally output from left to right and is printed vertically with no slant.

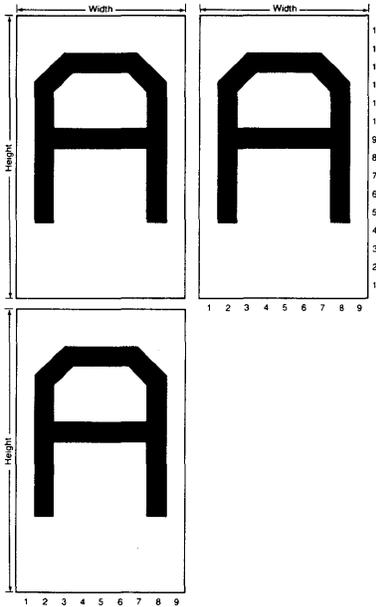
After completion of this call, the starting position is left in a device dependent location such that successive calls to GTEXT will produce a continuous line of text (i.e., GTEXT('H') ; GTEXT('I') ; is equivalent to GTEXT('HI') ;).

The attributes of color, line-style, line-width, text rotation, and character size apply to text primitives. However, the text will appear with these attributes only if the graphics device is capable of applying them to text.

Characters

The character sets provided by the graphics system are the same ones used by the CRT in alpha mode, namely the standard character set plus either the Roman extension character set (for all non-Katakana machines) or the Katakana character set (for Katakana machines).

Characters are defined within a cell that has an aspect ratio of 9/15. The character cells are adjacent, both horizontally and vertically, as shown here.



Control Codes

The following control codes are supported by GTEXT:

Control Character	Program Access	Keyboard Access	Action
backspace	CHR(8)	CTRL-H	Move one character cell to the left along the text direction vector (defined by SET_CHAR_SIZE).
linefeed	CHR(10)	CTRL-J	Move down the height of one character cell.
carriage return	CHR(13)	CTRL-M	Move back the length of the text just completed.

Any other control characters are ignored.

The current position is maintained to the resolution of the display device. A text size less-than-or-equal-to the resolution of the display device will result in all the characters in a GTEXT call, or a series of GTEXT calls, being written to the same point on the device.

The current position returned by an INQ_WS is **not** updated by calls to GTEXT. If you want to know the current position after a GTEXT, you must do a MOVE, or some other call which updates the current position.

Error Conditions

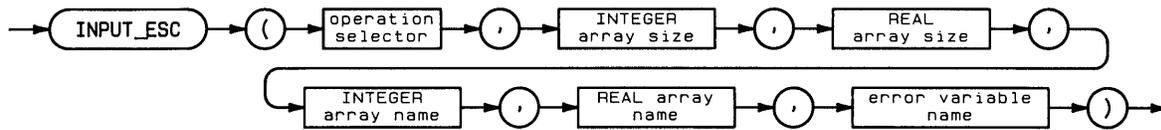
If the graphics system is not initialized or a display is not enabled, the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

INPUT_ESC

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** allows the user to obtain device dependent information from the graphics system.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
operation selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT	-
INTEGER array size	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT	>0
REAL array size	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT	>0
INTEGER array name	Variable of TYPE ANYVAR should be array of INTEGERS	-	-
REAL array name	Variable of TYPE ANYVAR should be array of REAL	-	-
error variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	-	-

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE INPUT_ESC (
    Opcode : INTEGER;
    Isize : INTEGER;
    Rsize : INTEGER;
    ANYVAR Ilist : Gint_list;
    ANYVAR Rlist : Greal_list;
    VAR Ierr : INTEGER );
    
```

Semantics

The **operation selector** determines the device dependent inquiry escape function being invoked.

The **INTEGER array size** is the number of INTEGER parameters to be returned in the INTEGER array by the escape function. The correct value for this can be found in the thousand's place of the operation selector (see the table below).

The **REAL array size** is the number of REAL parameters to be returned in the REAL array by the escape function. The correct value for this can be found in the hundred's place of the operation selector (see the table below).

The **INTEGER array** is the array in which zero or more INTEGER parameters are returned by the escape function.

The **REAL array** is the array in which zero or more REAL parameters are returned by the escape function.

The **error variable** will contain a code indicating whether the input escape function was performed.

Value	Meaning
0	Inquiry escape function successfully completed.
1	Inquiry operation (operation selector) not supported by the graphics display or locator device.
2	INTEGER array size is not equal to the number of INTEGER parameters to be returned.
3	REAL array size is not equal to the number of REAL parameters to be returned.
4	Illegal parameters specified.

If the error variable contains a non-zero value, the call has been ignored.

INPUT_ESC allows application programs to access special device features on a graphics display device. The type of information returned from the graphics display device is determined by the value of operation selector. Possible inquiry escape functions may return the status or the options supported by a particular graphics display device.

Inquiry escape functions only apply to the graphics display device. INPUT_ESC implicitly makes the picture current before the escape function is performed.

HPGL Plotter Operation Selectors

The following inquiry is supported.

Operation Selector	Meaning
2050	<p>Inquire about current turret.</p> <p>INTEGER array [1] = -1 >> Turret mounted, but its type is unknown</p> <p>INTEGER array [1] = 0 >> No turret mounted</p> <p>INTEGER array [1] = 1 >> Fiber tip pens</p> <p>INTEGER array [1] = 2 >> Roller ball pens</p> <p>INTEGER array [1] = 3 >> Capillary pens</p> <p>INTEGER array [2] = 0 >> No turret mounted or turret has no pens</p> <p>INTEGER array [2] = n >> Sum of these values:</p> <p>1: Pen in stall #1</p> <p>2: Pen in stall #2</p> <p>4: Pen in stall #3</p> <p>8: Pen in stall #4</p> <p>16: Pen in stall #5</p> <p>32: Pen in stall #6</p> <p>64: Pen in stall #7</p> <p>128: Pen in stall #8</p>

For example, if INTEGER array[2] = 3, pens would only be contained in stalls 1 and 2.

Operation selector 2050 is supported on the HP 7475, HP 7550, HP 7570A, HP 7575A, HP 7576A, HP 7580, HP 7585, HP 7586, HP 7595A/B, HP 7596A/B, and HP 7599A plotters. The HP 7595B, HP 7596B and HP 7599A plotters are only supported in HP 7595A or 7596A emulation mode.

The HP 7570A, HP 7575A, and HP 7576A support opcode 2050 but can only return the values in the following table:

INTEGER array [1] = -1	Turret mounted but type unknown
INTEGER array [1] = 0	No turret mounted
INTEGER array [2] = 0	No turret mounted
INTEGER array [2] = 255	Assumes all pens are mounted

Error Conditions

If the graphics system is not initialized or a display is not enabled, the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

HP-HIL Locator Semantics

The `input_esc` procedure, when called in relation to an HP-HIL device, returns information about the device. The `locator_init 201` or `locator_init 202` must have been successfully executed as well as some `display_init`.

- The maximum X and Y that can be returned,
- The number of buttons,
- Where it is on the HP-HIL (loop address),
- X and Y resolution.

For HP-HIL locator devices (i.e., `locator_init` was called with a value of 201 or 202), the effect of the `input_esc` call is as follows:

If $1 \leq Iarr[1] \leq 7$, and HP-HIL loop address `Iarr[1]` is not a locator, `Iarr[1]` returns with the device ID, unless there was no device there, in which case `Iarr[1]` is zero. Both `Iarr[2]` and `Iarr[3]` will be 0 when the device is not a locator.

If $1 \leq Iarr[1] \leq 7$, and loop address `Iarr[1]` is a locator, the following information is returned:

```
Iarr[1] = device ID
Iarr[2] = Xmax in device units (non-zero)
Iarr[3] = Ymax in device units (non-zero)
Iarr[4] = number of buttons on device
```

```
Rarr[1] = X points/mm
Rarr[2] = Y points/mm
```

If `Iarr[1]` is less than 1 or greater than 7, it is an error condition: `Err=4`.

A call to `input_esc` when dealing with HP-HIL input devices would take the following form*:

```
input_esc(4290, 4, 2, Iarr, Rarr, Err);
```

If `locator_init (201,err)` or `locator_init (202,err)` is not executed prior to either of these calls, the system would report one of three errors:

```
escapecode=-27 and    If no locator has been activated.
  graphicserror=3
```

```
escapecode=-27 and    If no display has been initialized
  graphicserror=0
```

```
err=1                If a locator other than 201 or 202 has been activated.
```

This use of `input_esc` is an extension past previous implementations of DGL, which specified that `input_esc` should only talk to output devices (e.g., displays and plotters), not input devices, such as locators.

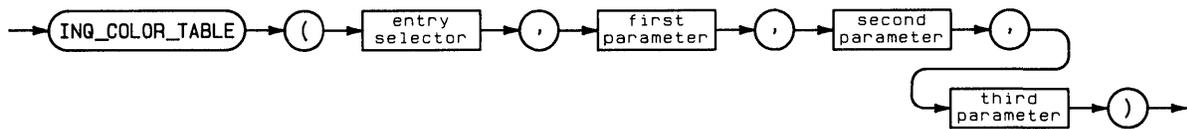
* A "9" as the tens digit in the `input_esc` opcode indicates a locator opcode.

INQ_COLOR_TABLE

IMPORT: dgl_lib
dgl_inq

This **procedure** inquires the color modeling parameters for an index into the device-dependent color capability table.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
entry selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	>0
first parameter name	Variable of TYPE REAL	-
second parameter name	Variable of TYPE REAL	-
third parameter name	Variable of TYPE REAL	-

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE INQ_COLOR_TABLE (      Index : INTEGER;
                               VAR ColP1 : REAL;
                               VAR ColP2 : REAL;
                               VAR ColP3 : REAL      );
  
```

Semantics

This routine inquires the color modelling parameters for the specified location in a device-dependent color capability table.

The **entry selector** specifies the location in the color capability table. The parameters returned are for the specific location. The size of the color capability table is device dependent. For raster displays in Series 200/300 computers, 32 entries are available for 1 or 4 plane displays; 80 entries are available for 6 plane displays; and 272 entries are available for 8 plane displays.

The **first parameter** represents red intensity if the RGB model has been selected with the SET COLOR statement, or hue if the HSL model has been selected.

The **second parameter** represents green intensity if the RGB model has been selected with the SET COLOR statement, or saturation if the HSL model has been selected.

The **third parameter** represents blue intensity if the RGB model has been selected, or luminosity if the HSL model has been selected.

A more detailed description of the color models and the meaning of their parameters can be found under the procedure definition of SET_COLOR_MODEL.

Note

The color table stores color specifications as RGB values. The conversion from RGB to HSL is a one-to-many transformation, and the following arbitrary assignments may be made during the conversion:

```
IF Luminosity = 0
  THEN Hue = 0
      Saturation = 0
```

```
IF Saturation = 0
  THEN Hue = 0
```

Error Conditions

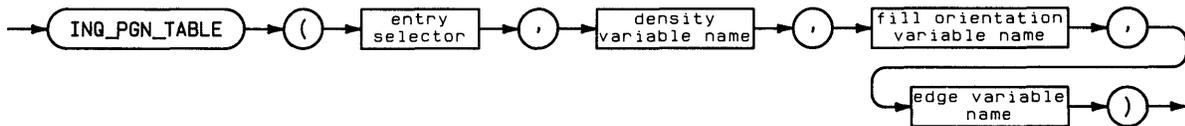
If the graphics system is not initialized, a display device is not enabled, the color table contents cannot be inquired, or the color table entry selector is out of range, the call is ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

INQ_PGN_TABLE

IMPORT: dgl_lib
dgl_inq

This **procedure** inquires the polygon style attributes for an entry in the polygon style table.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
entry selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT	Device dependent
density variable name	Variable of TYPE REAL	—	—
fill orientation variable name	Variable of TYPE REAL	—	—
edge variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	—	—

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE INQ_PGN_TABLE (      Index   : INTEGER ;
                             VAR Densty : REAL ;
                             VAR Orient : REAL ;
                             VAR Edge   : INTEGER ) ;
  
```

Semantics

The **entry selector** specifies the entry in the polygon style table the inquiry is directed at.

The **density variable** will contain a value between -1 and 1. This magnitude of this value is the ratio of filled area to non-filled area. Zero means the polygon interior is not filled. One represents a fully filled polygon interior. All non-zero values specify the density of continuous lines used to fill the interior. Negative values are used to specify crosshatching. Calculations for fill density are based on the thinnest line possible on the device and on continuous line-style. If the interior line-style is not continuous, the actual fill density may not match that found in the polygon style table.

The **fill orientation variable** will contain a value from -90 through 90. This value represents the angle (in degrees) between the lines used for filling the polygon and the horizontal axis of the display device. The interpretation of fill orientation is device-dependent. On devices that require software emulation of polygon styles, the angle specified will be adhered to as closely as possible, within the line-drawing capabilities of the device. For hardware generated polygon styles, the angle specified will be adhered to as closely as is possible given the hardware simulation of the requested density. If crosshatching is specified, the fill orientation specifies the angle of orientation of the first set of lines in the crosshatching, and the second set of lines is always perpendicular to this.

The **edge variable** will contain a 0 if the polygon edge is not to be displayed and a 1 if the polygon edge is to be displayed. If polygon edges are displayed, they adhere to the current line attributes of color, line-style, and line-width, in effect at the time of polygon display.

All current devices support 16 entries in the polygon table. The polygon styles defined in the default tables are defined to exploit the hardware capabilities of the devices they are defined for.

Error Conditions

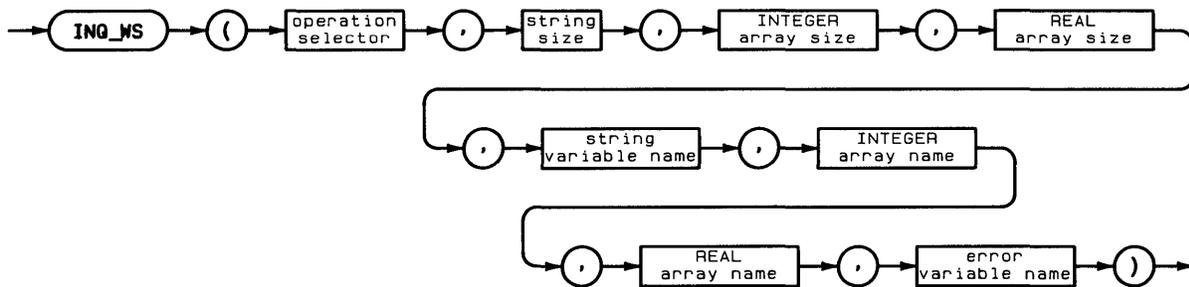
The graphics system must be initialized, a display must be enabled, and the entry selector must be in range or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

INQ_WS

IMPORT: dgl_lib
dgl_inq

This **procedure** allows the user to determine characteristics of the graphics system.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
operation selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	see below
string size	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	see below
integer array size	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	see below
REAL array size	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	see below
string name	Variable of TYPE PACKED ARRAY OF CHAR	-
INTEGER array name	Variable of TYPE ARRAY OF INTEGER	-
REAL array name	Variable of TYPE ARRAY OF REAL	-
error variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	-

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE INQ_WS (
    Opcode : INTEGER;
    Ssize  : INTEGER;
    Isize  : INTEGER;
    Rsize  : INTEGER;
    ANYVAR Slist : Gchar_list;
    ANYVAR Ilist : Gint_list;
    ANYVAR Rlist : Greal_list;
    VAR Ierr  : INTEGER);
```

Semantics

The **operation selector** is an integer from the list of operation selectors given below. It is used to specify the topic of the inquiry to the system.

The **string size** is used to specify the maximum number of characters that are to be returned in the string array by the function specified by the operation selector. If there is a 1 in the ten-thousand's place a string value will be returned. The number of characters in the string is returned in the first entry in the INTEGER array.

The **INTEGER array size** is the number of integer parameters that are returned in the integer array by the function specified by OPCODE. The thousand's digit of the operation selector is the number of elements the INTEGER array must contain.

The **REAL array size** is the number of REAL parameters that are returned in the REAL array by the function specified by OPCODE. The hundred's digit of the operation selector is the number of elements the REAL array must contain.

The **string array** is a PACKED ARRAY OF CHAR which will contain a string or strings that represents characteristics of the work station specified by the value of operation selector. The application program must ensure that string array is dimensioned to contain all of the values returned by the selected function.

The **INTEGER array** will contain integer values that represent characteristics of the work station specified by the value of OPCODE. The application program must ensure that the integer array is dimensioned to contain all of the values returned by the selected function.

The **REAL array** will contain REAL values that represent characteristics of the work station specified by the value of OPCODE. The application program must ensure that the REAL array is dimensioned to contain all of the values returned by the selected function.

The **error variable** will return an integer indicating whether the inquiry was successfully performed.

Value	Meaning
0	The inquiry was successfully performed.
1	The operation selector was invalid.
2	The INTEGER array size was not equal to the number INTEGER parameters requested by the operation selector.
3	The REAL array size was not equal to the number of REAL parameters requested by the operation selector.
4	The string array was not large enough to hold the string requested by the operation selector.

B-40 Graphics Procedure Reference

The procedure `INQ_WS` returns current information about the graphics system to the application program. The type of information desired is specified by a unique value of `OPCODE`. The thousands digit of the operation selector specifies the number of integer values returned in the integer array and the hundreds digit specifies the number of `REAL` values returned in the `REAL` array. A 1 in the ten-thousand's place indicates that a value will be returned in the string.

One use of `INQ_WS` is device optimization: the use of inquiry is to enhance the application's utilization of the output device. An example of this is using color to distinguish between lines when a device supports colors, and using line-styles when color is not available. Another example is maximizing the aspect ratio used, based on the maximum aspect ratio of the display device.

Device dependent information returned by the procedure is undefined if the device being inquired from is not enabled (e.g., inquire number of colors supported, operation selector 1053, only returns valid information when the display is enabled).

If the graphics system is not initialized, the call will be ignored and `GRAPHICSError` will return a non-zero value.

Supported Operation Selectors

The operation selectors supported by the system and their meaning is listed below:

Operation Selector	Meaning
250	Current cell size used for text. REAL Array[1] = Character cell width in world coordinates REAL Array[2] = Character cell height in world coordinates
251	Marker size. REAL Array[1] = Marker width in world coordinates REAL Array[2] = Marker height in world coordinates
252	Resolution of graphics display REAL Array[1] = Resolution in X direction (points/mm) REAL Array[2] = Resolution in Y direction (points/mm)
253	Maximum dimensions of the graphics display. REAL Array[1] = Maximum size in X direction (MM) REAL Array[2] = Maximum size in Y direction (MM)
254	Aspect ratios REAL Array[1] = Current aspect ratio of the virtual coordinate system. REAL Array[2] = Aspect ratio of logical limits.
255	Resolution of locator device REAL Array[1] = Resolution in X direction (points/mm) REAL Array[2] = Resolution in Y direction (points/mm)
256	Maximum dimensions of the locator display. REAL Array[1] = Maximum size in X direction (MM) REAL Array[2] = Maximum size in Y direction (MM)
257	Current locator echo position REAL array[1] = X world coordinate position REAL array[2] = Y world coordinate position
258	Current virtual coordinate limits REAL array[1] = Maximum X virtual coordinate REAL array[2] = Maximum Y virtual coordinate
259	Starting position. The information returned may not be valid (not updated) following a text call, an escape function call, changes to the viewing transformation or after initialization of the graphics display device. REAL array[1] = X world coordinate position REAL array[2] = Y world coordinate position
450	Current window limits REAL array[1] = Minimum X world coordinate position REAL array[2] = Maximum X world coordinate position REAL array[3] = Minimum Y world coordinate position REAL array[4] = Maximum Y world coordinate position
451	Current viewport limits REAL array[1] = Minimum X virtual coordinate REAL array[2] = Maximum X virtual coordinate REAL array[3] = Minimum Y virtual coordinate REAL array[4] = Maximum Y virtual coordinate

Operation Selector	Meaning
1050	<p>Does graphics display device support clipping at physical limits?</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = 0 - No INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - Yes, to the view-surface boundaries INTEGER Array[1] = 2 - Yes, but only to the physical limits of the display surface.</p>
1051	<p>Justification of the view surface within the logical display limits.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = 0 - View-surface is centered within the logical display limits INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - View surface is positioned in the lower left corner of the logical display limits.</p>
1052	<p>Can the graphics display draw in the background color? Drawing in the background color can be used to 'erase' previously drawn primitives.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = 0 - No INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - Yes</p>
1053	<p>The total number of non-dithered colors supported on the graphics display. The number returned does not include the background color. (Compare operation selectors 1053, 1054, and 1075.)</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = number of distinct colors supported.</p>
1054	<p>Number of distinct non-dithered colors which can appear on the graphics display at one time. The number returned does not include the background color.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = number of distinct colors which can appear on the display device at one time.</p>
1056	<p>Number of line-styles supported on the graphics display.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = number of hardware line-styles supported.</p>
1057	<p>Number of line-widths supported on the graphics display.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = number of line-widths supported.</p>
1059	<p>Number of markers supported on the graphics display.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = # of distinct markers supported.</p>
1060	<p>Current value of color attribute.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = Current value of color attribute.</p>
1062	<p>Current value of line-style attribute</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = Current value of line-style attribute.</p>
1063	<p>Current value of line-width attribute.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = Current value.</p>
1064	<p>Current timing mode.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = 0 - Immediate visibility INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - System buffering</p>
1065	<p>Number of entries in the polygon style table.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = # styles.</p>
1066	<p>Current polygon interior color index.</p> <p>INTEGER Array[1] = Index</p>

Operation Selector	Meaning
1067	Current polygon style index. INTEGER Array[1] = Index
1068	Maximum number of polygon vertices that a display device can process. INTEGER Array[1] = 0 No hardware support. = N ($0 < n < 32767$) Number of vertices supported. = 32767 The graphics display device uses all available memory to process polygons (the maximum number of vertices is determined by current free memory).
1069	Does the graphics device support immediate, retroactive change of polygon style for polygons already displayed? INTEGER Array[1] = 0 - No. INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - Yes.
1070	Does the graphics device support hardware (or low-level device handler) generation of polygons using INT_POLYGON_DD? INTEGER Array[1] = 0 - No INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - Yes
1071	Does the graphics device support immediate, retroactive change for primitives already displayed? INTEGER Array[1] = 0 - No INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - Yes
1072	Can the background color of the display be changed? INTEGER Array[1] = 0 - No INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - Yes
1073	Can entries in the color table be redefined using SET_COLOR_TABLE? INTEGER Array[1] = 0 - No INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - Yes
1074	Current color model in use. INTEGER Array[1] = 1 - RGB INTEGER Array[1] = 2 - HSL
1075	Number of entries in the color capability table. The number returned does not include the background color. INTEGER Array[1] = # entries
1076	Current polygon interior line-style. INTEGER Array[1] = Current interior line-style
11050	Graphics display device association. String = Name of device path. (Internal device specifier.) INTEGER Array[1] = Number of characters in the device path.
11052	Locator device association. String = Name of device path. (Internal device specifier.) INTEGER Array[1] = Number of characters in the device path.

B-44 Graphics Procedure Reference

Operation Selector	Meaning
12050	Graphics display device information. String = Name of graphics display device. INTEGER Array[1] = Number of characters in the device name. INTEGER Array[2] = Status = 0 Graphics display is not enabled. = 1 Graphics display is enabled.
13052	Graphics locator device information. String = Name of the locator device. INTEGER Array[1] = Number of characters in the device name. INTEGER Array[2] = Status = 0 Locator device is not enabled. = 1 Locator device is enabled. INTEGER Array[3] = Number of buttons on the locator device.

Error Conditions

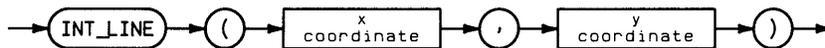
If the graphics system is not initialized, the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

INT_LINE

```
IMPORT: dgl_types
       dgl_lib
```

This **procedure** draws a line from the starting position to the world coordinate specified.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
x coordinate	Expression of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> ; This is subrange of INTEGER	– 32 768 to 32 767
y coordinate	Expression of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> ; This is subrange of INTEGER	– 32 768 to 32 767

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE INT_LINE ( Iwx, Iwy : Gshortint );
```

Semantics

The **x** and **y coordinate** pair is the ending of the line to be drawn in the world coordinate system.

A line is drawn from the starting position to the world coordinate specified by the **x** and **y** coordinates. The starting position is updated to this point at the completion of this call.

The primitive attributes of line style (see SET_LINE_STYLE), line width (see SET_LINE_WIDTH), and color (see SET_COLOR) apply to lines drawn using INT_LINE.

This procedure is the same as the LINE procedure, with the exception that the parameters are of type *Gshortint* (– 32 768..32 767). When used with some displays this procedure may perform about 3 times faster than the LINE procedure. For all other displays this procedure has about the same performance as the LINE procedure.

The INT_LINE procedure only has increased performance when the following conditions exist:

- The display must be a raster device.
- The window bounds within the range – 32 768 to 32 767.
- The window must be less than 32 767 units wide and high.

B-46 Graphics Procedure Reference

INT operations are provided for efficient vector generation. Although their use can be mixed with other, non-integer operations, one dot roundoff errors may result with mixed use since different algorithms are used to implement each.

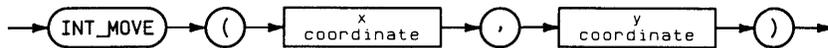
Drawing to the starting position generates the shortest line possible. Depending on the nature of the current line-style, nothing may appear on the graphics display surface. See SET_LINE_STYLE for a complete description of how line-style affects a particular point or vector.

INT_MOVE

IMPORT: dgl_types
dgl_lib

This **procedure** sets the starting position to the world coordinate position specified.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
x coordinate	Expression of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> ; This is subrange of INTEGER	– 32 768 to 32 767
y coordinate	Expression of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> ; This is subrange of INTEGER	– 32 768 to 32 767

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE INT_MOVE ( Iwx, Iwy : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

The **x** and **y coordinate** pair define the new starting position in world coordinates.

INT_MOVE specifies where the next graphical primitive will be output. It does this by setting the value of the starting position to the world coordinate system point specified by the x and y coordinate values and then moving the pen (or its logical equivalent) to that point.

The starting position corresponds to the location of the physical pen or beam in all but four instances: after a change in the viewing transformation, after initialization of a graphical display device, after the output of a text string, or after the output of an escape function. A call to MOVE or INT_MOVE should therefore be made after any one of the following calls to update the value of the starting position and in so doing, place the physical pen or beam at a known location: SET_ASPECT, DISPLAY_INIT, SET_DISPLAY_LIM, OUTPUT_ESC, TEXT, SET_VIEWPORT, and SET_WINDOW.

This procedure is the same as the MOVE procedure, with the exception that the parameters are of type *Gshortint* (– 32 768..32 767). When used with the same display, this procedure can perform about 3 times faster than the MOVE procedure. For all other displays this procedure has about the same performance as the MOVE procedure.

The INT_MOVE procedure only has increased performance when the following conditions exist:

- The display must be a raster device.
- The window bounds within the range $-32\,768$ to $32\,767$.
- The window must be less than $32\,767$ units wide and high.

INT operations are provided for efficient vector generation. Although their use can be mixed with non-integer operations, one dot roundoff errors may result with mixed use since different algorithms are used to implement each.

Error Conditions

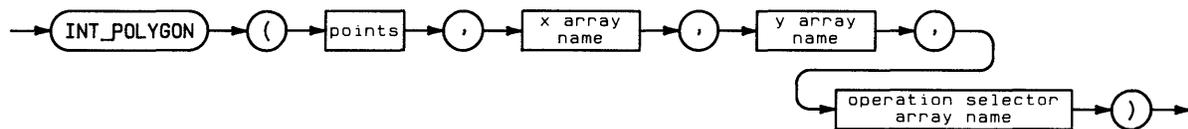
The graphics system must be initialized and a graphics display must be enabled or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

INT_POLYGON

```
IMPORT: dgl_types
       dgl_lib
       dgl_poly
```

This **procedure** displays a polygon-set starting and ending at the specified point adhering to the specified polygon style exactly as specified (i.e., device-independent results).

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
points	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT
x array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	- 32 768 to 32 767
y array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	- 32 768 to 32 767
operation selector array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	- 32 768 to 32 767

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE INT_POLYGON (
                    Npoint : INTEGER;
                    ANYVAR Xvec : Gshortint_list;
                    ANYVAR Yvec : Gshortint_list;
                    ANYVAR Opcodes : Gshortint_list);
```

Semantics

Points is the number of vertices in the polygon set.

The **x** and **y coordinate arrays** contain the world coordinate values for each vertex of the polygon-set. The vertices must be in order. The vertices for the first sub-polygon must be at the beginning of these arrays, followed by the vertices for the second sub-polygon, etc. So, the coordinate arrays must contain a total number of vertices that equals **points**.

The **operation selector array** contains a series of integer operation selectors defining which vertices start new polygons, and defining which edges should be displayed.

Value	Meaning
0	Don't display the line for the edge extending to this vertex from the previous vertex.
1	Display the line for the edge extending to this vertex from the previous vertex.
2	This vertex is the first vertex of a sub-polygon. Succeeding vertices are part of a sub-polygon until a new start-of-polygon operation selector (2) is encountered. (Or the end of the arrays is encountered.)

Note

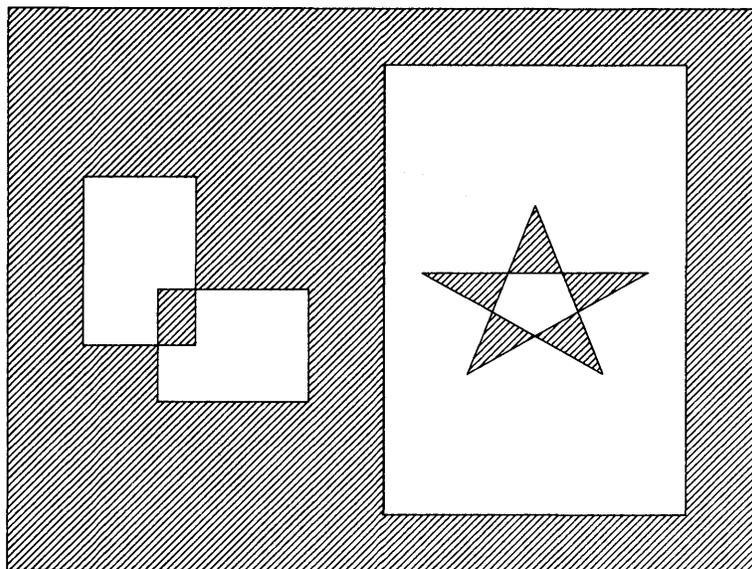
The first entry in the operation selector array **must** be 2, since it is the first vertex of a sub-polygon.

INT_POLYGON is used to output a polygon-set, specified in world coordinates, adhering exactly to the polygon style attributes that are currently specified. A polygon-set is a set of polygons (called “sub-polygons”) that are treated graphically as one polygon. This is accomplished by “stacking” the sub-polygons. The subpolygons in a polygon-set may intersect or overlap each other.

The edge of a sub-polygon is defined as the line sequence that connects its vertices in the order specified. If the last vertex specified for a sub-polygon is not the same as the first, they are automatically connected.

When a polygon-set is displayed, the primitive attributes for polygons and lines define its appearance. In particular, the interior of the polygon-set will be filled according to the attributes of polygon style, polygon interior color and polygon interior line-style. If the edges are to be displayed as specified in the polygon style, the edges will adhere to the current line attributes of color, line-style and line-width. A dot will disappear on an edged polygon if the edge is done with a complementing line.

The filling of polygons also depends on how the sub-polygons “nest” within each other. An “even-odd” rule is used for determining which areas will be filled. Moving across the screen, count the edges of the polygon. Odd-numbered edges will turn the fill on and even-numbered edges will turn the fill off. The picture below will help clear up how the fills work.



Polygon Filling

Refer to SET_PGN_TABLE, SET_PGN_STYLE, SET_PGN_COLOR, SET_PGN_LS for a more detailed description of how attributes affect polygons.

As stated above, the values in the operation selector array define how the edges of the sub-polygons are displayed. The edge from the (I-1)th vertex to the Ith vertex will only be displayed if the Ith entry in the operation selector array equals 1. To display the edge from the last vertex to the first vertex of a sub-polygon, the first vertex must be explicitly respecified after all the other vertices of the sub-polygon, with an operation selector equal to 1. Otherwise the edge from the last vertex to the first will not be drawn. It will, however, automatically be connected for polygon filling.

If it is within the capabilities of the device, filling of the sub-polygon will be done to the sub-polygon edges regardless of whether the edges are displayed. If an entry in the operation selector array does not equal 0, 1, or 2, it will be treated as if it were equal to 0 and the edge will not be drawn.

When INT_POLYGON is used, the current position is updated to the end of the last sub-polygon specified in the polygon-set. The end of the last sub-polygon is defined to be the first (implicit last) vertex of the subpolygon. So, if there is only one vertex in a polygon-set this call degenerates to an update of the current position to the first coordinate set in the x and y point arrays (x coordinate array[1], y coordinate array[1]).

It is the application program's responsibility to ensure that the arrays are all dimensioned to at least the number of elements specified by points and that at least that many values are contained in each array.

Polygons are defined to be closed surfaces. When a sub-polygon extends beyond a clipping edge the closed nature of the sub-polygon is destroyed. As with other primitives, unpredictable results may occur if the sub-polygon extends beyond the clipping window.

This procedure is the same as the POLYGON procedure, with the exception that the parameters are of type *Gshortint* (–32 768..32 767). When used with some displays this procedure may perform about 3 times faster than the POLYGON procedure. For all other displays this procedure has about the same performance as the POLYGON procedure.

The INT_POLYGON procedure only has increased performance when the following conditions exist:

- The display must be a raster device.
- The window bounds are within the range –32 768 through 32 767.
- The window must be less than 32 767 units wide and high.

INT_POLYGON is provided for efficient vector generation. Although its use can be mixed with MOVE, LINE, POLYLINE, and POLYGON, one dot roundoff errors may result with mixed use since different algorithms are used to implement each.

Error Conditions

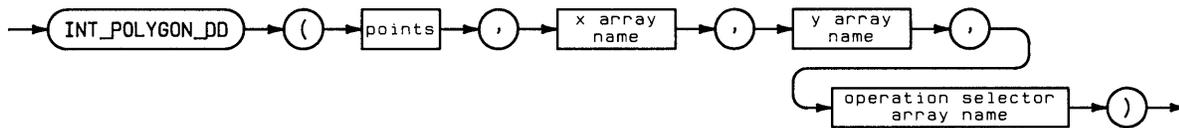
The graphics system must be initialized, a graphics display must be enabled, all parameters must be within specified limits and the number of points specified must be greater than 0 or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (–27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

INT_POLYGON_DD

IMPORT: dgl_types
 dgl_lib
 dgl_poly

This **procedure** displays a polygon-set starting and ending at the specified point adhering to the specified polygon style in a device-dependent fashion.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
points	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT
x array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	- 32 768 to 32 767
y array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	- 32 768 to 32 767
operation selector array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	- 32 768 to 32 767

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE INT_POLYGON_ DD (
                                NPoint   : INTEGER;
                                ANYVAR   Xvec   : Gshortint_list;
                                ANYVAR   Yvec   : Gshortint_list;
                                ANYVAR   Dpcodes : Gint_list      );
```

Semantics

Points is the number of vertices in the polygon set.

The **x** and **y coordinate arrays** contain the world coordinate values for each vertex of the polygon-set. The vertices must be in order. The vertices for the first sub-polygon must be at the beginning of these arrays, followed by the vertices for the second sub-polygon, etc. So, the coordinate arrays must contain a total number of vertices that equals points.

The **operation selector array** contains a series of integer operation selectors defining which vertices start new polygons, and defining which edges should be displayed.

Value	Meaning
0	Don't display the line for the edge extending to this vertex from the previous vertex.
1	Display the line for the edge extending to this vertex from the previous vertex.
2	This vertex is the first vertex of a sub-polygon. Succeeding vertices are part of a sub-polygon until a new start-of-polygon operation selector (2) is encountered. (Or the end of the arrays is encountered.)

Note

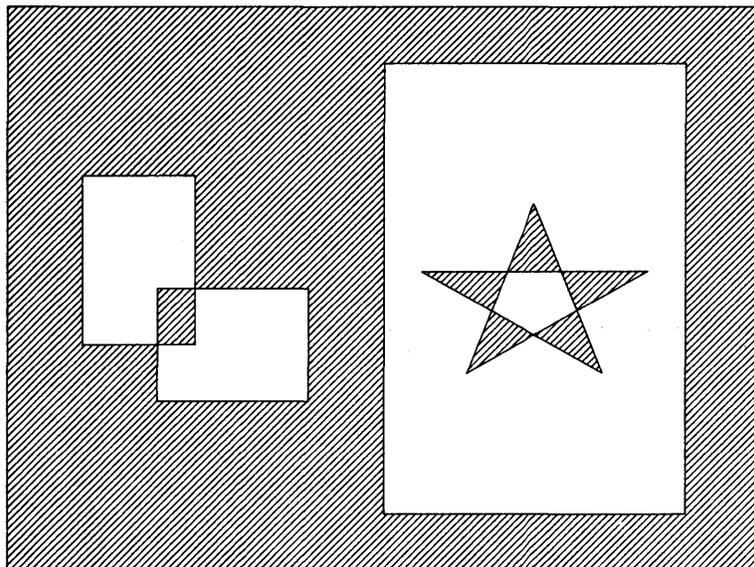
The first entry in the operation selector array **must** be 2, since it is the first vertex of a sub-polygon.

INT_POLYGON_DD is used to output a polygon-set, specified in world coordinates, adhering within the capabilities of the device to the polygon style attributes that are currently specified. A polygon-set is a set of polygons (called "sub-polygons") that are treated graphically as one polygon. The subpolygons in a polygon-set may intersect or overlap each other.

The edge of a sub-polygon is defined as the line sequence that connects its vertices in the order specified. If the last vertex specified for a sub-polygon is not the same as the first, they are automatically connected.

When a polygon-set is displayed, the primitive attributes for polygons and lines define its appearance. In particular, the interior of the polygon-set will be filled according to the attributes of polygon style, polygon interior color and polygon interior line-style. If the edges are to be displayed as specified in the polygon style, the edges will adhere to the current line attributes of color, line-style and line-width.

The filling of polygons also depends on how the sub-polygons "nest" within each other. An "even-odd" rule is used for determining which areas will be filled. Moving across the screen, count the edges of the polygon. Odd-numbered edges will turn the fill on and even-numbered edges will turn the fill off. The picture below will help clear up how the fills work.



Polygon Filling

Refer to SET_PGN_TABLE, SET_PGN_STYLE, SET_PGN_COLOR, SET_PGN_LS for a more detailed description of how attributes affect polygons.

As stated above, the values in the operation selector array define how the edges of the sub-polygons are displayed. The edge from the (I-1)th vertex to the Ith vertex will only be displayed if the Ith entry in the operation selector array equals 1. To display the edge from the last vertex to the first vertex of a sub-polygon, the first vertex must be explicitly respecified after all the other vertices of the sub-polygon, with an operation selector equal to 1. Otherwise the edge from the last vertex to the first will not be drawn. It will, however, automatically be connected for polygon filling.

If it is within the capabilities of the device, filling of the sub-polygon will be done to the sub-polygon edges regardless of whether the edges are displayed. If an entry in the operation selector array does not equal 0, 1, or 2, it will be treated as if it were equal to 0, i.e., the edge will not be drawn.

When INT_POLYGON_DD is used, the current position is updated to the end of the last sub-polygon specified in the polygon-set. The end of the last sub-polygon is defined to be the first (implicit last) vertex of the subpolygon. So, if there is only one vertex in a polygon-set this call degenerates to an update of the current position to the first coordinate set in the x and y point arrays (x coordinate array[1], y coordinate array[1]).

It is the application program's responsibility to ensure that the arrays are all dimensioned to at least the number of elements specified by points and that at least that many values are contained in each array.

Device capabilities vary widely. Not all devices are able to draw polygon edges as requested. If a device is not able to draw polygon edges as requested, they will be simulated in software. The simulation will always adhere to the edge value in SET_PGN_STYLE and the operation selector in INT_POLYGON_DD, but the line-style and color of the edge will depend on the capability of the device to produce lines with those attributes.

Polygon fill capabilities can vary widely between devices. A device may have no filling capabilities at all, may be able to perform only solid fill, or may be able to fill polygons with different fill densities and at different fill line orientations. INT_POLYGON_DD tries to match the device capabilities to the request. If the device cannot fill the request at all, then no simulation is done and the polygon will not be filled. For HPGL plotters, the fill is simulated. For raster devices, if the density is greater than 0.5, a solid fill is used, otherwise, the fill is simulated.

In the case where the polygon style specifies non-display of edged, this would result in no visible output although visible output had been specified. To provide some visible output in this case, INT_POLYGON_DD will outline the polygon using the color and line-style specified for the fill lines. However, only those edge segments specified as displayable by the operation selector array will be drawn. Therefore, if all edge segments are specified as non-displayed, there will still be no visible output.

Regardless of the capabilities of the device, INT_POLYGON_DD sets the starting position to the first vertex of the last member polygon specified in the call. If there is only one polygon specified, the starting position will therefore be set to the first vertex specified.

Polygons are defined to be closed surfaces. When a sub-polygon extends beyond a clipping edge the closed nature of the sub-polygon is destroyed. As with other primitives, unpredictable results may occur if the sub-polygon extends beyond the clipping window.

This procedure is the same as the procedure POLYGON_DEV_DEP, with the exception that the parameters are of type *Gshortint* (–32 768..32 767). When used with some displays this procedure may perform about 3 times faster than the POLYGON_DEV_DEP procedure. For all other displays this procedure has about the same performance as the POLYGON_DEV_DEP procedure.

The INT_POLYGON_DD procedure only has increased performance when the following conditions exist:

- The display is a raster device.
- The window bounds are within the range –32 768 through 32 767.
- The window is less than 32 767 units wide and high.

INT_POLYGON_DD is provided for efficient vector generation. Although its use can be mixed with MOVE, LINE, POLYLINE, and POLYGON_DEV_DEP, one dot roundoff errors may result with mixed use since different algorithms are used to implement each.

Error Conditions

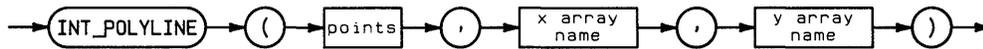
The graphics system must be initialized, a graphics display must be enabled, all parameters must be within specified limits and the number of points (Points) must be greater than 0 or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (–27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

INT_POLYLINE

IMPORT: dgl_types
dgl_lib

This **procedure** draws a connected line sequence starting at the specified point.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
points	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT
x array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	-32 768 to 32 767
y array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	-32 768 to 32 767

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE INT_POLYLINE (
                        Npts          : INTEGER;
                        ANYVAR Xvec, Yvec : Gshortint_list )
```

Semantics

Points is the number of vertices in the polygon set.

The **x** and **y coordinate arrays** contain the world coordinate values for each vertex of the polyline-set. The vertices must be in order. The vertices for the first sub-polyline must be at the beginning of these arrays, followed by the vertices for the second sub-polyline, etc. So, the coordinate arrays must contain a total number of vertices that equals **points**.

The procedure INT_POLYLINE provides the capability to draw a series of connected lines starting at the specified point. A complete object can be drawn by making one call to this procedure. This call first sets the starting position to be the first elements in the x and y coordinate arrays. The line sequence begins at this point and is drawn to the second element in each array, then to the third and continues until **points-1** lines are drawn.

This procedure is equivalent to the following sequence of calls:

```
INT_MOVE (X_coordinate_array[1],Y_coordinate_array[1]);
INT_LINE (X_coordinate_array[2],Y_coordinate_array[2]);
INT_LINE (X_coordinate_array[3],Y_coordinate_array[3]);
      :
      :
INT_LINE (X_coordinate_array[Points],Y_coordinate_array[Points]);
```

The starting position is set to (*X_coordinate_array*[Points], *Y_coordinate_array*[Points]) at the completion of this call.

Specifying only one element, or Points equal to 1, causes a move to be made to the world coordinate point specified by the first entries in the two coordinate arrays.

It is the application program's responsibility to ensure that the arrays are all dimensioned to at least the number of elements specified by points and that at least that many values are contained in each array.

Depending on the nature of the current line-style nothing may appear on the graphics display. See *SET_LINE_STYLE* for a complete description of how line-style affects a particular point or vector.

The primitive attributes of color, line-style, and line-width apply to polylines.

This procedure is the same as the *POLYLINE* procedure, with the exception that the parameters are of type *Gshortint* (–32 768..32 767). When used with some displays this procedure may perform about 3 times faster than the *POLYLINE* procedure. For all other displays this procedure has about the same performance as the *POLYLINE* procedure.

The *INT_POLYLINE* procedure only has increased performance when the following conditions exist:

- The display must be a raster device.
- The window bounds within the range –32 768 to 32 767.
- The window must be less than 32 767 units wide and high.

INT_POLYLINE is provided for efficient vector generation. Although its use can be mixed with *MOVE*, *LINE*, and *POLYLINE*, one dot roundoff errors may result with mixed use since different algorithms are used to implement each.

Error Conditions

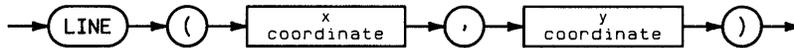
The graphics system must be initialized, a graphics display must be enabled, all parameters must be within specified limits and the number of points (points) must be greater than 0 or the call will be ignored, an *ESCAPE* (–27) will be generated, and *GRAPHICSEERROR* will return a non-zero value.

LINE

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** draws a line from the starting position to the world coordinate specified.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
x coordinate	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
y coordinate	Expression of TYPE REAL	—

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE LINE ( Wx , Wy : REAL );
```

Semantics

A line is drawn from the starting position to the world coordinate specified by the X and Y coordinates. The starting position is updated to this point at the completion of this call.

The **x** and **y coordinate** pair is the ending of the line to be drawn in the world coordinate system.

The primitive attributes of line style, line width, and color apply to lines drawn using LINE. Drawing to the starting position generates the shortest line possible. Depending on the nature of the current line-style, nothing may appear on the graphics display surface. See SET_LINE_STYLE for a complete description of how line-style affects a particular point or vector.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized and a display must be enabled or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

LOCATOR_INIT

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** enables the locator device for input.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
device selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT TO MAXINT
error variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	-

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE LOCATOR_INIT (      Dev_Adr : INTEGER ,
                             VAR I_err  : INTEGER );
  
```

Semantics

The **device selector** specifies the physical addresses of the graphics locator device.

Device Selector	Locator Device Selected
2	Relative locator, such as knob or mouse
100..3199	HP-IB device at specified select code and address
201	HP-HIL absolute locators
202	HP-HIL relative locators

The **error variable** will contain a value indicating whether the locator device was successfully enabled.

Value	Meaning
0	The locator device was successfully initialized.
2	Unrecognized device specified. Unable to communicate with a device at the specified address, non-existent interface card or non-graphics system supported interface card.

If the error variable contains a non-zero value, the call has been ignored.

LOCATOR_INIT enables the logical locator device for input. Enabling the locator includes associating the logical locator device with a physical device and initializing the device. The device name is set to the name of the physical device, the device status is set to 1 (enabled) and the internal device selector used by the graphics library is set equal to the device selector provided by the user. This information is available by calling INQ_WS with operation selectors 11052 and 13052.

LOCATOR_INIT implicitly makes the picture current before attempting to initialize the device.

LOCATOR_INIT enables the logical locator device for input. Enabling the locator includes associating the logical locator device with a physical device and initializing the device.

The graphics library attempts to directly identify the type of device by using its device address in some way. The meanings of the device address are defined above.

At the time that the graphics library is initialized, all devices which are to be used must be connected, powered on, ready, and accessible via the specified physical address. Invalid addressed or unresponsive devices result in that device not being initialized and an error being returned.

The locator device must be enabled before it is used for input. The locator device is disabled by calling LOCATOR_TERM.

If the graphics display and the locator are not the same physical device (e.g., Model 276 display and HP 9111 locator), then the logical locator limits will be set to the default values for the particular locator used. If the graphics display and locator are the same physical device (e.g., Model 226 display and Model 226 knob locator), then the logical locator limits are set to the current view surface limits.

The locator echo position is set to the default value (see SET_ECHO_POS).

Only one locator device may be enabled at a time. If a locator is currently enabled, then the enabled device will be terminated (via LOCATOR_TERM) and the call will continue. The locator device should be disabled before the termination of the application program. LOCATOR_INIT is the complementary routine to LOCATOR_TERM.

Absolute Locator Limits (HPGL Plotter, Graphics Tablet, or Touchscreen)

When the locator device is initialized on an HPGL plotter or graphics tablet, the graphics display is left unaltered. HPGL and HP-HIL devices are initialized to the following defaults when LOCATOR_INIT is executed:

Plotter	Wide mm	High mm	Wide points	High points	Aspect	Resolution points/mm
7440A	272.5	191.25	10900	7650	.7018	40.0
7470	257.5	191.25	10300	7650	.7427	40.0
7475	416	259.125	16640	10365	.6229	40.0
7550	411.25	254.25	16450	10170	.6182	40.0
7570A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7575A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7576A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7580	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7585	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7586	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7595A/B	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7596A/B	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7599A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
9872	400	285	16000	11400	.7125	40.0
35723	210.0	164.0	57	43	.7500	470.0
46087A	297.6	216.5	11904	8660	.7275	40.0
46088A	432.4	297.6	17296	11904	.6883	40.0

The 7595B, 7596B and 7599A plotters are only supported in 7595A or 7596A emulation mode.

The maximum physical limits of the locator for a HPGL device not listed above are determined by the default settings of P1 and P2. The default settings of P1 and P2 are the values they have after an HPGL 'IN' command. Refer to the specific device manual for additional details.

The default logical display surface is set equal to the area defined by P1 and P2 at the time LOCATOR_INIT is invoked.

Note

If the paper is changed in an HP 7570A, HP 7575A, HP 7576A, HP 7580, HP 7585, HP 7595A/B, HP 7596A/B, or HP 7599A plotter while the graphics locator is initialized, it should be the same size of paper that was in the plotter when LOCATOR_INIT was called. If a different size of paper is required, the device should be terminated (LOCATOR_TERM) and re-initialized after the new paper has been placed in the plotter.

No locator points are returned while the pen control buttons are depressed on HPGL plotters.

Relative Locators (Knob or Mouse) – An Example:

The knob locator is initialized on a Model 226. The graphics display is an HP 98627A color output card. The resolution of the locator is 0 through 399 in the X dimension, and 0 through 299 in the Y dimension. The resolution of the display is 0 through 511 in the X dimension, and 0 through 389 in the Y dimension. When `AWAIT_LOCATOR` is used with echo 4, the locator will effectively have the HP 98627A resolution for the duration of the `AWAIT_LOCATOR` call. However, if echo 1 is used with `AWAIT_LOCATOR`, the cursor will appear on the Model 226 and the locator has a resolution of 0 through 399 and 0 through 299. Note that all conversion routines and inquiries will use the Model 226 limits.

The physical origin of the locator device is the lower left corner of the display.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized or this call will be ignored, an `ESCAPE (-27)` will be generated, and `GRAPHICSERROR` will return a non-zero value.

HP-HIL Absolute Locator Semantics

The value of `DEV_ADDR` must be 201 to activate an HP-HIL absolute locator; the 2 is the keyboard “address” times 100 (HP-IB convention), and the 1 is a token indicating “absolute locator.”

`IERR` is an error return variable, as usual in DGL. If `IERR=0`, the call to `LOCATOR_INIT` successfully set up at least one absolute locator device, and operations can proceed. If `IERR≠0`, this indicates a DGL error condition, and digitizing from HP-HIL tablets does not occur.

The call to `LOCATOR_INIT` can be made any time after a call to `GRAPHICS_INIT`, and is intended to initialize DGL so that the locator operations can be performed with the device(s) specified by `DEV_ADDR`.

Note that all absolute locators on the HP-HIL are activated, “lumped” together, and scaling is done on the greatest maximum count for each dimension. That is, if Device A has more counts in the X direction, and Device B has more counts in the Y direction, the scaling would take x_{max} from Device A and y_{max} from Device B. See `OUTPUT_ESC` for information on dealing with this situation.

To get DGL support of HP-HIL tablets, you need to execute the `HPHIL` and `DGL_ABS` files or put them in `INITLIB` and reboot before accessing the tablet. Both files are found on the `CONFIG:` disc (or `ACCESS:` disc for double sided disc) of your Pascal Operating System. If either of these files has not been executed, an appropriate error is returned from the routine `LOCATOR_INIT`.

HP-HIL Relative Locator Semantics

The value of `dev_addr` must be 202 to activate an HP-HIL relative locator; the 2 is the keyboard "address" times 100 (HP-IB convention), and the last 2 is a token indicating "relative locator."

IERR is an error return variable, as usual in DGL. If IERR=0, the call to LOCATOR_INIT successfully set up at least one absolute locator device, and operations can proceed. If IERR≠0, this indicates a DGL error condition, and digitizing from HP-HIL tablets does not occur.

The call to LOCATOR_INIT can be made any time after a call to GRAPHICS_INIT, and is intended to initialize DGL so that the locator operations can be performed with the device(s) specified by DEV_ADDR.

Note that all relative locators on HP-HIL are activated and "lumped" together. See OUTPUT_ESC for information on dealing with this situation.

Note also that if Mouse were executed in INITLIB, all HP-HIL mouse and knob devices generated arrow keys when moved. LOCATOR_INIT (202, ERR) terminates generation of arrow keys until LOCATOR_TERM or GRAPHICS_TERM is executed. If some kind of error prevents execution of LOCATOR_TERM or GRAPHICS_TERM the CLR-I/O key (STOP key on 46020 keyboards) will restore arrow key functionality.

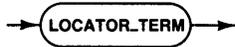
Enhanced DGL support of HP-HIL mouse and knob locators also requires the files HPHIL and DGL_REL to have been executed or put in INITLIB before accessing the device. As stated above, both files are found on the CONFIG: (ACCESS: for double sided) disc of your Pascal Operating System. If either of these files has not been executed, an appropriate error is returned from the routine LOCATOR_INIT.

LOCATOR_TERM

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** disables the enabled locator device.

Syntax



Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE LOCATOR_TERM;
```

Semantics

LOCATOR_TERM terminates and disables the enabled locator device. It transmits any termination sequence required by the device and releases all resources being used by the device. The device name is set to the default device name (' '), the device status is set to 0 (not enabled) and the device address is set to 0.

LOCATOR_TERM is the complementary routine to LOCATOR_INIT.

If a locator device is used, LOCATOR_TERM should be called before the application program is terminated.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized and a locator device enabled or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

HP-HIL Absolute Locator Semantics

Turns off whatever DGL locator is presently enabled by LOCATOR_INIT. “Turn off” may or may not do something to the hardware; it may just disconnect software linkages. HP-HIL locators do not even know they’ve been “turned off” by DGL, except that HP-HIL relative locators stop “keeping track” of their position. Note that if the module Mouse was installed in INITLIB, arrow keys stopped being generated from knobs and the mouse when LOCATOR_INIT (202, ERR) was successfully executed. LOCATOR_TERM would restore arrow key functionality from knob and mouse devices in this case.

MAKE_PIC_CURRENT

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** makes the picture current.

Syntax

→ MAKE_PIC_CURRENT →

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE MAKE_PIC_CURRENT;
```

Semantics

The graphics display surface can be made current at any time with a call to MAKE_PIC_CURRENT. This insures that all previously generated primitives have been sent to the graphics display device. Due to operating system delays, all picture changes may not have been displayed on the graphics display upon return to the calling program. MAKE_PIC_CURRENT is most often used in system buffering mode (see SET_TIMING) to make sure that all output has been sent to the graphics display device when required.

Before performing any non-graphics library input or output to an active graphics device, (e.g., a Pascal read or write), it is essential that all of the previously generated output primitives be sent to the device. If immediate visibility is the current timing mode, all primitives will be sent to the device before completion of the call to generate them, but if system buffering is used, MAKE_PIC_CURRENT should be called before performing any non-graphics system I/O.

The following routines implicitly make the picture current:

AWAIT_LOCATOR	DISPLAY_TERM	INPUT_ESC
LOCATOR_INIT	SAMPLE_LOCATOR	

A call to MAKE_PIC_CURRENT can be made at any time within an application program to insure that the image is fully displayed. MAKE_PIC_CURRENT does not modify the current timing mode.

Error Conditions

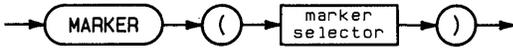
The graphics system must be initialized and a display must be enabled or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSERROR will return a non-zero value.

MARKER

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** outputs a marker symbol at the starting position.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
marker selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT TO MAXINT	1 thru 19

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE MARKER ( Marker_num : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

The **marker selector** determines which marker will be output. There are 19 defined invariant marker symbols (1-19). They are defined as follows:

1 - '.'	7 - rectangle	13 - '3'
2 - '+'	8 - diamond	14 - '4'
3 - '*'	9 - rectangle with cross	15 - '5'
4 - 'O'	10 - '0'	16 - '6'
5 - 'X'	11 - '1'	17 - '7'
6 - triangle	12 - '2'	18 - '8'
		19 - '9'

Marker numbers 20 and larger are device dependent.

MARKER outputs the marker designated by the marker selector, centered about the starting position. The starting position is left unchanged at the completion of this call.

If the marker selector specified is greater than the number of distinct marker symbols that are supported by a device, then marker number 1 ('.') will be used. INQ_WS can be used to inquire the number of distinct marker symbols that are available on a particular graphics display device. Depending on a particular display device's capabilities, the graphics library uses either hardware or software to generate the marker symbols.

The size and orientation of markers is fixed and not affected by the viewing transformation. The size of markers is device dependent and cannot be changed.

Only the primitive attributes of color and highlighting apply to markers. However, the marker will appear with these attributes only if the device is capable of applying them to markers.

Error Conditions

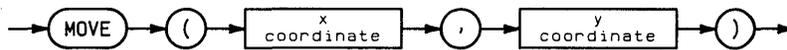
The graphics system must be initialized and a display device enabled or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

MOVE

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** sets the starting position to the world coordinate specified.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
x coordinate	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
y coordinate	Expression of TYPE REAL	—

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE MOVE ( Wx, Wy : REAL );
```

Semantics

MOVE specifies where the next graphical primitive will be output. It does this by setting the value of the starting position to the world coordinate system point specified by the X,Y coordinate values and then moving the physical beam or pen to that point.

The **x** and **y coordinate** pair is the new starting position in world coordinates.

The starting position corresponds to the location of the physical pen or beam in all but four instances: after a change in the viewing transformation, after initialization of a graphical display device, after the output of a text string, or after the output of a graphical escape function. A call to MOVE or INT_MOVE should therefore be made after any one of the following calls to update the value of the starting position and in so doing, place the physical pen or beam at a known location: SET_ASPECT, DISPLAY_INIT, SET_DISPLAY_LIM, OUTPUT_ESC, TEXT, SET_VIEWPORT, and SET_WINDOW.

Error Conditions

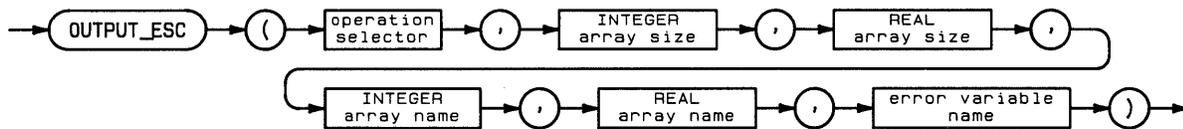
The graphics system must be enabled and a display device enabled or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

OUTPUT_ESC

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** performs a device dependent escape function to access special features of a graphics display device.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
operation selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT	-
INTEGER array size	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT	>0
REAL array size	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT	>0
INTEGER array name	Any valid variable. Should be INTEGER array	-	-
REAL array name	Any valid variable. Should be REAL array	-	-
error variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	-	-

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE OUTPUT_ESC (
    Dpcode : INTEGER;
    Isize  : INTEGER;
    Rsize  : INTEGER;
    ANYVAR Ilist : Gint_list;
    ANYVAR Rlist : Greal_list;
    VAR Ierr  : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

The **operation selector** determines the device dependent output escape function to be performed. The codes supported for a given device are described in the device handlers section of this document.

The **INTEGER array size** is the number of INTEGER parameters contained in the INTEGER array. The thousand's digit of the operation selector is the number of INTEGER parameters that the graphics system expects.

The **REAL array size** is the number of REAL parameters contained in the REAL array by the escape function. The hundred's digit of the operation selector is the number of REAL parameters that the graphics system expects.

The **INTEGER array** is the array in which zero or more INTEGER parameters are contained.

The **REAL array** is the array in which zero or more REAL parameters are contained.

The **error variable** will contain a value indicating whether the escape function was performed.

Value	Meaning
0	Output escape function successfully sent to the device.
1	Operation not supported by the graphics display device.
2	The INTEGER array size is not equal to the number of required INTEGER parameters.
3	The REAL array size is not equal to the number of required REAL parameters.
4	Illegal parameters specified.

If the error variable contains a non-zero value, the call has been ignored.

OUTPUT_ESC allows application programs to access special device features on a graphics display device. The desired escape function is specified by a unique value for opcode.

The type of information passed to the graphics display device is determined by the value of opcode. The graphics library does not check OUTPUT_ESC parameters which will be sent directly to the display device. This can lead to device dependent results if out of range values are sent.

Output escape functions only apply to the graphics display device.

The starting position may be altered by a call to OUTPUT_ESC.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized and a display device must be enabled or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

For HPGL plotters, it is recommended that you read the operator's or programmer's manual for the peripheral before programming HPGL OUTPUT_ESC values.

HP-HIL Locator Semantics

The `output_esc` procedure, when called in relation to HP-HIL input devices, allows you to specify which HP-HIL devices on the loop are to be active.

For HP-HIL locator devices (i.e., `LOCATOR_INIT` was called with a value of 201 or 202), the effect of the `OUTPUT_ESC` call is as follows.

<code>0 ≤ Iarr[1] ≤ 127</code>	<p>HP-HIL addresses 1–7, corresponding to bit 0–6, are enabled (bit value of 1) or disabled (bit value of 0) as potential locators. If the device at address $\langle bit \rangle + 1$ is not a locator, the value of the bit is irrelevant—the device is not activated.</p> <p>Once active devices are selected, locator scaling is performed to the largest active device, in the case of <code>LOCATOR_INIT 201</code>. For <code>LOCATOR_INIT 202</code> this is not relevant. If no devices are active at this point, an error is generated (<code>escapecode=-27</code>) because scaling could not take place.</p>
<code>Iarr[1] < 0</code>	Error condition: <code>Err=4</code> ; “Illegal parameters specified.”
<code>Iarr[1] > 127</code>	Works with <code>Iarr[1] mod 128</code> .

A call to `output_esc` when dealing with HP-HIL devices would take the following form*:

```
output_esc(1090, 1, 0, Iarr, Rarr, Err);
```

For HP-HIL relative locators only, the opcode 1091 is also useful. After performing a `locator_init(202, err)`, the keyboard is “active” for terminating the `await_locator` procedure. Arrow keys, as well as any other keys will act as the “button”, and return their values (as the ordinals of their character values) while digitizing the current location.

If you wish keyboard keys not to terminate `await_locator`, use `output_esc(1091, 1, 0, Iarr, Rarr, Err)`, with a value of 0 for `Iarr[1]`. This tells DGL to accept only mouse buttons to terminate `await_locator`. Beware: the HP-HIL “knob” and the 98203C keyboard knob have no buttons; there is no way to terminate `await_locator` using these devices after the above `output_esc` has been performed.

If `LOCATOR_INIT (201,ERR)` or `LOCATOR_INIT (202,ERR)` was not executed prior to either of these calls, the system would report one of three errors:

<code>escapecode=-27 and graphicserror=3</code>	If no locator has been activated.
<code>escapecode=-27 and graphicserror=0</code>	If no display has been initialized
<code>err=1</code>	If a locator other than 201 or 202 has been activated.

This use of `output_esc` is an extension of functionality of previous implementations of `output_esc`, which specified that `output_esc` should only talk to output devices (e.g., displays and plotters), not input devices, such as locators.

* A “9” as the tens digit in the `input_esc` opcode indicates a locator opcode.

Raster Device Escape Operations

Operation Selector	Function
52	<p>Dump graphics of the currently active display device if it is the console or a bit-mapped display. Graphics will be dumped to the graphics printer (PRINTER:); if color, all planes are ORed.</p> <p>For the 98542A and 98543A low-resolution bit-mapped displays, the computer dumps the image on the CRT using 1024 x 800 dots on the printer, giving a large, coarse-grained representation. Each screen graphics DGL "paired" pixel is represented by a 2 x 2 square of dots on the printer. This is the same result as is produced by pressing the DUMP ALPHA or DUMP GRAPHICS keys.</p> <p>For the 98544A, 98545A, 98547A, 98548A, 98549A, 98550A, 98700A high-resolution bit-mapped displays, and the 362/382 internal bit-mapped displays, the image is dumped bit-for-bit; the image on the printer comes out with each screen pixel represented by one printer dot.</p>
53	<p>Await vertical blanking. This escape function will not exit until the CRT is performing vertical blanking.</p> <p>The following example shows how to use this function when changing the color table to reduce flicker.</p> <pre>OUTPUT_ESC (53, 0, 0, dummy, dummy, error); SET_COLOR_TABLE (0, r, g, b);</pre> <p>The color table is not changed until the crt is blank (during a refresh cycle). Otherwise changing the color map in the middle of a scan would create a screen that was half the old color, and half the new color for one frame (1/60 sec). To the eye this would look like a flicker.</p>
54	<p>For the 98542A and 98544A low-resolution bit-mapped displays, only the even-numbered frame-buffer pixels in a row are dumped. Graphics images are not degraded, however, because of the paired pixels which are used for graphics but not used for alpha. Alpha characters do not use pixel pairs but individual pixels. Thus, they lose internal detail when dumped with this operation selector, as half the pixel columns in the character cell are not printed. However, they are usually still readable.</p> <p>For the 98544A, 98545A, 98547A, 98548A, 98549A, 98550A, 98700A high-resolution bit-mapped displays, and the 362/382 internal bit-mapped displays, the image is dumped as with operation selector 52.</p> <p>For non-bit-mapped displays, operation selector 54 is ignored.</p>
250	<p>Specify device limits.</p> <p>REAL Array [1] = Points (dots) per mm in X direction REAL Array [2] = Points (dots) per mm in Y direction</p>
1050 ¹	<p>Turn on or off the graphics display.</p> <p>INTEGER array [1] = 0 → turn display off. INTEGER array [1] <> 0 → turn display on.</p>
1051 ¹	<p>Turn on or off the alpha display.</p> <p>INTEGER array [1] = 0 → turn display off. INTEGER array [1] <> 0 → turn display on.</p>
1052	<p>Set special drawing modes. Using this escape function will redefine the meaning of the set color attribute. For details on how a given drawing mode affects a color see "Drawing Modes" in SET_COLOR. This drawing mode does not apply to device dependent polygons. Out of range values default to dominate drawing mode.</p> <p>INTEGER array[1] = 0 → Dominate drawing mode. = 1 → Non-dominate drawing mode. = 2 → Erase drawing mode. = 3 → Complement drawing mode.</p>

¹ This operation is not available for the Model 237, HP 98542, HP 98545, HP 98547, HP 98549, and HP 98700.

Operation Selector	Function																											
1053	<p>Dump graphics (from the specified color planes) to the graphics printer (PRINTER:). Also dumps graphics on a Model 237 if it is the currently active display.</p> <p>INTEGER array [1] = Color plane selection code.</p> <p>BIT 0 = 1 → Select plane 1. (Blue on HP 98627A)</p> <p>BIT 1 = 1 → Select plane 2. (Green on HP 98627A)</p> <p>BIT 2 = 1 → Select plane 3. (Red on HP 98627A)</p> <p>BIT 3 = 1 → Select plane 4.</p>																											
1054	<p>Clear selected graphics planes.</p> <p>INTEGER Array [1] = 0 - Clear all planes INTEGER Array [1] <> 0 - Color plane selection code.</p> <p>BIT 0 = 1 Clear plane 0 (Blue on HP 98627A)</p> <p>BIT 1 = 1 Clear plane 1 (Green on HP 98627A)</p> <p>BIT 2 = 1 Clear plane 2 (Red on HP 98627A)</p> <p>BIT 3 = 1 Clear plane 3</p> <p>BIT 4 = 1 Clear plane 4</p> <p>BIT 5 = 1 Clear plane 5</p> <p>BIT 6 = 1 Clear plane 6</p> <p>BIT 7 = 1 Clear plane 7</p>																											
10050	<p>Set all color table locations for color raster graphics displays. This escape function allows the user to change all locations in the hardware color map with one procedure. The software maintained color table will be updated by this call. This escape function is the same as calling SET_COLOR_TABLE with indexes 0 - n.</p> <p>REAL Array [1] = Parm1 REAL Array [2] = Parm2 Index 0 REAL Array [3] = Parm3</p> <p>REAL Array [4] = Parm1 REAL Array [5] = Parm2 Index 1 REAL Array [6] = Parm3</p> <p>⋮</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Model</th> <th>Planes</th> <th>Colors</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>236C</td> <td>4</td> <td>0 ... 15</td> </tr> <tr> <td>98543A</td> <td>4</td> <td>0 ... 15</td> </tr> <tr> <td>98545A</td> <td>4</td> <td>0 ... 15</td> </tr> <tr> <td>98547A</td> <td>6</td> <td>0 ... 63</td> </tr> <tr> <td>98549A</td> <td>6</td> <td>0 ... 63</td> </tr> <tr> <td>98550A</td> <td>8</td> <td>0 ... 225</td> </tr> <tr> <td>98700A</td> <td>8</td> <td>0 ... 225</td> </tr> <tr> <td>362/382</td> <td>8</td> <td>0 ... 255</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Parm1, Parm2, and Parm3 are defined to be the same as used with SET_COLOR_TABLE.</p>	Model	Planes	Colors	236C	4	0 ... 15	98543A	4	0 ... 15	98545A	4	0 ... 15	98547A	6	0 ... 63	98549A	6	0 ... 63	98550A	8	0 ... 225	98700A	8	0 ... 225	362/382	8	0 ... 255
Model	Planes	Colors																										
236C	4	0 ... 15																										
98543A	4	0 ... 15																										
98545A	4	0 ... 15																										
98547A	6	0 ... 63																										
98549A	6	0 ... 63																										
98550A	8	0 ... 225																										
98700A	8	0 ... 225																										
362/382	8	0 ... 255																										

The size of the INTEGER array must equal 0 and the size of the REAL array is three times the number of colors.

The following tables show which escape codes are supported on which Series 200/300 raster displays:

Operation Selector	216	217	220	226	236	236 Color	237	98627A
52	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
53	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no	no
250	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
1050	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	no	yes
1051	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	no	no
1052	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
1053	no	no	no	no	no	yes	yes	yes
1054	yes	no	no	yes	yes	yes	no	yes
10050	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no	no

Operation Selector	98542A	98543A	98544A	98545A	98547A	98548A	98549A	98550A	98700A
52	yes								
53	yes								
54	yes								
250	yes								
1050	no								
1051	no								
1052	yes								
1053	no								
1054	yes								
10050	no	yes	no	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	yes

Operation Selector	362/382
52	yes
53	yes
54	yes
250	yes
1050	no
1051	no
1052	yes
1053	no
1054	yes
10050	yes

HPGL Plotter Escape Operations

Operation Selector	Function
1052*	Enable cutter. Provides means to control the Plotter paper cutters. Paper is cut after it is advanced. INTEGER array [1] = 0 Cutter is disabled. INTEGER array [1] <> 0 Cutter is enabled.
1052	Set automatic pen. This instruction provides a means for utilizing the smart pen options of the plotter. Initially, all automatic pen options are enabled. INTEGER array [1]: BIT 0 = 1 Lift pen if it has been down for 60 seconds. BIT 1 = 1 Put pen away if it has been motionless for 20 seconds. BIT 2 = 1 Do not select a pen until a command which makes a mark. This causes the pen to remain in the turret for the longest possible time.
1053	Advance the paper either one half or a full page. INTEGER array [1] = 0 >> Advance page half INTEGER array [1] <> 0 >> Advance page full
2050	Select pen velocity. This instruction allows the user to modify the plotter's pen speed. Pen speed may be set from 1 to the maximum for the given device. INTEGER array [1] = Pen speed (INTEGER from 1 to device max). INTEGER array [2] = Pen number (INTEGER from 1 to 8; other integers select all pens)
2051	Select pen force. The force may be set from 10 to 66 gram-weights. INTEGER array [1] = Pen force (INTEGER from 1 to 8). 1: 10 gram-weights 2: 18 gram-weights 3: 26 gram-weights 4: 34 gram-weights 5: 42 gram-weights 6: 50 gram-weights 7: 58 gram-weights 8: 66 gram-weights INTEGER array [2] = Pen number (INTEGER 1 to 8; other integers select all pens)
2052	Select pen acceleration. The acceleration may be set from 1 to 4 G's. INTEGER array [1] = Pen acceleration (INTEGER from 1 to 4). INTEGER array [2] = Pen number (INTEGER 1 to 8; other integers select all pens)

Operation Selector *	9872	7470	7475	7550	7575A	7576A	7580	7585	7586	7440A	7570A	7595A	7596
1052 *	S/T	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no
1052	no	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	yes
1053	S/T	no	no	yes	yes	yes	no	no	yes	no	no	no	yes
2050	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
2051	no	no	yes	yes	no	no	yes	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	yes
2052	no	no	yes	yes	no	no	yes	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	yes

* Note that some plotters may accept these opcodes, but perform no action with them (they are NOPs). This is done for compatibility purposes.

Operation * Selector	9872	7470	7475	7550	7575A	7576A	7580
1052 *	S/T	no	no	no	no	no	no
1052	no	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
1053	S/T	no	no	yes	yes	yes	no
2050	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
2051	no	no	yes	yes	no	no	yes
2052	no	no	yes	yes	no	no	yes

Operation* Selector	7585	7586	7440A	7570A	7595A/B	7596A/B	7599A
1052*	no	no	no	no	no	no	no
1052	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	yes	yes
1053	no	yes	no	no	no	yes	yes
2050	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
2051	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	yes	yes
2052	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	yes	yes

* Note that some plotters may accept these opcodes, but perform no action with them (they are NOPs). This is done for compatibility purposes.

The 7595B, 7596B and 7599A plotters are only supported in 7595A or 7596A emulation mode.

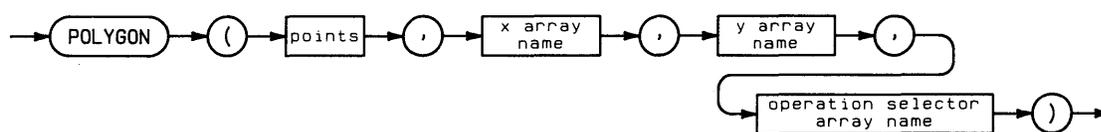
B-74.2 Graphics Procedure Reference

POLYGON

```
IMPORT: dgl_types
       dgl_lib
       dgl_poly
```

This **procedure** displays a polygon-set starting and ending at the specified point adhering to the specified polygon style exactly as specified (i.e., device-independent results).

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
points	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT
x array name	Array of TYPE REAL.	—
y array name	Array of TYPE REAL.	—
operation selector array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	— 32 768 to 32 767

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE POLYGON (
    Npoint : INTEGER;
    ANYVAR Xvec : Greal_list;
    ANYVAR Yvec : Greal_list;
    ANYVAR Decodes : Gshortint_list);
```

Semantics

Points is the number of vertices in the polygon set.

The **x** and **y coordinate arrays** contain the world coordinate values for each vertex of the polygon-set. The vertices must be in order. The vertices for the first sub-polygon must be at the beginning of these arrays, followed by the vertices for the second sub-polygon, etc. So, the coordinate arrays must contain a total number of vertices that equals **points**.

The **operation selector array** contains a series of integer operation selectors defining which vertices start new polygons, and defining which edges should be displayed.

Value	Meaning
0	Don't display the line for the edge extending to this vertex from the previous vertex.
1	Display the line for the edge extending to this vertex from the previous vertex.
2	This vertex is the first vertex of a sub-polygon. Succeeding vertices are part of a sub-polygon until a new start-of-polygon operation selector (2) is encountered. (Or the end of the arrays is encountered.)

Note

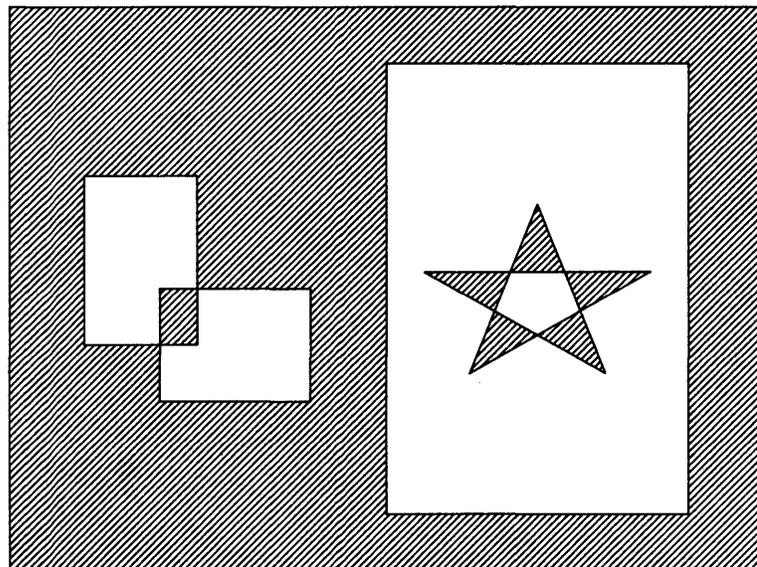
The first entry in the operation selector array **must** be 2, since it is the first vertex of a sub-polygon.

POLYGON is used to output a polygon-set, specified in world coordinates, adhering exactly to the polygon style attributes that are currently specified. A polygon-set is a set of polygons (called "sub-polygons") that are treated graphically as one polygon. This is accomplished by "stacking" the sub-polygons. The subpolygons in a polygon-set may intersect or overlap each other.

The edge of a sub-polygon is defined as the line sequence that connects its vertices in the order specified. If the last vertex specified for a sub-polygon is not the same as the first, they are automatically connected.

When a polygon-set is displayed, the primitive attributes for polygons and lines define its appearance. In particular, the interior of the polygon-set will be filled according to the attributes of polygon style, polygon interior color and polygon interior line-style. If the edges are to be displayed as specified in the polygon style, the edges will adhere to the current line attributes of color, line-style and line-width. A dot will disappear on an edged polygon if the edge is done with a complementing line.

The filling of polygons also depends on how the sub-polygons "nest" within each other. An "even-odd" rule is used for determining which areas will be filled. Moving across the screen, count the edges of the polygon. Odd-numbered edges will turn the fill on and even-numbered edges will turn the fill off. The picture below will help clear up how the fills work.



Polygon Filling

Refer to SET_PGN_TABLE, SET_PGN_STYLE, SET_PGN_COLOR, SET_PGN_LS for a more detailed description of how attributes affect polygons.

As stated above, the values in the operation selector array define how the edges of the sub-polygons are displayed. The edge from the (I-1)th vertex to the Ith vertex will only be displayed if the Ith entry in the operation selector array equals 1. To display the edge from the last vertex to the first vertex of a sub-polygon, the first vertex must be explicitly respecified after all the other vertices of the sub-polygon, with an operation selector equal to 1. Otherwise the edge from the last vertex to the first will not be drawn. It will, however, automatically be connected for polygon filling.

If it is within the capabilities of the device, filling of the sub-polygon will be done to the sub-polygon edges regardless of whether the edges are displayed. If an entry in the operation selector array does not equal 0, 1, or 2, it will be treated as if it were equal to 0 and the edge will not be drawn.

When POLYGON is used, the current position is updated to the end of the last sub-polygon specified in the polygon-set. The end of the last sub-polygon is defined to be the first (implicit last) vertex of the subpolygon. So, if there is only one vertex in a polygon-set this call degenerates to an update of the current position to the first coordinate set in the x and y point arrays (x coordinate array[1], y coordinate array[1]).

It is the application program's responsibility to ensure that the arrays are all dimensioned to at least the number of elements specified by points and that at least that many values are contained in each array.

Polygons are defined to be closed surfaces. When a sub-polygon extends beyond a clipping edge the closed nature of the sub-polygon is destroyed. As with other primitives, unpredictable results may occur if the sub-polygon extends beyond the clipping window.

Error Conditions

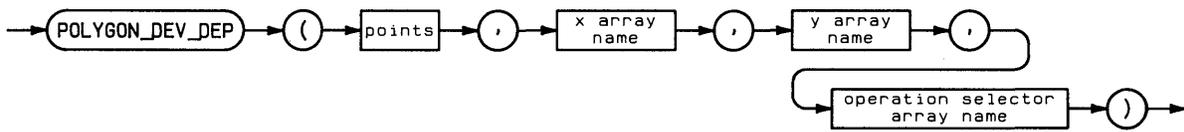
The graphics system must be initialized, a graphics display must be enabled, all parameters must be within specified limits and the number of points specified must be greater than 0 or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

POLYGON_DEV_DEP

IMPORT: dgl_types
 dgl_lib
 dgl_poly

This **procedure** displays a polygon-set starting and ending at the specified point adhering to the specified polygon style in a device-dependent fashion.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
points	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT
x array name	Array of TYPE REAL.	-
y array name	Array of TYPE REAL.	-
operation selector array name	Array of TYPE <i>Gshortint</i> . <i>Gshortint</i> is a sub-range of INTEGER.	-32 768 to 32 767

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE POLYGON_DEV_DEP (
    Npoint : INTEGER;
    ANYVAR Xvec : Greal_list;
    ANYVAR Yvec : Greal_list;
    ANYVAR Dpcodes : Gshortint_list);
```

Semantics

Points is the number of vertices in the polygon set.

The **x** and **y coordinate arrays** contain the world coordinate values for each vertex of the polygon-set. The vertices must be in order. The vertices for the first sub-polygon must be at the beginning of these arrays, followed by the vertices for the second sub-polygon, etc. So, the coordinate arrays must contain a total number of vertices that equals points.

The **operation selector array** contains a series of integer operation selectors defining which vertices start new polygons, and defining which edges should be displayed.

Value	Meaning
0	Don't display the line for the edge extending to this vertex from the previous vertex.
1	Display the line for the edge extending to this vertex from the previous vertex.
2	This vertex is the first vertex of a sub-polygon. Succeeding vertices are part of a sub-polygon until a new start-of-polygon operation selector (2) is encountered. (Or the end of the arrays is encountered.)

Note

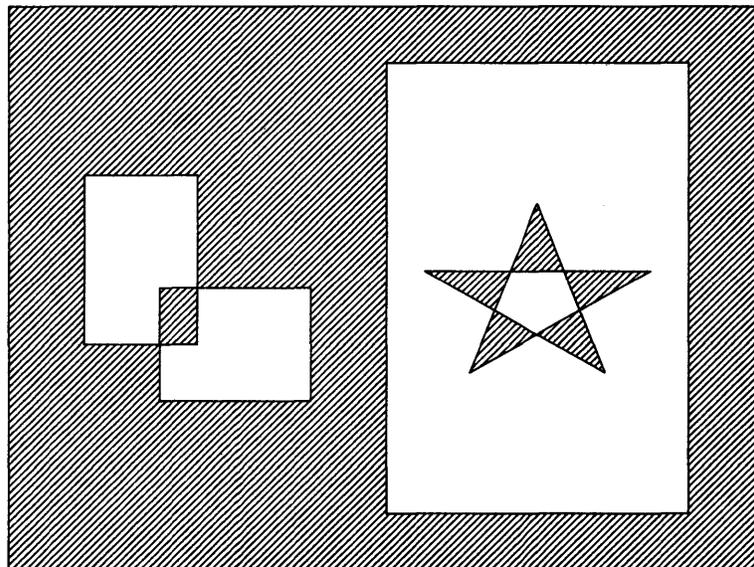
The first entry in the operation selector array **must** be 2, since it is the first vertex of a sub-polygon.

POLYGON_DEV_DEP is used to output a polygon-set, specified in world coordinates, adhering (within the capabilities of the device) to the polygon style attributes that are currently specified. A polygon-set is a set of polygons (called "sub-polygons") that are treated graphically as one polygon. The subpolygons in a polygon-set may intersect or overlap each other.

The edge of a sub-polygon is defined as the line sequence that connects its vertices in the order specified. If the last vertex specified for a sub-polygon is not the same as the first, they are automatically connected.

When a polygon-set is displayed, the primitive attributes for polygons and lines define its appearance. In particular, the interior of the polygon-set will be filled according to the attributes of polygon style, polygon interior color and polygon interior line-style. If the edges are to be displayed as specified in the polygon style, the edges will adhere to the current line attributes of color, line-style and line-width.

The filling of polygons also depends on how the sub-polygons "nest" within each other. An "even-odd" rule is used for determining which areas will be filled. Moving across the screen, count the edges of the polygon. Odd-numbered edges will turn the fill on and even-numbered edges will turn the fill off. The picture below will help clear up how the fills work.



Polygon Filling

Refer to SET_PGN_TABLE, SET_PGN_STYLE, SET_PGN_COLOR, SET_PGN_LS for a more detailed description of how attributes affect polygons.

As stated above, the values in the operation selector array define how the edges of the sub-polygons are displayed. The edge from the (I-1)th vertex to the Ith vertex will only be displayed if the Ith entry in the operation selector array equals 1. To display the edge from the last vertex to the first vertex of a sub-polygon, the first vertex must be explicitly respecified after all the other vertices of the sub-polygon, with an operation selector equal to 1. Otherwise the edge from the last vertex to the first will not be drawn. It will, however, automatically be connected for polygon filling.

If it is within the capabilities of the device, filling of the sub-polygon will be done to the sub-polygon edges regardless of whether the edges are displayed. If an entry in the operation selector array does not equal 0, 1, or 2, it will be treated as if it were equal to 0, i.e., the edge will not be drawn.

When POLYGON_DEV_DEP is used, the current position is updated to the end of the last sub-polygon specified in the polygon-set. The end of the last sub-polygon is defined to be the first (implicit last) vertex of the subpolygon. So, if there is only one vertex in a polygon-set this call degenerates to an update of the current position to the first coordinate set in the x and y point arrays (x coordinate array[1], y coordinate array[1]).

It is the application program's responsibility to ensure that the arrays are all dimensioned to at least the number of elements specified by points and that at least that many values are contained in each array.

Device capabilities vary widely. Not all devices are able to draw polygon edges as requested. If a device is not able to draw polygon edges as requested, they will be simulated in software. The simulation will always adhere to the edge value in SET_PGN_STYLE and the operation selector in POLYGON_DEV_DEP, but the line-style and color of the edge will depend on the capability of the device to produce lines with those attributes.

Polygon fill capabilities can vary widely between devices. A device may have no filling capabilities at all, may be able to perform only solid fill, or may be able to fill polygons with different fill densities and at different fill line orientations. POLYGON_DEV_DEP tries to match the device capabilities to the request. If the device cannot fill the request at all, then no simulation is done and the polygon will not be filled. For HPGL plotters, the fill is simulated. For raster devices, if the density is greater than 0.5, a solid fill is used, otherwise, the fill is simulated.

In the case where the polygon style specifies non-display of edged, this would result in no visible output although visible output had been specified. To provide some visible output in this case, POLYGON_DEV_DEP will outline the polygon using the color and line-style specified for the fill lines. However, only those edge segments specified as displayable by the operation selector array will be drawn. Therefore, if all edge segments are specified as non-displayed, there will still be no visible output.

Regardless of the capabilities of the device, POLYGON_DEV_DEP sets the starting position to the first vertex of the last member polygon specified in the call. If there is only one polygon specified, the starting position will therefore be set to the first vertex specified.

Polygons are defined to be closed surfaces. When a sub-polygon extends beyond a clipping edge the closed nature of the sub-polygon is destroyed. As with other primitives, unpredictable results may occur if the sub-polygon extends beyond the clipping window.

Error Conditions

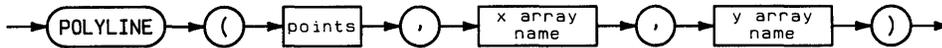
The graphics system must be initialized, a graphics display must be enabled, all parameters must be within specified limits and the number of points (Points) must be greater than 0 or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

POLYLINE

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** draws a connected line sequence starting at the specified point.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
points	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT
x array name	Array of TYPE REAL.	-
y array name	Array of TYPE REAL.	-

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE POLYLINE (      Npts      : INTEGER;
                       ANYVAR Xvec, Yvec : Greal_list )
  
```

Semantics

Points is the number of vertices in the polygon set.

The **x** and **y coordinate arrays** contain the world coordinate values for each vertex of the polyline-set. The vertices must be in order. The vertices for the first sub-polyline must be at the beginning of these arrays, followed by the vertices for the second sub-polyline, etc. So, the coordinate arrays must contain a total number of vertices that equals points.

The procedure POLYLINE provides the capability to draw a series of connected lines starting at the specified point. A complete object can be drawn by making one call to this procedure. This call first sets the starting position to be the first elements in the x and y coordinate arrays. The line sequence begins at this point and is drawn to the second element in each array, then to the third and continues until points-1 lines are drawn.

This procedure is equivalent to the following sequence of calls:

```

MOVE (X_coordinate_array[1],Y_coordinate_array[1]);
LINE (X_coordinate_array[2],Y_coordinate_array[2]);
LINE (X_coordinate_array[3],Y_coordinate_array[3]);
  :
  :
LINE (X_coordinate_array[Points],Y_coordinate_array[Points]);
  
```

The starting position is set to (X_coordinate_array[Points], Y_coordinate_array[Points]) at the completion of this call.

Specifying only one element, or Points equal to 1, causes a move to be made to the world coordinate point specified by the first entries in the two coordinate arrays.

It is the application program's responsibility to ensure that the arrays are all dimensioned to at least the number of elements specified by points and that at least that many values are contained in each array.

Depending on the nature of the current line-style nothing may appear on the graphics display. See `SET_LINE_STYLE` for a complete description of how line-style effects a particular point or vector.

The primitive attributes of color, line-style, and line-width apply to polylines.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized, a graphics display must be enabled, all parameters must be within specified limits and the number of points (points) must be greater than 0 or the call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

SAMPLE_LOCATOR

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** samples the current locator device

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
echo selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT
x coordinate name	Variable of TYPE REAL	-
y coordinate name	Variable of TYPE REAL	-

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE SAMPLE_LOCATOR (      Echo   : INTEGER;
                              VAR Wx, Wy : REAL    );
    
```

Semantics

The **echo selector** determines the level of input echoing. Possible values are:

- 0 - No echo.
- ≥1 - Echo on the locator device.

The **x** and **y coordinates** are the values of the coordinates, expressed in world coordinate units, returned from the enabled locator device.

SAMPLE_LOCATOR returns the current world coordinate value of the locator without waiting for any user intervention. Typically, the locator is sampled in applications involving the continuous input of data points that are very close together.

If the point sampled is outside of the current logical locator limits, the transformed point will still be returned .

The number of echoes supported by a locator device and the correlation between the echo value and the type of echoing performed is device dependent. Most locator devices support at least one form of echoing. Possible echoes are beeping, displaying the point sampled, etc. See the locator descriptions below to find the locators supported by the various devices. If the echo value is larger than the number of echoes supported by the enabled locator device, then echo 1 will be used.

Locator echoing can only be performed on the locator device. The locator echo position is not used in conjunction with any echoes performed while sampling a locator.

SAMPLE_LOCATOR implicitly makes the picture current before sampling the locator.

Relative Locators (Knob or Mouse) – LOCATOR_INIT Selector 2

The keyboard beeper is sounded when the locator is sampled if an echo is selected (echo selector ≥ 1). The sample locator function returns the last AWAIT_LOCATOR result or 0.0, 0.0 if AWAIT_LOCATOR has not been invoked since LOCATOR_INIT.

Absolute Locators (HPGL Plotter or Graphics Tablet)

The SAMPLE_LOCATOR function returns the current locator position, without waiting for an operator response (pen position on plotters). On a 9111A Graphics Tablet, the beeper is sounded when the stylus is depressed. For echo selectors greater than or equal to 9, the same echo as echo selector 1 is used.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized and a locator device enabled or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

HP-HIL Absolute Locator Semantics

The value of ECHO defines an echoing mechanism for feedback to the user. Echo has the same meaning as when applied to a HP 9111A (HP-IB) Graphics Tablet.

W_x and W_y are the world coordinate real values returned by the locator when SAMPLE_LOCATOR is called. SAMPLE_LOCATOR does not wait for a button to be pressed before returning to the calling program; it merely gets the XY coordinate pair as fast as it can, and returns.

HP-HIL Relative Locator Semantics – LOCATOR_INIT Selector 202

The value of ECHO defines an echoing mechanism for feedback to the user. Echo has the same meaning as when applied to an HP-HIL absolute locator.

W_x and W_y are the world coordinate real values returned by the locator when SAMPLE_LOCATOR is called. SAMPLE_LOCATOR does not wait for a button to be pressed before returning to the calling program; it merely gets the XY coordinate pair as fast as it can.

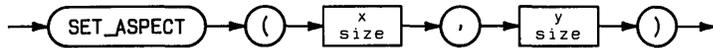
Unlike the situation encountered when using LOCATOR_INIT with a selector of 2, DGL returns a useful value for SAMPLE_LOCATOR in this case. This is because DGL is “looking at” the locator continuously from execution of LOCATOR_INIT, and “sees” motions of the locator device any time after that.

SET_ASPECT

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** redefines the aspect ratio of the virtual coordinate system.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
x size	Expression of TYPE REAL	>0
y size	Expression of TYPE REAL	>0

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_ASPECT ( X_size, Y_size : REAL );
```

Semantics

The **x size** is the width of the virtual coordinate system in dimensionless units. The size must be greater than zero.

The **y size** is the height of the virtual coordinate system in dimensionless units. The size must be greater than zero.

SET_ASPECT sets the aspect ratio of the virtual coordinate system, and hence the view surface, to be y size divided by x size. A ratio of 1 defines a square virtual coordinate system, a ratio greater than 1 specifies it to be higher than it is wide; and a ratio less than 1 specifies it to be wider than it is high. Since x size and y size are used to form a ratio, they may be expressed in any units as long as they are the same units.

The range of coordinates for the virtual coordinate system is calculated based on the value of the aspect ratio. The coordinates of the longer axis are always set to range from 0.0 to 1.0 and those of the shorter axis from 0 to a value that achieves the specified aspect ratio. SET_ASPECT defines the limits of the virtual coordinate system.

ASPECT RATIO (AR)	X LIMITS	Y LIMITS
AR < 1	0.0, 1.0	0.0, 1.0 * AR
AR = 1	0.0, 1.0	0.0, 1.0
AR > 1	0.0, 1.0 / AR	0.0, 1.0

When a call to SET_ASPECT is made, the graphics system sets the viewport equal to the limits of the virtual coordinate system. This routine can therefore be used to access the entire logical display surface. A program could display an image on the entire Model 226 graphics display, which has an aspect ratio of 399/299, in the following manner:

```
SET_ASPECT ( 399, 299 );
```

To set the aspect ratio to the entire display in a device independent manor, INQ_WS may be used as follows:

```
PROCEDURE Set_max_aspect;

    CONST    Get_aspect=254;

VAR        Dummy      : INTEGER;
           Error      : INTEGER;
           Ratio_list: ARRAY[1..2] OF REAL;

    BEGIN {PROCEDURE Set_max_aspect}
           INQ_WS (Get_aspect,0,0,2,Dummy,Dummy, Ratio_list, Error);
           IF Error=0 THEN
               SET_ASPECT(1.0,Ratio_list[2]);
    END; {PROCEDURE Set_max_aspect}
```

The initial value of the aspect ratio is 1, setting the virtual coordinate system to be a square. This square is mapped to the largest inscribed square on any display surface, so that the viewable area is maximized. As a result, the initial virtual coordinate system limits range from 0.0 to 1.0 in both the X and Y directions. A program can access the largest inscribed rectangle on any display surface by modifying the value of the aspect ratio. The exact placement of the rectangle on the display surface is device dependent, but it is centered on CRT's and justified in the lower left hand corner of plotters.

The starting position is not altered by this call. Since this call redefines the viewing transformation, the starting position may no longer represent the last world coordinate position. A call to MOVE or INT_MOVE should therefore be made after this call to update the starting position.

If the logical locator is associated with the same physical device as the graphics display, then a call to SET_ASPECT will set the logical locator limits equal to the new limits of the virtual coordinate system.

Since the window is not affected by the SET_ASPECT procedure, distortion may result in the window to viewport mapping if the window does not have the same aspect ratio as the virtual coordinate system (see SET_WINDOW).

The locator echo position is set to the default value by this procedure.

Error Conditions

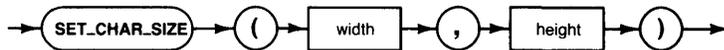
The graphics system must be initialized and both X and Y size must be greater than zero or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

SET_CHAR_SIZE

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** sets the character size attribute for graphical text.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
width	Expression of TYPE REAL	-
height	Expression of TYPE REAL	-

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_CHAR_SIZE ( Width, Height : REAL );
```

Semantics

The **width** is the requested graphics character cell width in world coordinate units. (width <> 0.0)

The **height** is the requested graphics character cell height in world coordinate units. (height <> 0.0)

SET_CHAR_SIZE sets the character size for subsequently output graphics text. The absolute value of width and height are used to specify the world coordinate size of a character cell. Therefore, the actual physical size of a character output is determined by applying the current viewing transformations to the world coordinate units specification.

The default character size (set by GRAPHICS_INIT and DISPLAY_INIT) is dependent upon the physical device associated with the graphical display device. The size is determined as follows:

- Height := .05 x (height of the world coordinate system)
- Width := .035 x (width of the world coordinate system)

If a change is made to the viewing transformation (by SET_WINDOW, SET_VIEWPORT, SET_DISPLAY_LIM, or SET_ASPECT), the value of the character size attribute will not be changed, but the actual size of the characters generated may be modified.

Error Conditions

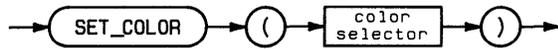
The graphics system must be initialized, a display must be enabled, and width and height must both be non-zero or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSERROR will return a non-zero value.

SET_COLOR

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** sets the color attribute for output primitives except for polygon interior fill.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
color selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	-

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_COLOR ( Color : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

SET_COLOR sets the color attribute for the following primitives:

- Lines
- Markers
- Polylines
- Polygon Edges
- Text

At device initialization a default color table is created by the graphics system. The size and contents of the table are device dependent. At least one entry exists for all devices. A call to INQ_WS with OPCODE equal to 1053 will return the number of colors available on a given graphics device. Some devices allow the color table to be modified with SET_TABLE.

The **color selector** is an index into the color table. The contents of the color table are then used to specify the color when primitives are drawn. On some devices (HPGL plotters), the color selector maps directly to a pen number for the device. On the color map machines, the entries in the color table can be modified with SET_COLOR_TABLE.

The default value of the color attribute is 1. If the value of the color selector is not supported on the graphics display, the color attribute will be set to 1.

A color selector of 0 has special effects depending on the graphics display used. For raster devices, a color selector of 0 means to draw in the background color. For most plotters, it puts the pen away.

If the device is not capable of reproducing a color in the color table, the closest color which the device is capable of reproducing is used instead. On some devices, this may depend on the primitive being displayed. For example, the HP98627A color output interface card is capable of a large selection of polygon fill colors, but only 8 line colors. Thus, the fill color could match the selected color much more closely than the line color used to outline the polygon.

Default Raster Color Map

The following table shows the default (initial) color table for the black and white displays (computer models 216, 220, 226, 236, 237, HP 98542A, HP 98544A, and HP 98548A):

Index #	Hue	Saturation	Luminosity
0	0	0	0
1	0	0	1.0000
2	0	0	0.9375
3	0	0	0.8750
4	0	0	0.8125
5	0	0	0.7500
6	0	0	0.6875
7	0	0	0.6250
8	0	0	0.5625
9	0	0	0.5000
10	0	0	0.4375
11	0	0	0.3750
12	0	0	0.3125
13	0	0	0.2500
14	0	0	0.1875
15	0	0	0.1250
16	0	0	0.0625

Colors 17 though 31 are set to white.

The following table shows the default (initial) color table for the color displays (computer model 236C, HP 98627, HP 98543A, HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98550A, HP 98700A, and 362/382 internal bitmapped displays).

Index #	Color name	Red	Green	Blue
0	Black	0.000000	0.000000	0.000000
1	White	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000
2	Red	1.000000	0.000000	0.000000
3	Yellow	1.000000	1.000000	0.000000
4	Green	0.000000	1.000000	0.000000
5	Cyan	0.000000	1.000000	1.000000
6	Blue	0.000000	0.000000	1.000000
7	Magenta	1.000000	0.000000	1.000000
8	Black	0.000000	0.000000	0.000000
9	Olive green	0.800000	0.733333	0.200000
10	Aqua	0.200000	0.400000	0.466667
11	Royal blue	0.533333	0.400000	0.666667
12	Violet	0.800000	0.266667	0.400000
13	Brick red	1.000000	0.400000	0.200000
14	Burnt orange	1.000000	0.466667	0.000000
15	Grey brown	0.866667	0.533333	0.266667

Colors 9 though 15 are a graphic designers idea of colors for business graphics. Color table entries not shown above are set to white.

Raster Drawing Modes

For raster devices (e.g. Model 236 display) the effect of the color selectors depends on the current drawing mode (drawing mode is set using the OUTPUT_ESC function). The color selectors and their effects are listed below:

Mode	Color Selector = 0	Color Selector >= 1
DOMINATE (Default mode)	Background (erase, set bits to 0)	Draw (set bits to 1, overwrite current pattern)
NON-DOMINATE	Background (erase, set bits to 0)	Draw (set bits to 1 inclusive OR with current pattern)
ERASE	Background (erase, set bits to 0)	Background (erase, set bits to 0)
COMPLEMENT	Background (erase, set bits to 0)	Complement (invert bits in selected planes)

Plotters

A Color Selector of 0 selects no pens (the current pen is put away). The supported range of Color Selectors for each supported plotter is:

- 9872A - 0 through 4
- 9872B - 0 through 4
- 9872C/S/T - 0 through 8
- 7550A&B/7570A/7575A/7576A/7580A/7585A/7586A/7595A&B/7596A&B/7599A - 0 through 8
- 7470A - 0 through 2
- 7475A - 0 through 6

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized and a display must be enabled. Otherwise, this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

SET_COLOR_MODEL

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** chooses the color model for interpreting parameters in the color table.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
model selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT	1 or 2

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_COLOR_MODEL (MODEL:integer);
```

Semantics

The **model selector** determines the color model which will be used to interpret the values passed to the color table with SET_COLOR_TABLE or read from it with INQ_COLOR_TABLE.

Value	Meaning
1	RGB (Red-Green-Blue) color cube.
2	HSL (Hue-Saturation-Luminosity) color cylinder.

The RGB physical model is a color cube with the primary additive colors (red, green, and blue) as its axes. With this model, a call to SET_COLOR_TABLE specifies a point within the color cube that has a red intensity value (X-coordinate), a green intensity value (Y-coordinate) and a blue intensity value (Z-coordinate). Each value ranges from zero (no intensity) to one.

Effects of RGB color parameters

Parm 1 (RED)	Parm 2 (GREEN)	Parm 3 (BLUE)	Resultant color
1.0	1.0	1.0	White
1.0	0.0	0.0	Red
1.0	1.0	0.0	Yellow
0.0	1.0	0.0	Green
0.0	1.0	1.0	Cyan
0.0	0.0	1.0	Blue
1.0	0.0	1.0	Magenta
0.0	0.0	0.0	Black

The HSL perceptual model is a color cylinder in which:

- The angle about the axis of the cylinder, in fractions of a circle is the hue (red is at 0, green is at 1/3 and blue is at 2/3).
- The radius is the saturation. Along the center axis of the cylinder, (saturation equal zero) the colors range from white through grey to black. Along the outside of the cylinder (saturation equal one) the colors are saturated with no apparent whiteness.
- The height along the center axis is the luminosity (the intensity or brightness per unit area). Black is at the bottom of the cylinder (luminosity equal zero) and the brightest colors are at the top of the cylinder (luminosity equal one) with white at the center top.

Hue (angle), saturation (radius), and luminosity (height) all range from zero to one. Using this model, a call to SET_COLOR_TABLE specifies a point within the color cylinder that has a hue value, a saturation value, and a luminosity value.

Effects of HSL color parameters

Parm 1 (Hue)	Parm 2 (Sat)	Parm 3 (Lum)	Resultant color
Don't Care	0.0	1.0	White
0.0 or 1	1.0	1.0	Red
1/6	1.0	1.0	Yellow
2/6	1.0	1.0	Green
3/6	1.0	1.0	Cyan
4/6	1.0	1.0	Blue
5/6	1.0	1.0	Magenta
Don't Care	Don't Care	0.0	Black

When a call to SET_COLOR_MODEL switches color models, parameter values in subsequent calls to SET_COLOR_TABLE then refer to the new model. Switching models does not affect color definitions that were previously made using another model. Note that when the value of a color table entry is inquired (INQ_COLOR_TABLE), it is returned in the current model, which may not be the model in which it was originally specified.

Not all color specifications can be displayed on every graphics device, since the devices which the graphics library supports differ in their capabilities. If color specification is not available on a device, the graphics system will request the closest available color.

Error Conditions

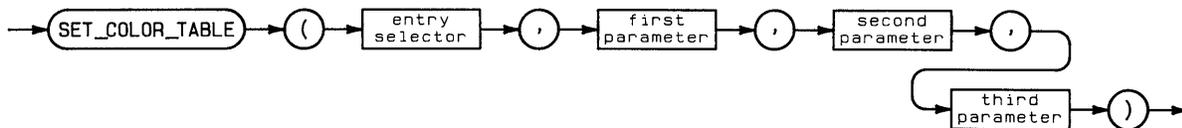
The graphics system must be initialized and the color selector must evaluate to 0 or 1 or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

SET_COLOR_TABLE

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** redefines the color description of the specified entry in the color table. This color definition is used when the color index is selected via SET_COLOR.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
entry selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT to MAXINT	device dependent (see below)
first parameter	Expression of TYPE REAL	0 thru 1	—
second parameter	Expression of TYPE REAL	0 thru 1	—
third parameter	Expression of TYPE REAL	0 thru 1	—

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE SET_COLOR_TABLE ( Index : INTEGER;
                           ColP1 : REAL;
                           ColP2 : REAL;
                           ColP3 : REAL    );
  
```

Semantics

SET_COLOR_TABLE is ignored by some devices (such as pen plotters) which do not allow their color table to be changed. The procedure INQ_WS (opcode 1073) tells whether the color table can be changed.

The **entry selector** specified the location in the color capability table that is to be redefined. For raster displays in Series 200/300 computers, and HP 98542A, HP 98543A, HP 98544A, HP 98545A, HP 98548A, and HP 98700A (4-plane) displays, 32 entries are available. For HP 98547A and HP 98549A displays, 80 entries are available. For HP 98700A 8-plane displays, HP 98550A displays, and 362/382 internal bit-mapped displays, 272 entries are available.

The **first parameter** represents red intensity if the RGB model has been selected with the SET COLOR statement, or hue if the HSL model has been selected.

The **second parameter** represents green intensity if the RGB model has been selected with the SET COLOR statement, or saturation if the HSL model has been selected.

The **third parameter** represents blue intensity if the RGB model has been selected, or luminosity if the HSL model has been selected.

A more detailed description of the color models and the meaning of their parameters can be found under the procedure definition of SET_COLOR_MODEL.

The effect of redefinition of the color table on previously output primitives is device dependent. On most devices, changing the color table will only affect future primitives. However, on the Model 236C, HP 98543A., HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98550A, and HP 98700A, changing a color table entry with a color selector not in the last 16 entries will immediately change the color of primitives previously drawn with that entry. The procedure INQ_WS (opcode 1071) tells whether retroactive color change is supported.

Monochromatic Displays

Changing an entry in the table will not affect the current display. However, future changes to the display will use the new contents of the table. Device-dependent polygons use the color table entry when performing dithering.

The color that lines are drawn with (black or white) is determined from the perceived intensity of the color table entry. This is calculated as follows:

```

if (red * 0.3 + green * 0.59 + blue * 0.11) > 0.1
  then
    color := white
  else
    color := black;

```

The HP 98627A Display

Changing an entry in the table will not affect the current display; however, future changes to the display will use the new contents of the table. Device dependent polygons use the color table entry when performing dithering.

The color that lines are drawn with (one of the 8 non-dithered colors) is determined from the closest HSL value to the requested value.

Model 236C, HP 98543A, HP 98545A, 4-Plane HP 98700A

The first 16 locations (0..15) of the color table map directly to the hardware color map. Changing one of these color table locations will immediately change the display (assuming the color has been used).

The next 16 locations (16..31) will not affect the current display; however, future changes to the display will use the new contents of the color table.

Device-dependent polygons drawn with color table locations 0..15 will be drawn in a solid color without using dithering. When drawn with color table location above 15 dithering will be used.

HP 98547A and HP 98549A

The first 64 locations (0..63) of the color table map directly to the hardware color map. Changing one of these color table locations will immediately change the display (assuming the color has been used).

The next 16 locations (64..79) will not affect the current display. However, future changes to the display will use the new contents of the color table.

Device-dependent polygons drawn with color table locations 0..63 will be drawn in a solid color without using dithering. When drawn with color table locations above 63, dithering will be used.

8-Plane HP 98700A, HP 98550A and 362/382 Internal Bitmapped Displays

The first 256 locations (0..255) of the color table map directly to the hardware color map. Changing one of these color table locations will immediately change the display (assuming the color has been used).

The next 16 locations (256..271) will not affect the current display. However, future changes to the display will use the new contents of the color table.

Device dependent polygons drawn with color table locations 0..255 will be drawn in a solid color without using dithering. When drawn with color table locations above 255, dithering will be used.

Note

Since dithering on color mapped displays use the current color map values (i.e., first area of color table) changing the first color table locations will effect the dithering pattern used. This leads to two major effects. First, changing the first locations after a polygon was generated using dithering will change the dither pattern such that its average color no longer matches the color that was generated with. Second, since the dither pattern is based on the first colors, the first colors can be set to produce a dither pattern with minimum color changes between pixels within the pattern. The following example produces a continuous shaded polygon across the crt:

```

$RANGE OFF$
PROGRAM T;

IMPORT dsl_types, dsl_lib, dsl_Poly;

VAR I          : INTEGER;
    Xvec,Yvec  : ARRAY [1..2] OF REAL;
    Ovec       : ARRAY [1..2] OF Gshortint;
    C          : REAL;

BEGIN
    GRAPHICS_INIT;
    DISPLAY_INIT(3,0,i);
    SET_ASPECT(511,389);
    SET_WINDOW(0,511,0,389);

    FOR I := 0 to 15 DO
        SET_COLOR_TABLE(I,I/15,I/15,I/15); { set up color map }

        SET_PGN_COLOR ( 16 );
        SET_PGN_STYLE ( 16 );

        Yvec[1] := 100; Yvec[2] := 150; Ovec[1] := 2; Ovec[2] := 0;
        FOR I := 0 to 511 DO
            BEGIN
                Xvec[1] := I; Xvec[2] := I;
                C : 1-I/511;
                SET_COLOR_TABLE(16,C,C,C); { set polygon color }
                POLYGON_DEV_DEP(2,Xvec,Yvec,Ovec);
            END;
        END.

```

The color that lines are drawn with (one of the non-dithered colors) is determined from the closest HSL value to the requested value.

Dithered Polygon Fills

All the raster displays use a technique called dithering for filling device dependent polygons. The polygon is divided into 4 pixel by 4 pixel 'dither cells'. The colors that are placed in each pixel location inside the dither cells average to the current polygon color. The eye will average the pixels, and see the intended color.

The 98627A has 3 memory planes thus, providing 8 non-dithered colors (white, red, green, blue, cyan, magenta, and black). Using dithering 4913 polygon colors may be generated. To obtain a polygon color of half-tone yellow ($R = 0.5$ $G = 0.5$ $B = 0.0$) the dither cell would contain 8 black pixels and 8 yellow pixels.

On black and white displays, the largest r,g,b value of the current_polygon color is used to determine the dither pattern.

On the color mapped displays, the current values of the color map are used to determine the dither cell pixel colors. This leads to a very very large number of colors that these can produce when performing device dependent polygon fill.

The Background Color

Color index 0 represents the background color. The ability to redefine this index is device-dependent. Many devices do not allow the redefinition of their background color. Whether a display device has the ability to redefine the background color can be inquired via a call to INQ_WS with opcode = 1072. All raster displays in the Series 200/300 computers are capable of redefining the background color.

Error Conditions

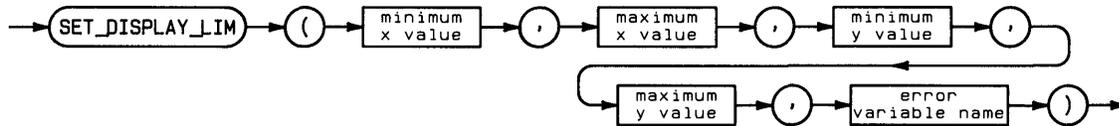
The graphics system must be initialized and a display device must be enabled or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

SET_DISPLAY_LIM

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This procedure redefines the logical display limits of the graphics display.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
minimum x value	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
maximum x value	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
minimum y value	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
maximum y value	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
error variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	—

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_DISPLAY_LIM (      Xmin, Xmax,
                               Ymin, Ymax : REAL,
                               VAR      Ierr : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

The **minimum x value** is the distance in millimetres that the left side of the logical display limits is offset from the left side of the physical display limits.

The **maximum x value** is the distance in millimetres that the right side of the logical display limits is offset from the left side of the physical display limits.

The **minimum y value** is the distance in millimetres that the bottom of the logical display limits is offset from the bottom of the physical display limits.

The **maximum y value** is the distance in millimetres that the top of the logical display limits is offset from the bottom of the physical display limits.

The **error variable** will contain an integer indicating whether the limits were successfully set.

Value	Meaning
0	The display limits were successfully set.
1	The minimum x value was greater than or equal to the maximum x value and/or the minimum y value was greater than the maximum y value.
2	The parameters specified were outside the physical display limits.

If the error variable is non-zero, the call was ignored.

SET_DISPLAY_LIM allows an application program to specify the region of the display surface where the image will be displayed. The limits of this region are defined as the logical display limits. Upon initialization, the graphics system sets these limits equal to some portion of the specified physical device. This routine allows a programmer to set the plotting surface of a very large plotter equal to the size of an 8 1/2 x 11 inch paper, for example.

The pairs (minimum x value, minimum y value) and (maximum x value, maximum y value) define the corner points of the new logical display limits in terms of millimetres offset from the origin of the physical display. The exact position of the physical display origin is device dependent. The specifics of various devices are covered later in this entry.

This procedure causes a new virtual coordinate system to be defined. SET_DISPLAY_LIM calculates the new limits of the virtual coordinate system as a function of the current aspect ratio and the new limits of the logical display. This does not affect the limits of the viewport. Since it changes the size of the area onto which the viewport is mapped, it may scale the size of the image displayed. It will not distort the image; it can only make it smaller or larger.

SET_DISPLAY_LIM should only be called while the graphics display is enabled.

Neither the value of the starting position nor the location of the physical pen or beam is altered by this routine. Since this routine may redefine the viewing transformation, the starting position may be mapped to a different coordinate on the display surface. A call to MOVE or INT_MOVE should therefore be made after this call to update the value of the starting position and in so doing, place the physical pen or beam at a known location.

If the logical display and logical locator are associated with the same physical device, a call to SET_DISPLAY_LIM will set the logical locator limits equal to the new limits of the virtual coordinate system. A call to SET_DISPLAY_LIM also sets the locator echo position to its default value, the center of the world coordinate system.

Display Limits of Raster Devices

The CRT's for Series 200/300 computers have the following limits:

Computer	Wide mm	High mm	Wide points	High points	Aspect	Resolution points/mm
Model 216	160	120	400	300	.75	2.5
Model 217	230	175	512	390	.7617	2.226
Model 220 (HP 82913A)	210	158	400	300	.75	2.632
Model 220 (HP 82912A)	152	114	400	300	.75	2.632
Model 226	120	88	400	300	.75	3.333
Model 236	210	160	512	390	.7617	2.438
Model 236 Color	217	163	512	390	.7617	2.39
Model 237	312	234	1024	768	.75	3.282
HP 98542A	210	164	512	400	.7813	2.433
HP 98543A	210	164	512	400	.7813	2.433
HP 98544A	312	234	1024	768	.75	3.282
HP 98545A	360	270	1024	768	.75	2.844
HP 98547A	360	270	1024	768	.75	2.844
HP 98548A	343	274	1280	1024	.7988	3.729
HP 98549A	360	270	1024	768	.75	2.844
HP 98550A	343	274	1280	1024	.7988	3.729
HP 98700A	360	270	1024	768	.75	2.844
362/382 VGA	290	210	640	480	.75	2.207
382 Medium Res	300	225	1024	768	.75	3.413
382 High Res	340	272	1280	1024	.7988	3.765

The physical size of the HP 98627A display (needed by the SET_DISPLAY_LIM procedure) may be given to the graphics system by an escape function (OPCODE = 250). The physical limits assumed until the escape function is given are:

CONTROL	=	256	153.3mm wide and 116.7mm high.
		512	153.3mm wide and 116.7mm high.
		768	153.3mm wide and 142.2mm high.
		1024	153.3mm wide and 153.3mm high.
		1280	153.3mm wide and 153.3mm high.

The default logical display surface of the graphics display device is the maximum physical limits of the screen. The physical origin is the lower left corner of the display.

The view surface is always centered within the current logical display surface. The origin of a raster display is the lower-left dot.

HPGL Plotter Display Limits

Plotter	Wide mm	High mm	Wide points	High points	Aspect	Resolution points/mm
7440A	272.5	191.25	10900	7650	.7018	40.0
7470	257.5	191.25	10300	7650	.7427	40.0
7475	416	259.125	16640	10365	.6229	40.0
7550A/B	411.25	254.25	16450	10170	.6182	40.0
7570A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7575A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7576A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7580	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7585	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7586	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7595A/B	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7596A/B	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7599A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
9872	400	285	16000	11400	.7125	40.0
35723	210.0	164.0	57	43	.7500	470.0
46087A	297.6	216.5	11904	8660	.7275	40.0
46088A	432.4	297.6	17296	11904	.6883	40.0

The 7550B, 7595B, 7596A, and 7599A plotters are only supported in 7550A, 7595A, or 7596A emulation mode.

The maximum physical limits of the graphics display for a HPGL device not listed above are determined by the default settings of P1 and P2. The default settings of P1 and P2 are the values they have after an HPGL 'IN' command. Refer to the specific device manual for additional details.

The default logical display surface is set equal to the area defined by P1 and P2 at the time DISPLAY_INIT is invoked. The view-surface is always justified in the lower left corner of the current logical display surface (corner nearest the turret for the HP 7580 and HP 7585 plotters). The physical origin of the graphics display is at the lower left boundary of pen movement.

Note

If the paper is changed in an HP 7570A, HP 7575A, HP 7576A, HP 7580, HP 7585, HP 7595A/B, HP 7596A/B, or HP 7599A plotter while the graphics locator is initialized, it should be the same size of paper that was in the plotter when DISPLAY_INIT was called. If a different size of paper is required, the device should be terminated (DISPLAY_TERM) and re-initialized after the new paper has been placed in the plotter.

Error Conditions

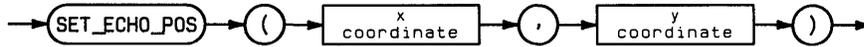
The graphics system must be initialized and a display device enabled or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSERROR will return a non-zero value.

SET_ECHO_POS

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** defines the locator echo position on the graphics display.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
x coordinate	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
y coordinate	Expression of TYPE REAL	—

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_ECHO_POS ( Wx , Wy : REAL );
```

Semantics

The **x** and **y coordinate** pair is the new echo position in world coordinates.

When echoing on the display device, SET_ECHO_POS allows a programmer to define the position of the locator echo position. This is a point in the world coordinate system that represents the initial position of the locator. It is used with certain locator echoes on the graphics display. For example, it is used as the anchor point when a rubber band echo is performed. With this echo, the graphics cursor is initially turned on at the locator echo position. From that time on, the cursor reflects the position of the locator and a line extends from the locator echo position to the locator as it moves around the graphics display. To be used in echoing, the point must be displayable. Therefore, if the point specified is outside of the limits of the window the call is ignored.

The locator echo position will only be used when AWAIT_LOCATOR is called with echo types 2 through 8, e.g., type 4 is a rubber band line echo. The locator echo position is only used when the locator echo is being sent to the graphics display device, and is not used when sampling the locator.

SET_ECHO_POS should only be called while the graphics display and locator are initialized. If the point passed to SET_ECHO_POS is outside the current window limits, then the call to SET_ECHO_POS is ignored and no error is given.

The default locator echo position is the center of the limits of the window. When the locator is initialized, the locator echo position is set to the default value. When a call is made which affects the viewing transformations for the graphics display surface or the logical locator limits, the locator echo position is set to the default value. The calls which cause this are SET_ASPECT, DISPLAY_INIT, SET_DISPLAY_LIM, LOCATOR_INIT, SET_LOCATOR_LIM, SET_WINDOW, and SET_VIEWPORT.

Once the locator echo position is set, it retains this value until the next call to SET_ECHO_POS or until a call is made which resets it to the default value.

Error Conditions

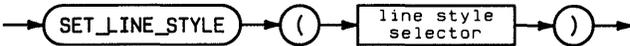
The graphics system must be initialized, and a display device and a locator device must be enabled, or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSER-ROR will return a non-zero value.

SET_LINE_STYLE

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This procedure sets the line style attribute.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
line style selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT	Device Dependent

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_LINE_STYLE (Line_Style : INTEGER);
```

Semantics

The **line style selector** is the line style to be used for lines, polylines, polygon edges, and text.

Markers are not affected by line-style. Polygon interior line-style is selected with SET_PGN_LS.

SET_LINE_STYLE sets the line style attribute for lines and text. The mapping between the value of the line style attribute and the line style selected is device dependent. If a line style attribute is requested that the device cannot perform exactly as requested, line style 1 will be performed.

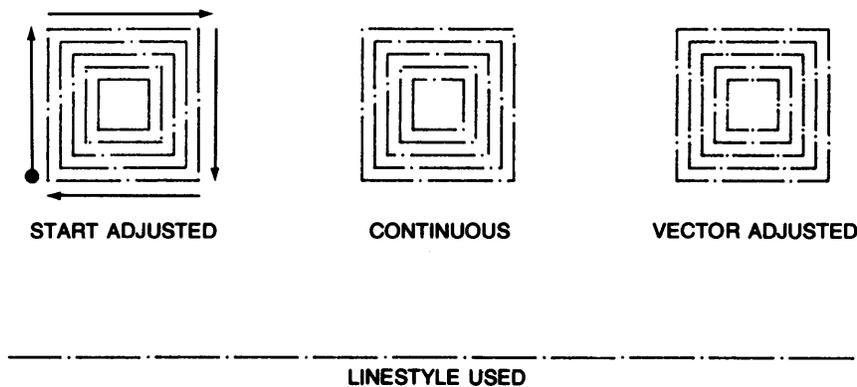
There are three types of line-styles: start adjusted, continuous, and vector adjusted:

Start adjusted line-styles always start the cycle at the beginning of the vector. Thus if the current line-style starts with a pattern, each vector drawn will start with that pattern. Likewise, if the current line-style starts with a space and then a dot, each vector will be drawn starting with a space and then a dot. In this case if the vectors are short, they might not appear at all.

Continuous line styles are generated such that the pattern will be started with the first vector drawn. Subsequent vectors will be continuations of the pattern. Thus, it may take several vectors to complete one cycle of the pattern. This type of line-style is useful for drawing smooth curves, but does not necessarily designate either endpoint of a vector. A side effect of this type of line-style is if a vector is small enough it might be composed only of the space between points or dashes in the line-style. In that case, the vector may not appear on the graphics display at all.

Vector adjusted line-styles treat each vector individually. Individual treatment guarantees that a solid component of the dash pattern will be generated at both ends of the vector. Thus, the endpoints of each vector will be clearly identifiable. This type of line-style is good for drawing rectangles. The integrity of the line-style will degenerate with very small vectors. Since some component of the dash pattern must appear at both ends of the vector, the entire vector for a short vector will often be drawn as solid.

The following figure illustrates how one pattern would be displayed using each one of the different line-style types:



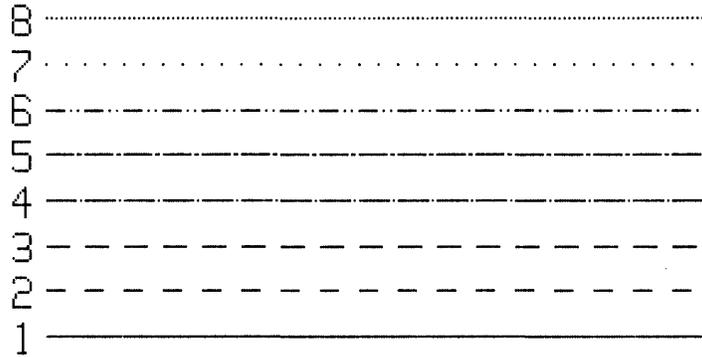
It should be apparent from the above discussion that drawing to the starting position will generate a point (the shortest possible line) only if the line-style is such that the pen is down (or the beam is on) at the start of that vector. Likewise, whole vectors may not appear on the graphics display surface if the line-style is such that the vector is smaller than the blank space in the line-style. The device handlers section of this document details the line-styles available for each device.

Note

When using continuous line styles, complement and erase drawing modes (available on some raster displays e.g., Model 226) may not completely remove lines previously drawn. This happens since the line style pattern may not be in sync with the first line when the second line is drawn. By setting the line-style to solid when using complement and erase drawing modes the application program can insure that the line is completely removed.

Raster Line Styles

Eight pre-defined line-styles are supported on the graphics display. All of the line-styles may be classified as being “continuous”:

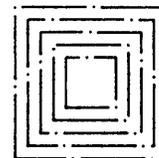
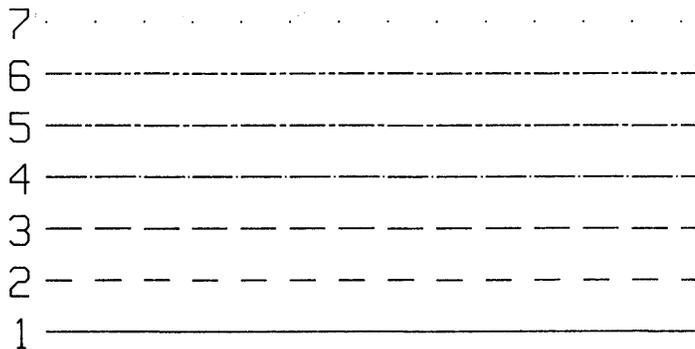


Raster Line Styles

Plotter Line Styles

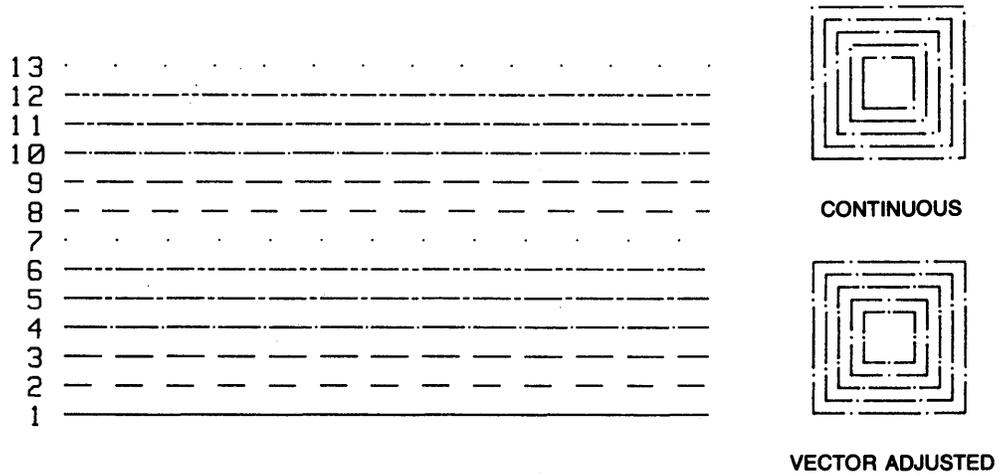
The following table describes the line styles available on the supported plotters.

Device	Number of continuous line-styles	Number of vector adjusted line-styles
9872	7	0
7470	7	0
7475	7	0
7550	7	6
7570	7	6
7575	7	6
7576	7	6
7580	7	6
7585	7	6
7586	7	6
7595	7	6
7596	7	6
7599	7	6
Other	7	0



CONTINUOUS

**HP 9872 and 7470 Line Styles
(all are continuous)**



HP 7570, HP 7575A, HP 7576A, HP 7580, HP 7585, HP 7586, HP 7595, HP 7596, HP 7599

If the line style specified is not supported by the graphics display, the call is completed with `LINE_STYLE = 1` and no error is reported.

The graphics system must be enabled and a display device must be enabled or this call will be ignored and `GRAPHICSError` will return a non-zero value.

Error Conditions

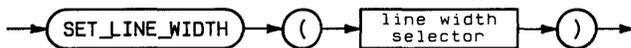
The graphics system must be enabled and a display device must be enabled or this call will be ignored and `GRAPHICSError` will return a non-zero value.

SET_LINE_WIDTH

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** sets the line-width attribute. The number of line-widths possible is device dependent.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
line-width selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT

Procedure Headings

```
PROCEDURE SET_LINE_WIDTH ( Linewidth : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

SET_LINE_WIDTH sets the line-width attribute for lines, polylines and text. The line-width attribute does not affect markers which are defined to be always output with the thinnest line-width supported on the device. All devices support at least one line-width. The range of line-widths is device dependent but line-width 1 is always the thinnest line-width supported. For devices that support multiple line-widths, the line-width increases as line-width does until the device supported maximum is reached. For example, line-width = 1 specifies the thinnest, line-width = 2 specifies the next wider line-width, etc.

If line-width is greater than the number of line-widths supported by the graphics display or line-width is less than 1, then the line-width will be set to the thinnest available width (line-width = 1). All subsequent lines and text will then be drawn with the thinnest available line-width. A call to INQ_WS with OPCODE equal to 1063 to inquire the value of the line-width will then return a 1.

The initial line-width is the thinnest width supported by the device (line-width = 1).

Note

All current devices support a single line-width.

Error Conditions

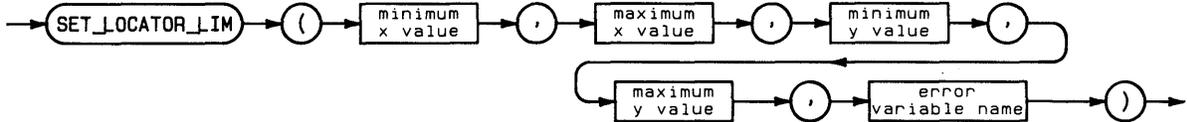
The graphics system must be initialized and a display device must be enabled or this call is ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

SET_LOCATOR_LIM

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This procedure redefines the logical locator limits of the graphics locator.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
minimum x value	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
maximum x value	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
maximum y value	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
minimum y value	Expression of TYPE REAL	—
error variable name	Variable of TYPE INTEGER	—

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_LOCATOR_LIM (      Xmin, Xmax,
                               Ymin, Ymax : REAL,
                               VAR Ierr   : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

The **minimum x value** is the distance in millimetres that the left side of the logical locator limits is offset from the left side of the physical locator limits.

The **maximum x value** is the distance in millimetres that the right side of the logical locator limits is offset from the left side of the physical locator limits.

The **minimum y value** is the distance in millimetres that the bottom of the logical locator limits is offset from the bottom of the physical locator limits.

The **maximum y value** is the distance in millimetres that the top of the logical locator limits is offset from the bottom of the physical locator limits.

The **error variable** will contain an integer indicating whether the limits were successfully set.

Value	Meaning
0	The display limits were successfully set.
1	The minimum x value was greater than or equal to the maximum x value and/or the minimum y value was greater than the maximum y value.
2	The parameters specified were outside the physical display limits.
3	Attempt to explicitly define locator limits on a device which is both the logical locator and the logical display. The logical display limits are used when a device is shared for both purposes, and they cannot be redefined with this call.

If the error variable is non-zero, the call was ignored.

SET_LOCATOR_LIM allows an application program to specify the portion of the physical locator device that should be used to perform locator functions. When the logical locator device is enabled (via LOCATOR_INIT) the logical device limits are set to a device dependent portion of the physical locator device. With a call to this routine the user can set the logical locator limits by specifying a new area within the physical locator limits.

The pairs (minimum x value, minimum y value) and (maximum x value, maximum y value) define the corner points of the new logical locator limits in terms of millimetres offset from the origin of the physical locator. The exact position of the physical locator origin is device dependent. Specific origins are covered later in this entry.

If a logical locator and a logical display are associated with the same physical device, then the logical locator limits must be the same as the logical view surface limits. Specifically, the effects of the association with the same physical device are as follows:

- The logical locator limits are initialized to the same values as the virtual coordinate system.
- Any call which redefines the virtual coordinate system limits will also redefine the logical locator limits.
- The logical locator limits can not be defined by a call to SET_LOCATOR_LIM.

By changing the logical locator limits any portion of the graphics locator can be addressed, with the restrictions stated above.

The logical locator limits always map directly to the view surface, therefore, distortion may result in the mapping between the logical locator and the display when the logical locator limits and the view surface have different aspect ratios. If the distortion is not desired it can be avoided by assuring that the logical locator limits maintain the same aspect ratio as that of the view surface.

SET_LOCATOR_LIM should only be called while the graphics locator is enabled. SET_LOCATOR_LIM sets the locator echo position to the default value (see SET_ECHO_POS).

Relative Locator Limits (Knob or Mouse)

The knob may be used as a locator on Series 200/300 computers. The default characteristics of the knob on various Series 200/300 computers is listed in the table below.

Computer	Wide mm	High mm	Wide points	High points	Aspect	Resolution points/mm
Model 216	160	120	400	300	.75	2.5
Model 217	230	175	512	390	.7617	2.226
Model 220 (HP 82913A)	210	158	400	300	.75	2.632
Model 220 (HP 82912A)	152	114	400	300	.75	2.632
Model 226	120	88	400	300	.75	3.333
Model 236	210	160	512	390	.7617	2.438
Model 236 Color	217	163	512	390	.7617	2.39
Model 237	312	234	1024	768	.75	3.282
HP 98542A	210	164	512	400	.7813	2.433
HP 98543A	210	164	512	400	.7813	2.433
HP 98544A	312	234	1024	768	.75	3.282
HP 98545A	360	270	1024	768	.75	2.844
HP 98547A	360	270	1024	768	.75	2.844
HP 98548A	343	274	1280	1024	.7988	3.729
HP 98549A	360	270	1024	768	.75	2.844
HP 98550A	343	274	1280	1024	.7988	3.729
HP 98700A	360	270	1024	768	.75	2.844
362/382 VGA	290	210	640	480	.75	2.207
382 Medium Res	300	225	1024	768	.75	3.413
382 High Res	340	272	1280	1024	.7988	3.765

The knob uses the current display limits as its locator limits for locator echoes 2 through 8. For all other echoes the above limits are used. An example of when the two limits may differ follows:

The knob locator is initialized on a Model 226. The graphics display is an HP 98627A color output card. The resolution of the locator is 0 through 399 in x dimension, and 0 through 299 in y dimension. The resolution of the display is 0 through 511 in x dimension, and 0 through 389 in y dimension. When `await_locator` is used with echo 4, the locator will effectively have the HP 98627A resolution for the duration of the `await_locator` call. However, if echo 1 is used with `await_locator`, the cursor will appear on the Model 226 and the locator has a resolution of 0×399 and 0×299 . Note that all conversion routines and inquiries will use the Model 226 limits.

The physical origin of the locator device is the lower left corner of the display.

Absolute Locator Limits (HPGL Plotter or Graphics Tablet)

HPGL plotter and graphics tablets can be used as locators. The default characteristics of some HPGL devices are listed below.

Plotter	Wide mm	High mm	Wide points	High points	Aspect	Resolution points/mm
7440A	272.5	191.25	10900	7650	.7018	40.0
7470	257.5	191.25	10300	7650	.7427	40.0
7475	416	259.125	16640	10365	.6229	40.0
7550A/B	411.25	254.25	16450	10170	.6182	40.0
7570A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7575A	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7576A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7580	809.5	524.25	32380	20970	.6476	40.0
7585	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7586	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7595A/B	1100	891.75	44000	35670	.8107	40.0
7596A/B	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
7599A	1182.8	898.1	47312	35924	.7593	40.0
9872	400	285	16000	11400	.7125	40.0
35723	210.0	164.0	57	43	.7500	470.0
46087A	297.6	216.5	11904	8660	.7275	40.0
46088A	432.4	297.6	17296	11904	.6883	40.0

The 7550B, 7595B, 7596A, and 7599A plotters are only supported in 7550A, 7595A, or 7596A emulation mode.

The maximum physical limits of the locator for a HPGL device not listed above are determined by the default settings of P1 and P2. The default settings of P1 and P2 are the values they have after an HPGL 'IN' command. Refer to the specific device manual for additional details.

The default logical display surface is set equal to the area defined by P1 and P2 at the time LOCATOR_INIT is invoked.

Note

If the paper is changed in an HP 7570A, HP 7575A, HP 7576A, HP 7580, HP 7585, HP 7595A/B, HP 7596A/B, or HP 7599A plotter while the graphics locator is initialized, it should be the same size of paper that was in the plotter when DISPLAY_INIT was called. If a different size of paper is required, the device should be terminated (DISPLAY_TERM) and re-initialized after the new paper has been placed in the plotter.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized and a display device enabled or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

HP-HIL Absolute Locator Semantics

`i_err` is an error return variable. If `i_err=0`, the call to `set_locator_lim` successfully set the locator limits according to the other parameters. If `i_err≠0` then the value indicates a DGL error condition, and `set_locator_lim` has no effect. `i_err` values used are standard wherever possible, with some new values being added to DGL for special HP-HIL conditions.

SET_PGN_COLOR

```
IMPORT: dgl_lib
       dgl_poly
```

This **procedure** selects the polygon interior color attribute for subsequently generated polygons by providing a selector for the color table.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
color selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT	Device dependent.

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_PGN_COLOR ( Cindex : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

The **color selector** is an index into the color table. The contents of the color table are then used to specify the color when primitives are drawn. On some devices (HPGL plotters), the color selector maps directly to a pen number for the device. On the color-mapped displays, the entries in the color table can be modified with SET_COLOR_TABLE. The color actually used depends on the value in a device-dependent color table.

At device initialization a default color table is created by the graphics system. The size and contents of the table are device dependent. At least one entry exists for all devices. A call to INQ_WS with OPCODE equal to 1053 will return the number of colors available on a given graphics device. Some devices allow the color table to be modified with SET_TABLE.

The default value of the color attribute is 1. If the value of the color selector is not supported on the graphics display, the color attribute will be set to 1.

A color selector of 0 has special effects depending on the graphics display used. For raster devices, a color selector of 0 means to draw in the background color. For most plotters, it puts the pen away.

Dithering

If the device is not capable of reproducing a color in the color table, the closest color which the device is capable of reproducing is used instead. For polygon fill (in a device dependent mode) this may involve dithering. For example, the HP 98627A color output interface card is capable of a large selection of polygon fill colors, but only 8 line colors. Thus, the fill color could match the selected color much more closely than the line color used to outline the polygon. See SET_COLOR_TABLE for details on how colors are matched to the devices.

Default Raster Color Map

The following table shows the default (initial) color table for the black and white displays (computer models 216, 220, 226, 236, 237, HP 98542A, HP 98544A, and HP 98548A):

Index #	Hue	Saturation	Luminosity
0	0	0	0
1	0	0	1.0000
2	0	0	0.9375
3	0	0	0.8750
4	0	0	0.8125
5	0	0	0.7500
6	0	0	0.6875
7	0	0	0.6250
8	0	0	0.5625
9	0	0	0.5000
10	0	0	0.4375
11	0	0	0.3750
12	0	0	0.3125
13	0	0	0.2500
14	0	0	0.1875
15	0	0	0.1250
16	0	0	0.0625

Colors 17 through 31 are set to white.

The following table shows the default (initial) color table for the color displays (computer model 236C, HP 98627, HP 98543A, HP 98545A, HP 98547A, HP 98549A, HP 98550A and HP 98700A):

Index #	Color name	Red	Green	Blue
0	Black	0.000000	0.000000	0.000000
1	White	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000
2	Red	1.000000	0.000000	0.000000
3	Yellow	1.000000	1.000000	0.000000
4	Green	0.000000	1.000000	0.000000
5	Cyan	0.000000	1.000000	1.000000
6	Blue	0.000000	0.000000	1.000000
7	Magenta	1.000000	0.000000	1.000000
8	Black	0.000000	0.000000	0.000000
9	Olive green	0.800000	0.733333	0.200000
10	Aqua	0.200000	0.400000	0.466667
11	Royal blue	0.533333	0.400000	0.666667
12	Violet	0.800000	0.266667	0.400000
13	Brick red	1.000000	0.400000	0.200000
14	Burnt orange	1.000000	0.466667	0.000000
15	Grey brown	0.866667	0.533333	0.266667

Colors 9 through 15 are a graphic designer's idea of colors for business graphics. Color table entries not shown above are set to white.

Raster Drawing Modes

Raster drawing modes have no effect on polygon fill color.

Plotters

A Color Selector of 0 selects no pens (the current pen is put away). The supported range of Color Selectors for each supported plotter is:

- 9872A - 0 through 4
- 9872B - 0 through 4
- 9872C/S/T - 0 through 8
- 7550A&B/7570A/7575A/7576A/7580A/7585A/7586A/7595A&B/7596A&B/
7599A - 0 through 8
- 7470A - 0 through 2
- 7475A - 0 through 6

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized and a display must be enabled. Otherwise, this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

SET_PGN_LS

IMPORT: dgl_lib
dgl_poly

This **procedure** selects the polygon interior line-style attribute for subsequently generated polygons by providing a selector for the device dependent line-style table.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
line-style selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT	Device dependent

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_PGN_LS ( Lindex : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

The **line style selector** is the line style to be used for polygon interiors.

Line-styles for other primitives are selected using SET_LINE_STYLE.

The mapping between the value of the line style attribute and the line style selected is device dependent. If a line style attribute is requested that the device cannot perform exactly as requested, line style 1 will be performed.

There are three types of line-styles - start adjusted, continuous, and vector adjusted:

Start adjusted line-styles always start the cycle at the beginning of the vector. Thus if the current line-style starts with a pattern, each vector drawn will start with that pattern. Likewise, if the current line-style starts with a space and then a dot, each vector will be drawn starting with a space and then a dot. In this case if the vectors are short, they might not appear at all.

Continuous line styles are generated such that the pattern will be started with the first vector drawn. Subsequent vectors will be continuations of the pattern. Thus, it may take several vectors to complete one cycle of the pattern. This type of line-style is useful for drawing smooth curves, but does not necessarily designate either endpoint of a vector. A side effect of this type of line-style is if a vector is small enough it might be composed only of the space between points or dashes in the line-style. In that case, the vector may not appear on the graphics display at all.

Vector adjusted line-styles treat each vector individually. Individual treatment guarantees that a solid component of the dash pattern will be generated at both ends of the vector. Thus, the endpoints of each vector will be clearly identifiable. This type of line-style is good for drawing rectangles. The integrity of the line-style will degenerate with very small vectors. Since some component of the dash pattern must appear at both ends of the vector, the entire vector for a short vector will often be drawn as solid.

The following figure illustrates how one pattern would be displayed using each one of the different line-style types:



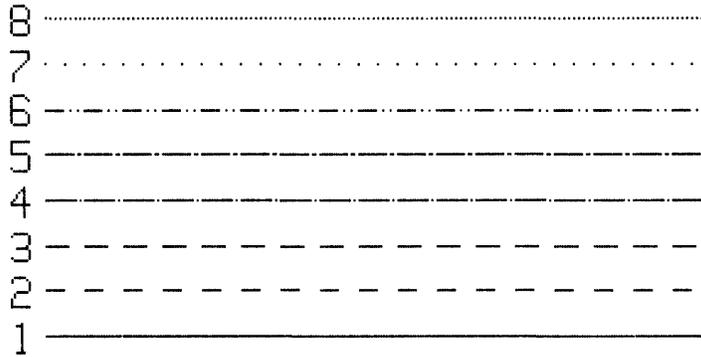
It should be apparent from the above discussion that drawing to the starting position will generate a point (the shortest possible line) only if the line-style is such that the pen is down (or the beam is on) at the start of that vector. Likewise, whole vectors may not appear on the graphics display surface if the line-style is such that the vector is smaller than the blank space in the line-style. The device handlers section of this document details the line-styles available for each device.

Note

When using continuous line styles, complement and erase drawing modes (available on some raster displays e.g., Model 226) may not completely remove lines previously drawn. This happens since the line style pattern may not be in sync with the first line when the second line is drawn. By setting the line style to solid when using complement and erase drawing modes, the application program can insure that the line is completely removed.

Raster Line Styles

Eight pre-defined line-styles are supported on the graphics display. All of the line-styles may be classified as being "continuous":

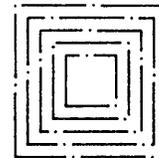
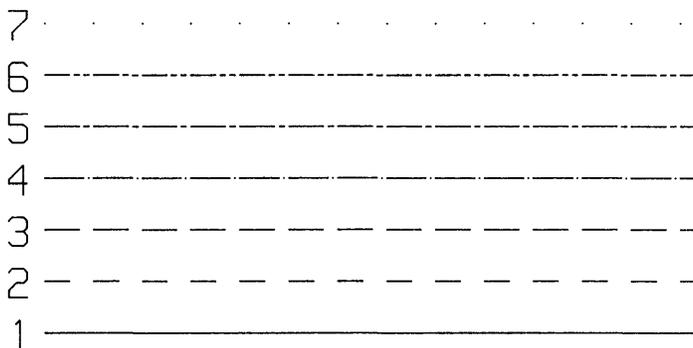


Raster Line Styles

Plotter Line Styles

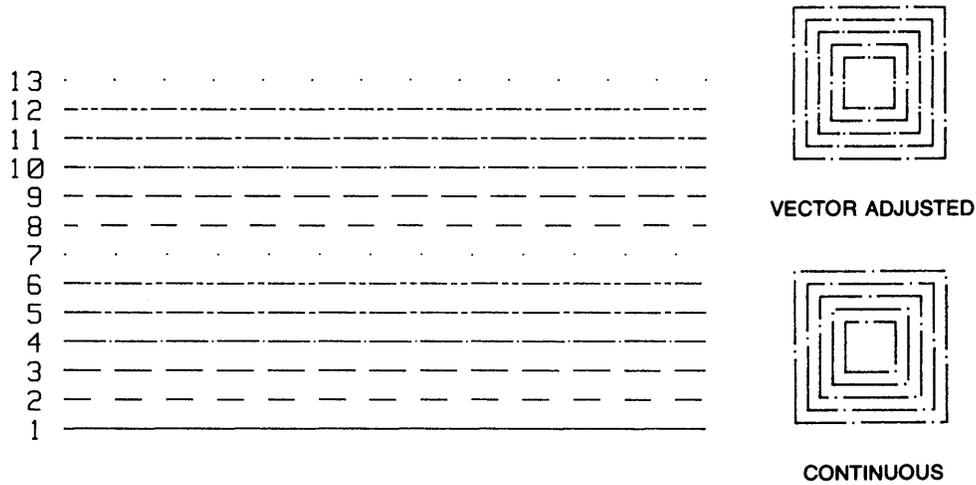
The following table describes the line styles available on the supported plotters.

Device	Number of continuous line-styles	Number of vector adjusted line-styles
9872	7	0
7470	7	0
7475	7	0
7550	7	6
7570	7	6
7575	7	6
7576	7	6
7580	7	6
7585	7	6
7586	7	6
7595	7	6
7596	7	6
7599	7	6
Other	7	0



CONTINUOUS

HP 7440, 7470, 7475, and 9872 Line Styles



**HP 7550A/B, 7570A, 7575A, 7576A, 7580, 7585, 7586, 7595A/B, 7596A/B,
and 7599A Line Styles**

If the line style specified is not supported by the graphics display, the call is completed with `LINE_STYLE = 1` and no error is reported.

The graphics system must be enabled and a display device must be enabled or this call will be ignored and `GRAPHICSError` will return a non-zero value.

Error conditions:

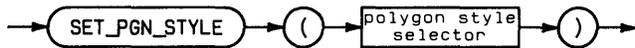
The graphics system must be initialized and a display device must be enabled or this call will be ignored, an `ESCAPE (-27)` will be generated, and `GRAPHICSError` will return a non-zero value.

SET_PGN_STYLE

IMPORT: dgl_lib
dgl_poly

This **procedure** selects the polygon style attribute for subsequently generated polygons by providing a selector for the polygon style table.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
polygon style selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT	Device dependent

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_PGN_STYLE ( Pindex : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

Polygon styles can vary in polygon interior density, polygon interior orientation and polygon edge display. See SET_PGN_TABLE for details on default styles, and how the polygon style table may be changed.

Error Conditions

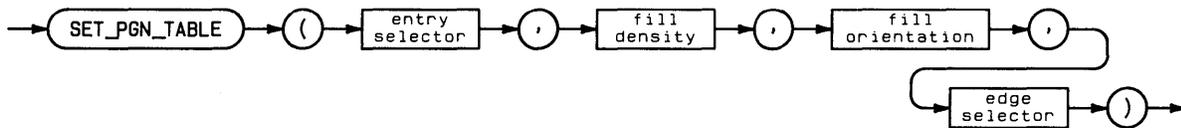
The graphics system must be initialized and a display device must be enabled or this call will be ignored and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

SET_PGN_TABLE

```
IMPORT: dgl_lib
       dgl_poly
```

This **procedure** defines a polygon style attribute, i.e. an entry in a polygon style table.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions	Recommended Range
entry selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT	Device dependent
fill density	Expression of TYPE REAL	MININT thru MAXINT	-1 thru 1
fill orientation	Expression of TYPE REAL	MININT thru MAXINT	-90 thru 90
edge selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	MININT thru MAXINT	—

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_PGN_TABLE ( Index : INTEGER;
                          Densy  : REAL;
                          Orient  : REAL;
                          Edse   : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

This routine defines the attribute of polygon style, i.e. it specifies an entry in a polygon style table. This entry contains information that specifies polygon interior density, polygon interior orientation, polygon edge display, and device-independence of polygon display.

The **entry selector** specifies the entry in the polygon style table that is to be redefined.

The **fill density** determines the density of the polygon interior fill. The magnitude of this value is the ratio of filled area to non-filled area. Zero means the polygon interior is not filled. One represents a fully filled polygon interior. All non-zero values specify the density of continuous lines used to fill the interior.

Positive density values request parallel fill lines in one direction only. Negative values are used to specify crosshatching. For a given density, the distance between two adjacent parallel lines is greater with cross hatching than in the case of pure parallel filling. Calculations for fill density are based on the thinnest line possible on the device and on continuous line-style.

The distance between fill lines – hence density – does not change with a change of scale caused by a viewing transformation. If the interior line-style is not continuous, the actual fill density may not match that found in the polygon style table.

The **fill orientation** represents the angle (in degrees) between the lines used for filling the polygon and the horizontal axis of the display device. The interpretation of fill orientation is device-dependent. On devices that require software emulation of polygon styles, the angle specified will be adhered to as closely as possible, within the line-drawing capabilities of the device. For hardware generated polygon styles, the angle specified will be adhered to as closely as is possible given the hardware simulation of the requested density. If crosshatching is specified, the fill orientation specifies the angle of orientation of the first set of lines in the crosshatching, and the second set of lines is always perpendicular to this.

The value of the **edge selector** determines whether the edge of the polygon is displayed. If the edge selector is 0, the edges will not be displayed. If the edge selector is 1, display of individual edge segments depends on the operation selector in the call that draws the polygon set, POLYGON, INT_POLYGON, POLYGON_DEV_DEP, or INT_POLYGON_DD.

If polygon edges are displayed, they adhere to the current line attributes of color, line-style, and line-width, in effect at the time of polygon display.

A device-dependent number of polygon styles are available. All devices support at least 16 entries in the polygon table. The polygon styles defined in the default tables are defined to exploit the hardware capabilities of the devices they are defined for.

Polygon interiors can be generated in either a device-dependent or device-independent fashion, by calling POLYGON_DEV_DEP or POLYGON respectively.

Polygons generated in a device-dependent fashion will utilize the available hardware polygon generation capabilities of the device to increase the speed and efficiency of polygon generation. The output may vary depending on the device. Devices that have no hardware polygon generation capabilities will only do a minimal representation of the polygon if a device-dependent representation of the polygon is requested. If an edge is not requested, an outline of the non-clipped boundaries of the polygon interior will be drawn in the current polygon interior color and polygon interior line-style if the density of the polygon interior was not zero.

Polygons generated in a device-independent fashion will adhere strictly to the polygon style specification. The polygon interior generated would look similar when generated on different devices for a given polygon style specification. However, on raster devices rasterization of the fill lines may leave empty pixels when solid fill is requested with an orientation that is not 0 or 90 degrees. Available hardware would only be used where the polygon style could be generated exactly as specified.

The number of entries in the polygon style table and the default contents of the table are device dependent. However, all devices support the following polygon style table:

Entry	Density	Angle	Edge
1	0.0	0.0	1
2	0.125	90.0	1
3	0.125	0.0	1
4	-0.125	0.0	1
5	0.125	45.0	1
6	0.125	-45.0	1
7	-0.125	45.0	1
8	0.25	90.0	1
9	0.25	0.0	1
10	-0.25	0.0	1
11	0.25	45.0	1
12	0.25	-45.0	1
13	-0.25	45.0	1
14	-0.5	0.0	1
15	1.0	0.0	0
16	1.0	0.0	1

Error Conditions

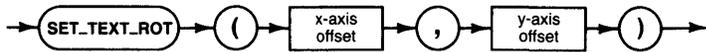
The graphics system must be initialized, a display must be enabled, and the parameters must be within the specified limits or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value.

SET_TEXT_ROT

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This procedure specifies the text direction.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
x-axis offset	Expression of TYPE REAL	-
y-axis offset	Expression of TYPE REAL	-

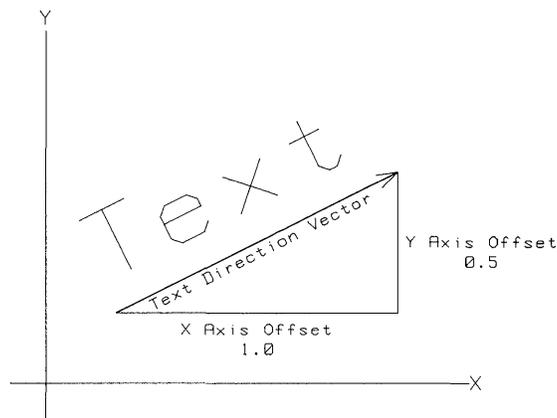
Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_TEXT_ROT ( Dx, Dy : REAL );
```

Semantics

The **x axis offset** and the **y axis offset** specify the world coordinate components of the text direction vector relative to the world coordinate origin. These components cannot both be zero.

This procedure specifies the direction in which graphics text characters are output. The default value (X-axis offset = 1.0; Y-axis offset = 0.0) for the text direction vector is such that characters are drawn in a horizontal direction left to right. The default value is set during GRAPHICS_INIT and DISPLAY_INIT. With X-axis offset = - 1.0 and Y-axis offset = 1.0 a 135 degree rotation from the horizontal (in a counter clockwise direction) may be obtained.



Text Rotation Angle

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized, a display must be enabled, and the parameters must be within the specified limits or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

SET_TIMING

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This procedure selects the timing mode for graphics output.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
timing mode selector	Expression of TYPE INTEGER	0 or 1

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_TIMING ( Opcode : INTEGER );
```

Semantics

The **timing mode selector** determines the timing mode used.

Value	Meaning
0	Immediate visibility mode
1	System buffering mode

Graphics library timing modes are provided to control graphics throughput and picture update timing. Picture update timing refers to the immediacy of visual changes to the graphics display surface. Regardless of the timing mode used, the same final picture is sent to the graphics display. SET_TIMING only controls when a picture appears on the graphics display, not what appears.

The graphics system supports two timing modes:

- *Immediate visibility* Requested picture changes will be sent to the graphics display device before control is returned to the calling program. Due to operating system delays there may be a delay before the picture changes are visible on the graphics display device.
- *System buffering* Requested picture changes will be buffered by the graphics system. This means that the graphics output will not be immediately sent to the display device. This allows the graphics library to send several graphics commands to the graphics display device in one data transfer, therefore, reducing the number of transfers. System buffering is the initial timing mode.

The following routines implicitly make the picture current:

```

AWAIT_LOCATOR    DISPLAY_TERM    INPUT_ESC
LOCATOR_INIT     SAMPLE_LOCATOR
  
```

The immediate visibility mode is less efficient than the system buffering mode. It should only be used in those applications that require picture changes to take place as soon as they are defined, even if the finished picture takes longer to create. When changing the timing mode to immediate visibility the picture is made current.

An alternative to immediate visibility that will solve many application needs is the use of system buffering together with the MAKE_PIC_CURRENT procedure. With this method, an application program places graphics commands into the output buffer and flushes the buffer (see MAKE_PIC_CURRENT) only at times when the picture must be fully displayed.

A call to MAKE_PIC_CURRENT can be made at any time within an application program to insure that the image is fully defined. MAKE_PIC_CURRENT flushes the output buffer but does not modify the timing mode.

Before performing any non-graphics system input or output (to a graphics system device) such as a Pascal read or write, the output buffer must be empty. If the buffer is not flushed (via immediate visibility of MAKE_PIC_CURRENT) prior to non-graphics system I/O, the resulting image may contain some 'garbage' such as escape functions or invalid graphics data.

Note

Although SET_TIMING can be used with all display devices, only HPGL plotters buffer commands.

Error Conditions

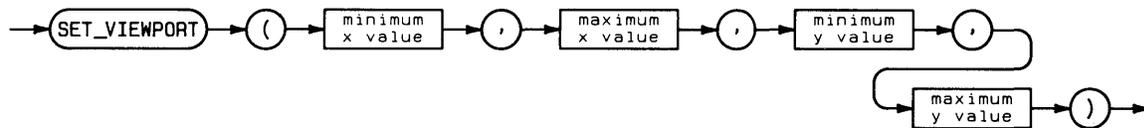
The graphics system must be initialized and all parameters must be in range or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (- 27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSError will return a non-zero value.

SET_VIEWPORT

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** sets the boundaries of the viewport in the virtual coordinate system.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
minimum x value	Expression of TYPE REAL	0.0-1.0
maximum x value	Expression of TYPE REAL	0.0-1.0
minimum y value	Expression of TYPE REAL	0.0-1.0
maximum y value	Expression of TYPE REAL	0.0-1.0

Procedure Heading

```
PROCEDURE SET_VIEWPORT ( Uxmin, Uxmax,
                        Uymin, Uymax : REAL );
```

Semantics

The **minimum x value** is the minimum boundary in the X-direction expressed in virtual coordinates.

The **maximum x value** is the maximum boundary in the X-direction expressed in virtual coordinates.

The **minimum y value** is the minimum boundary in the Y-direction expressed in virtual coordinates.

The **maximum y value** is the maximum boundary in the Y-direction expressed in virtual coordinates.

SET_VIEWPORT sets the limits of the viewport in the virtual coordinate system. The viewport must be within the limits of the virtual coordinate system; otherwise the call will be ignored.

The initial viewport is set up with the minimum x and y values set to 0.0 and the maximum X and Y values set to 1.0.

The initial viewport is set by GRAPHICS_INIT and SET_ASPECT. This initial viewport is mapped onto the maximum visible square within the logical display limits. This area is called the view surface. The placement of the view surface within the logical display limits is dependent upon the device being used. It is generally centered on CRT displays and is placed in the lower left-hand corner of plotters.

By changing the limits of the viewport, an application program can display an image in several different positions on the same graphics display device. A program can make a call to SET_VIEWPORT anytime while the graphics system is initialized.

The starting position is not altered by this call. Since this call redefines the viewing transformation, the starting position may no longer represent a known world coordinate position. A call to MOVE or INT_MOVE should be made after this call to update the starting position.

Error Conditions

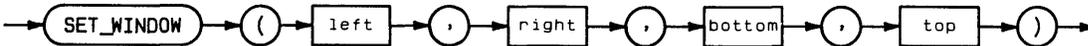
The graphics system must be initialized, all parameters must be within the specified range, the minimum X value must be less than the maximum X value and the minimum Y value must be less than the maximum Y value and all parameters must be within the current virtual coordinate system boundary, or this call will be ignored, an ESCAPE (-27) will be generated, and GRAPHICSEERROR will return a non-zero value..

SET_WINDOW

IMPORT: dgl_lib

This **procedure** defines the boundaries of the window.

Syntax



Item	Description/Default	Range Restrictions
left	Expression of TYPE REAL	See below
right	Expression of TYPE REAL	See below
bottom	Expression of TYPE REAL	See below
top	Expression of TYPE REAL	See below

Procedure Heading

```

PROCEDURE SET_WINDOW ( Wxmin, Wxmax,
                      Wymmin, Wymax : REAL );

```

Semantics

The **left** is the minimum boundary in the X-direction expressed in world coordinates. (i.e., the left window border). Must not equal maximum x value.

The **right** is the maximum boundary in the X-direction expressed in world coordinates. (i.e. the right window border). Must not equal minimum x value.

The **bottom** is the minimum boundary in the Y-direction expressed in world coordinates. (i.e. the bottom window border). Must not equal maximum y value.

The **top** is the maximum boundary in the Y-direction expressed in world coordinates. (i.e. the top window border). Must not equal minimum y value.

SET_WINDOW defines the limits of the window. All positional information sent to and received from the graphics system is specified in world coordinate units. This allows the application program to specify coordinates in units related to the application.

If the top value is less than the bottom value, the Y-axis will be inverted. If the right value is less than the left boundary, the X-axis will be inverted.

B-130 Graphics Procedure Reference

The window is linearly mapped onto the viewport specified by `SET_VIEWPORT`. This is done by mapping the left boundary to the minimum X-viewport boundary, the right boundary to the maximum X-viewport boundary, the bottom boundary to the minimum Y-viewport boundary, and the top boundary to the maximum Y-viewport boundary. If distortion of the graphics image is not desired, the aspect ratio of the window boundaries should be equal to the aspect ratio of the viewport.

The default window limits range from -1.0 to 1.0 on both the X and Y axis. `GRAPHICS_INIT` is the only procedure which sets the window to its default limits.

The starting position is not altered by this call. Since this call redefines the viewing transformation, the starting position may no longer represent a known world coordinate position. A call to `MOVE` or `INT_MOVE` should therefore be made after this call to update the starting position.

`SET_WINDOW` can be called at anytime while the graphics system is initialized.

Error Conditions

The graphics system must be initialized, the minimum value for either axis must not equal the maximum value for that axis or this call will be ignored, an `ESCAPE (-27)` will be generated, and `GRAPHICSError` will return a non-zero value.

Module Dependency Table

The Module Dependency Table shows which modules are imported by the standard LIBRARY, IO, GRAPHICS, and SEGMENTER modules.

Module to Be Imported	Module(s) Upon Which It Depends
LIBRARY Modules:	
RND	SYSGLOBALS
HPM	—
UIO	—
LOCKMODULE	SYSGLOBALS
IO Modules:	
IODECLARATIONS	SYSGLOBALS
IOCOMASM	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS
GENERAL_0	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS
GENERAL_1	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS
GENERAL_2	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS, GENERAL_1, HPIB_1
GENERAL_3	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS
GENERAL_4	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS, HPIB_1
HPIB_0	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS
HPIB_1	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS
HPIB_2	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS, HPIB_0, HPIB_1
HPIB_3	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS, GENERAL_1, HPIB_0, HPIB_1
SERIAL_0	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS
SERIAL_3	SYSGLOBALS, IODECLARATIONS
GRAPHICS (and FGRAPHICS) Modules:	
DGL_LIB	ASM, IODECLARATIONS, SYSGLOBALS, MINI, ISR, MISC, FS, SYSDEVS, and all GRAPHICS modules <i>except</i> DGL_INQ and DGL_POLY
DGL_POLY	SYSGLOBALS, SYSDEVS, and all GRAPHICS modules <i>except</i> DGL_INQ
DGL_INQ	ASM, SYSGLOBALS, A804XDVR, DGL_TYPES, DGL_VARS, DGL_GEN, GLE_TYPES, GLE_GEN
SEGMENTER Modules:	
SEGMENTER	LOADER, LDR, SYSGLOBALS, MISC

I/O System Errors

These are the values found in the system variable IORESULT and the corresponding error message which the system prints out automatically for you.

0	No I/O error reported.
1	Parity (CRC) wrong. I/O driver will do several retries.
2	Illegal unit number - valid range is 1..50.
3	Illegal I/O request (e.g., read from printer).
4	Device timeout.
5	Volume went off-line.
6	File lost in directory.
7	Bad file name.
8	No room on volume.
9	Volume not found.
10	File not found.
11	Duplicate directory entry.
12	File already open.
13	File not open.
14	Bad input format.
15	Disc block out of range.
16	Device absent or inaccessible.
17	Media initialization failed.
18	Media is write-protected.
19	Unexpected interrupt.
20	Hardware/media failure.
21	Unrecognized error state.
22	DMA absent or unavailable.
23	File size not compatible with type.
24	File not opened for reading.
25	File not opened for writing.
26	File not opened for direct access.
27	No room in directory.
28	String subscript out of range.
29	Bad string parameter on close of file.
30	Attempt to read past end-of-file mark.
31	Media not initialized.
32	Block not found.
33	Device not ready or media absent.
34	Media absent.
35	No directory on volume.
36	File type illegal or does not match request.
37	Parameter illegal or out of range.
38	File cannot be extended.
39	Undefined operation for file.
40	File not lockable.
41	File already locked.
42	File not locked.
43	Directory not empty.
44	Too many files open on device.
45	Access to file not allowed.
46	Invalid password.
47	File is not a directory.
48	Operation not allowed on a directory.
49	Cannot create /WORKSTATIONS/TEMP_FILES.
50	Unrecognized SRM error.
51	Medium may have been changed.
52	File system corrupt.
53	File or file system too big.
54	No permission for requested action.
55	Driver cache full.
56	Driver configuration failed.
57	IORESULT was 57.

Graphics System Errors

When writing graphics programs, it will be helpful to enclose the main body of the program in a TRY block. In the RECOVER block, test the value of ESCAPECODE. If ESCAPECODE=-27, invoke a graphics function called GRAPHICSERROR. This will return a number which can be cross-referenced with the following list of error messages.

0	No errors since last call to GRAPHICSERROR or INIT_GRAPHICS.
1	Graphics system not initialized.
2	Graphics display is not enabled.
3	Locator device not enabled.
4	ECHO value requires a graphic display to be enabled.
5	Graphics system is already enabled.
6	Illegal aspect ratio specified.
7	Illegal parameters specified.
8	Parameters specified are outside physical display limits.
9	Parameters specified are outside limits of window.
10	Logical locator and logical display use same device.
11	Parameters specified are outside virtual coordinate system boundary.
12	Escape function requested not supported by display device.
13	Parameters specified are outside physical locator limits.

Loader/SEGMENTER Errors

Here is a list of errors that can be generated by the loader or by a program that uses the SEGMENTER module.

100..105	Field overflow trying to link or relocate something.
110	Circular or too deeply nested symbol definitions.
111	Improper link information format.
112	Not enough memory.
116	File was not a code file.
117	Not enough space in the explicit global area.
118	Incorrect version number.
-119/119	Unresolved external references.
120	Generated by the dummy procedure returned by FIND_PROC.
121	UNLOAD_SEGMENT called when there are no more segments to unload.
122	Not enough space in the explicit code area.

I/O Library Errors

These are the values and corresponding error messages that may develop when using the I/O library. A call to IOERROR_MESSAGE will generate the appropriate message.

0	No error.
1	No card at select code.
2	Interface should be HP-IB.
3	Not active controller/commands not supported.
4	Should be device address, not select code.
5	No space left in buffer.
6	No data left in buffer.
7	Improper transfer attempted.
8	The select code is busy.
9	The buffer is busy.
10	Improper transfer count.
11	Bad timeout value/timeout not supported.
12	No driver for this card.
13	No DMA.
14	Word operations not allowed.
15	Not addressed as talker/write not allowed.
16	Not addressed as listener/read not allowed.
17	A timeout has occurred/no device.
18	Not system controller.
19	Bad status or control.
20	Bad set/clear/test operation.
21	Interface card is dead.
22	End/eod has occurred.
23	Miscellaneous-value of parameter error.
306	Datacomm interface failure.
313	USART receive buffer overflow.
314	Receive buffer overflow.
315	Missing clock.
316	CTS false too long.
317	Lost carrier disconnect.
318	No activity disconnect.
319	Connection not established.
325	Bad data bits/parity combination.
326	Bad status/control register.
327	Control value out of range.

Operating System Runtime Error Messages

Errors detected by the operating system during the execution of a program generate one of the following error messages. The numbers correspond to the value of ESCAPECODE.

0	Normal termination.
-1	Abnormal termination.
-2	Not enough memory.
-3	Reference to NIL pointer.
-4	Integer overflow.
-5	Divide by zero.
-6	Real math overflow. The number was too large.
-7	Real math underflow. The number was too small.
-8	Value range error.
-9	Case value range error.
-10	Non-zero IORESULT. (See "I/O System Errors".)
-11	CPU word access to odd address.
-12	CPU bus error.
-13	Illegal CPU instruction.
-14	CPU privilege violation.
-15	Bad argument - SIN/COS.
-16	Bad argument - LN (natural log).
-17	Bad argument - SQRT (square root).
-18	Bad argument - real/BCD conversion.
-19	Bad argument - BCD/real conversion.
-20	Stopped by user.
-21	Unassigned CPU trap.
-22	Reserved.
-23	Reserved.
-24	Macro parameter not 0..9 or a..z.
-25	Undefined macro parameter.
-26	Non-zero IOE-RESULT. (See "I/O Library Errors".)
-27	Non-zero GRAPHICSERROR. (See "Graphics System Errors".)
-28	Parity error in memory.
-29	Miscellaneous hardware floating-point error.
-30	Bad argument - arcsine/arccosine. Argument > 1.
-31	Illegal real number.

VMELIBRARY Errors

When a VME error occurs while using the VME_DRIVER module procedures, you can determine which has occurred by using a TRY...RECOVER construct and calling the ESCAPECODE function in the RECOVER block.

800	Range error: select code <7 or >31.
801	Tried to access the HP VMEbus Interface using an odd Select Code.
802	Timeout error, the VMEbus System Controller does not grant the bus to the HP VMEbus Interface within the amount of seconds specified in the last "SET_TIMEOUT" call.
803	NumOfChar <0 or > declared size of 'Data' in VME_StrRead
	NumOfBytes <0 VME_BlockRead or VME_BlockWrite.
805	Odd NumOfBytes when using Transfer mode WordInc or WordFxd.
806	The VMEbus Interface Card is not an HP 98646A VMEbus Interface Card.

Pascal Compiler Syntax Errors

ANSI/ISO Pascal Errors

1	Erroneous declaration of simple type.
2	Expected an identifier.
4	Expected a right parenthesis "}".
5	Expected a colon ":".
6	Symbol is not valid in this context.
7	Error in parameter list.
8	Expected the keyword OF.
9	Expected a left parenthesis "(".
10	Erroneous type declaration.
11	Expected a left bracket "[".
12	Expected a right bracket "]".
13	Expected the keyword END.
14	Expected a semicolon ";".
15	Expected an integer.
16	Expected an equal sign "=".
17	Expected the keyword BEGIN.
18	Expected a digit following ".".
19	Error in field list of a record declaration.
20	Expected a comma ",".
21	Expected a period ".".
22	Expected a range specification symbol "..".
23	Expected an end-of-comment delimiter.
24	Expected a dollar sign "\$".
50	Error in constant specification.
51	Expected an assignment operator ":=".
52	Expected the keyword THEN.
53	Expected the keyword UNTIL.
54	Expected the keyword DO.
55	Expected the keyword TO or DOWNTO.
56	Variable expected.
58	Erroneous factor in expression.
59	Erroneous symbol following a variable.
98	Illegal character in source text.
99	End of source text reached before end of program.
100	End of program reached before end of source text.
101	Identifier was already declared.
102	Low bound greater than high bound in range of constants.
103	Identifier is not of the appropriate class.
104	Identifier was not declared.
105	Non-numeric expressions cannot be signed.
106	Expected a numeric constant here.
107	Endpoint values of range must be compatible and ordinal.
108	NIL may not be redeclared.
110	Tagfield type in a variant record is not ordinal.
111	Variant case label is not compatible with tagfield.
113	Array dimension type is not ordinal.
115	Set base type is not ordinal.
117	An unsatisfied forward reference remains.
121	Pass by value parameter cannot be type FILE.
123	Type of function result is missing from declaration.
125	Erroneous type of argument for built-in routine.
126	Number of arguments different from number of formal parameters.
127	Argument is not compatible with corresponding parameter.
129	Operands in expression are not compatible.
130	Second operand of IN is not a set.
131	Only equality tests (= and <>) allowed on this type.
132	Tests for strict inclusion (<< or >>) not allowed on sets.
133	Relational comparison not allowed on this type.
134	Operand(s) are not proper type for this operation.
135	Expression does not evaluate to a boolean result.
136	Set elements are not of ordinal type.
137	Set elements are not compatible with set base type.
138	Variable is not an ARRAY structure.
139	Array index is not compatible with declared subscript.
140	Variable is not a RECORD structure.
141	Variable is not a pointer or FILE structure.
142	Packing allowed only on last dimension of conformant array.
143	FOR loop control variable is not of ordinal type.
144	CASE selector is not of ordinal type.
145	Limit values not compatible with loop control variable.
147	Case label is not compatible with selector.
149	Array dimension is not bounded.
150	Illegal to assign value to built-in function identifier.
152	No field of that name in the pertinent record.
154	Illegal argument to match pass-by-reference parameter.
156	Case label has already been used.
158	Structure is not a variant record.
160	Previous declaration was not FORWARD.
163	Statement label not in range 0..9999.
164	Target of nonlocal GOTO not in outermost compound statement.
165	Statement label has already been used.
166	Statement label was already declared.
167	Statement label was not declared.
168	Undefined statement label.
169	Set base type is not bounded.
171	Parameter list conflicts with forward declaration.
177	Cannot assign value to function outside its body.
181	Function must contain assignment to function result.
182	Set element is not in range of set base type.
183	File has illegal element type.
184	File parameter must be of type TEXT.
185	Undeclared external file or no file parameter.
190	Attempt to use type identifier in its own declaration.
300	Division by zero.
301	Overflow in constant expression.
302	Index expression out of bounds.
303	Value out of range.
304	Element expression out of range.
400	Unable to open list file.
401	File or volume not found.
403-409	Compiler errors.

Compiler Options

600	Directive is not at beginning of the program.
601	Indentation too large for PAGEWIDTH.
602	Directive not valid in executable code.
604	Too many parameters to SEARCH.
605	Conditional compilation directives out of order.
606	Feature not in standard Pascal flagged by ANSI ON.
607	Feature only allowed when UCSD enabled.
608	INCLUDE exceeds maximum allowed depth of files.
609	Cannot access this INCLUDE file.
610	INCLUDE or IMPORT nesting too deep.
611	Error in accessing library file.
612	Language extension not enabled.
613	Imported module does not have interface text.
614	LINENUM must be in the range 0..65535.
620	Only first instance of routine may have ALIAS.
621	ALIAS not in procedure or function header.
646	Directive not allowed in EXPORT section.
647	Illegal file name.
648	Illegal operand in compiler directive.
649	Unrecognized compiler directive.

Implementation Restrictions

651	Reference to a standard routine that is not implemented.
652	Illegal assignment or CALL involving a standard procedure.
653	CONST, TYPE, VAR, or MODULE cannot follow routine.
655	Record or array constructor not allowed in executable statement.
657	Loop control variable must be local variable.
658	Sets are restricted to the ordinal range 0..8175 (default) or 0..261999 (max).
659	Cannot blank pad literal to more than 255 characters.
660	String constant cannot extend past text line.
661	Integer constant exceeds the range implemented.
662	Nesting level of identifier scopes exceeds maximum (20).
663	Nesting level of declared routines exceeds maximum (15).
665	CASE statement must have non-OTHERWISE clause.
667	Routine was already declared FORWARD.
668	FORWARD routine may not be EXTERNAL.
671	Procedure too long.
672	Structure is too large to be allocated.
673	File component size must be in range 1..32766.
674	Field in record constructor improper or missing.
676	Structured constant has been discarded (cf. SAVE_CONST).
677	Constant overflow.
678	Allowable string length is 1..255 characters.
679	Range of case labels too large.
680	Real constant has too many digits.
681	Real number not allowed.
682	Error in structured constant.
683	More than 32 767 bytes of data.
684	Expression too complex.
685	Variable in READ or WRITE list exceeds 32 767 bytes.
686	Field width parameter must be in range 0..255.
687	Cannot IMPORT module name in its EXPORT section.
688	Structured constant not allowed in FORWARD module.
689	Module name may not exceed 15 characters.
696	Array elements are not packed.
697	Array lower bound is too large.
698	File parameter required.
699	32-bit arithmetic overflow.

Non-ISO Language Features

701	Cannot dereference variable of type ANYPTR.
702	Cannot make an assignment to this type of variable.
704	Illegal use of module name.
705	Too many concrete modules.
706	Concrete or external instance required.
707	Variable is of type not allowed in variant records.
708	Integer following "#" is greater than 255.
709	Illegal character in a "#" string.
710	Illegal item in EXPORT section.
711	Expected the keyword IMPLEMENT.
712	Expected the keyword RECOVER.
714	Expected the keyword EXPORT.
715	Expected the keyword MODULE.
716	Structured constant has erroneous type.
717	Illegal item in IMPORT section.
718	CALL to other than a procedural variable.
719	Module already implemented (duplicate module).
720	Concrete module not allowed here.
730	Structured constant component incompatible with corresponding type.
731	Array constant has incorrect number of elements.
732	Length specification required.
733	Type identifier required.
750	Error in constant expression.
751	Function result type must be assignable.
900	Insufficient space to open code file.
901	Insufficient space to open REF file.
902	Insufficient space to open DEF file.
903	Error in opening code file.
904	Error in opening REF file.
905	Error in opening DEF file.
906	Code file full.
907	REF file full.
908	DEF file full.

Subject Index

a

Absolute locator	B1, B3, B30, B62, B64, B68, B84, B109
Acceleration, pen	3-6
Anisotropic scaling	1-10
Aspect ratio	2-2, 4-13
Aspect Ratio, setting	1-11
Attributes, color	5-1
AWAIT_LOCATOR procedure	4-9, B1, B3
Axes	1-20, 2-30
Axes, labelling	1-25
Axes, logarithmic	2-32
AxesGrid program	2-30, A2

b

Background value	5-24
BAR_KNOB program	4-1, A9
BAR_KNOB2 program	A12
Bold labels	1-19
Booting the Pascal system	1-7

c

Cartesian coordinates	1-6
Cell, character	2-11
Centering labels	1-17
Character cell	2-11
Character size, setting	1-16, 2-13
CharCell program	2-11, A17
CHARSIZE procedure	2-14, 2-18
Choosing the graphics display device	1-6
CLEAR_DISPLAY procedure	2-23, B10
CLIPDRAW procedure	1-25, 2-30
Clipping lines	1-23
Closed loop system	4-1
Color displays, external	3-4
COLOR program	5-9, A18
Color:	
Additional colors	5-20, 5-24, 5-25
Business	5-2
CMY Color Cube	5-13
Dithered colors	5-21, 5-24
Effective use of	5-36

2 Subject Index

Gamuts	5-40
Graphics	5-1
Hardcopy	5-40
HSL Color Cylinder	5-14
HSL model	5-5, 5-9
Hue	5-5
Luminosity	5-5
Map	5-25
Mixing	5-37
Model resolution	5-29
Models	5-4, 5-9
Objective use of	5-38
Primary	5-2
References	5-42
RGB Color Cube	5-12
RGB model	5-4, 5-9
Saturation	5-5
Seeing	5-36
Spaces	5-11
Subjective use of	5-38
Table	5-2
Vector	5-21
Compiling demonstration programs	1-4
Complementing lines	2-23, 5-31
Continuous degrees of freedom	4-7
Control value (DISPLAY_INIT)	1-7
ControlWord variable	1-7
Conversion between coordinate systems	2-8
ConvertVirtualToWorld program	2-9
ConvertWorldToVirtual program	2-10
CONVERT_WTODMM procedure	1-24, B11
CONVERT_WTOLMM procedure	B12
Coordinate systems, conversion between	2-8
Coordinates:	
Cartesian	1-6
Rectangular	1-6
Virtual	1-13
World	1-13, B11, B12
CRT drawing modes	2-23, 5-30
CRT, graphics	1-6
CrtAddr variable	1-7, 3-1
CsizeProg program	A25
Cube, Color	5-12
Cursor tracking	4-1
Customizing demo programs for your system	1-6
Cylinder, Color	5-14

d

Data-driven plotting	2-39
Datapoint function	1-6
DataPoint program	A26
Defining a viewport	1-13
Degrees of freedom:	
Continuous	4-7
Non-separable	4-7
Number of	4-3
Quality of	4-3
Quantizable	4-8
Separability of	4-7
Demonstration programs	1-4, 1-6
Device selector (DISPLAY_INIT)	1-6
DGLPRG disc	1-1
Direction, label	2-16
Direction of labels, setting	1-17
Display design	5-37
Display limits, setting	2-1
DISPLAY_FINISH procedure	B13
DISPLAY_INIT procedure	1-6, 3-1, B17
Displays, external color	3-4
Displays, turning on and off	2-7
DISPLAY_TERM procedure	B23
Dithered colors	5-24
Dithering	2-43, 5-20, 5-26
Dominant lines, drawing	2-23, 5-31
Drawing lines	1-7
Drawing modes, CRT	2-23, 5-30
DrawMdPrg program	2-24, A26
Dumping raster images	3-2

e

Echoes	B5
Echoes:	
Built-in	4-9
Rubber	4-12
Erasing lines	2-23, 5-31
External color displays	3-4
External plotter control	3-5

4 Subject Index

f

Fast drawing procedures	2-24
Feedback	4-1
FillGraph program	2-46, A30
Filling, polygon	2-43
FillProg program	2-44, A29
Force, pen	3-6
Frame buffer	5-17, 5-24, 5-32
Frame, window	2-5
Freedom, degrees of	4-4

g

Gamuts, color	5-40
GLOAD procedure	2-36
Graphics display device, selecting	1-6
Graphics dump	3-2
Graphics, interactive	4-1
GRAPHICS key	2-7
GRAPHICS Library, using	1-4
Graphics memory address	2-37
Graphics memory size	2-37
Graphics procedure quick reference	B1
Graphics tablet	4-13
GRAPHICSERROR procedure	B24
GRAPHICS_INIT procedure	1-9, B26
GRAPHICS_TERM procedure	1-9, B27
GRID procedure	2-32
Grids	2-30
GSTORE procedure	2-36, 3-3
GstorProg program	A31
GTEXT procedure	1-15, 2-18, B28

h

Halftoning	5-20
Hardcopy, color	5-40
Highlighting data curves	2-47
HP 98627A RGB interface	3-4
HP-HIL	B1
HP-HIL absolute locator	B3, B30, B62, B64, B68, B84, B109
HP-HIL digitizing	4-1
HP-HIL port	B1
HP-HIL relative locator	B2, B7, B33, B63, B70, B85, B111
HP9000 362/382 display	5-18
HP98542 display	5-18
HP98543 display	5-18
HP98544 display	5-18
HP98545 display	5-18

HP98546A	1-12
HP98547A display	5-18
HP98548A display	5-18
HP98549A display	5-18
HP98550A display	5-18
HP98700 display	5-18
HSL color model	5-5, 5-9, 5-29
Hue	5-5

i

Images, dumping	3-2
Images, storing and retrieving	2-36
INCLUDE files	1-5, 1-7
Input device selection	4-4
Input pixel	B2
INPUT_ESC procedure	B1, B30
INQ_COLOR_TABLE procedure	B34
INQ_PGN_TABLE procedure	B36
INQ_WS procedure	1-13, 2-2, B38
Interactive graphics	4-1
INT_LINE procedure	2-24, B45
INT_MOVE procedure	2-24, B47
INT_POLYGON procedure	B49
INT_POLYGON_DD procedure	B52
INT_POLYLINE procedure	B56
IsoProg program	2-28, A40
Isotropic scaling	1-10, 2-27

j

Justifying labels	2-18
JustProg program	2-21, A46

k

KEYBOARD file	4-4
---------------------	-----

l

Label direction, setting	2-16
LABELJUSTIFY procedure	2-18
Labelling a plot	2-11
Labelling Axes	1-25
Labels, justifying	2-18
Labels:	
Bold	1-19
Centering	1-17
Direction of	1-17
LdirProg program	2-17, A50

6 Subject Index

LEM programs	2-44, 2-41
Limits, display	2-1
LINE	B58
Line drawing	1-7
LINE procedure	1-8, 1-32
Line Styles, selecting	2-25
Line value	5-24
Lines, clipping	1-23
Loading Pascal system	1-7
Locator	B1
LOCATOR program	4-9, A51
LOCATOR_INIT procedure	B1, B59
Locators	B3, B7
LOCATOR_TERM procedure	B1, B64
Logarithmic plotting	2-32
LogPlot program	2-34, A54
LT instruction	2-25
Luminosity	5-5

m

MAKE_PIC_CURRENT procedure	B65
Map, color	5-25
MARKER procedure	2-47, B66
MarkrProg program	2-48, A56
Memory address, graphics	2-37
Memory size, graphics	2-37
Models, color	5-4, 5-9
Modes, drawing	2-23
Module Dependency Table	B131
Monochromatic defaults in color table	5-3
MOVE procedure	1-8, B67
Multi-line objects	2-40

n

Non-separable degrees of freedom	4-7
Non-square pixels	5-19

o

OUTPUT_ESC procedure	2-7, 3-2, B1, B68
----------------------	-------------------

p

Pascal system, loading	1-7
Pen acceleration, controlling	3-6
Pen force, controlling	3-6
Pen speed, controlling	3-5
Permanent command	1-4
Photographing the CRT	5-41

Pixel	1-11, 2-43
Pixel pairs	5-19
PLineProg program	2-39, A57
Plot Labelling	2-11
Plotter control	3-5
Plotter, selecting a	3-1
Plotters	5-16
Plotting and the CRT	5-41
Polygon filling	2-43
Polygon interiors	5-24
POLYGON procedure	2-40, B75
POLYGON_DEV_DEP procedure	2-42, B78
Polygons	5-35
POLYLINE procedure	2-39, B82
PolyProg program	2-41, A58

q

Quantizable degrees of freedom	4-8
Quick reference for graphics procedures	B1

r

Raster images, dumping	3-2
Ratio, aspect	2-2, 4-13
Rectangular coordinates	1-6
References, color	5-42
Relative locator	B3, B7, B33, B63, B70, B85, B111
Resolution of color models	5-29
Retrieving and storing images	2-36
RGB color model	5-4, 5-9, 5-29
RGB interface	3-4
Rotation, label	2-16
Rotation of labels	1-17
Rubber echoes	4-12
Running demonstration programs	1-4

s

SAMPLE_LOCATOR procedure	B1, B84
Saturation	5-5
Scaling	1-9
Scaling, isotropic	2-27
Screen dump	3-2
Selecting graphics display device	1-6
Separability (degrees of freedom)	4-7
Separable degrees of freedom	4-7
SET_ASPECT procedure	1-11, 2-1, B86
SET_CHAR_SIZE procedure	1-16, 2-12, B88
SET_COLOR procedure	5-1, B89

8 Subject Index

SET_COLOR_MODEL procedure	5-3, B92
SET_COLOR_TABLE procedure	2-23, 5-3, B94
SET_DISPLAY_LIM procedure	1-24, 2-1, B98
SET_ECHO procedure	4-13
SET_ECHO_POS procedure	B102
SET_LINE_STYLE procedure	2-25, B104
SET_LINE_WIDTH procedure	B108
SET_LOCATOR_LIM procedure	4-13, B1, B109
SET_PGN_COLOR procedure	5-1, B113
SET_PGN_LS procedure	B116
SET_PGN_STYLE procedure	2-43, B120
SET_PGN_TABLE procedure	B121
SET_TEXT_ROT procedure	1-17, 2-16, B124
SET_TIMING procedure	B125
SET_VIEWPORT procedure	1-14, 2-2, B127
SET_WINDOW procedure	1-9, 2-2, B129
Shading graphs	2-46
SinAspect program	1-12, A59
SinAxes1 program	1-22, A60
SinAxes2 program	1-26, A64
SinClip program	1-24, A69
SinLabel1 program	1-15, A73
SinLabel2 program	1-16, A74
SinLabel3 program	1-19, A75
SinLine program	1-8, A76
SinViewpt program	A76
SinWindow program	1-10, A77
Solution vector	5-21
Speed, pen	3-6
Storing and retrieving images	2-36
STRLEN procedure	1-17
STRWRITE procedure	1-25
System Library	1-4

t

Tablets	B1
Target vector	5-21
Test program	4-4, 4-9
Text	5-35
Text, writing on graphics screen	1-15
Tick marks	1-20, 2-30
Touchscreen	B1, B2
Tracking the stylus	4-1

V

Vector, color	5-21
Viewport, Defining	1-13
Viewport, defining	2-2
Virtual coordinates	1-13
Vision, color	5-36

W

What command	1-4
Window frame, drawing	2-5
Window limits, calculating	2-3
World coordinates	1-13, B11, B12
WRITELN procedure	1-25
Writing modes	5-30
Writing text on graphics screen	1-15

10 Subject Index

READER COMMENT CARD
Pascal 3.2 Graphics Techniques
Manual Part Number 98615-90037 December 1991

Please use this Reader Comment Card to evaluate this document and tell us of problems or suggest improvements. **SERIOUS ERRORS** rendering a product or device inoperative should be entered in STARS (Software Tracking and Reporting System) by the HP Response Center or your Support Engineer.

Please rate the quality of each item below in terms of your expectations:

	Far Below Expectations	Below Expectations	Meets Expectations	Exceeds Expectations	Far Exceeds Expectations
Retrievability:	1	2	3	4	5
Manual Title:	1	2	3	4	5
Table of Contents:	1	2	3	4	5
Tabs:	1	2	3	4	5
Headings in Chapters:	1	2	3	4	5
Cross-References:	1	2	3	4	5
Task References:	1	2	3	4	5
Index:	1	2	3	4	5
Organization:	1	2	3	4	5
Completeness:	1	2	3	4	5
Accuracy:	1	2	3	4	5
Readability:	1	2	3	4	5
Language Usage:	1	2	3	4	5
Layout:	1	2	3	4	5

Recommended improvements (attach additional information if needed):

Name: _____ Company: _____
 Job Title: _____ Address: _____
 Phone: _____

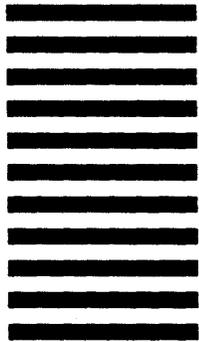
Please enter the series number of your HP 9000 system, e.g. 700 or 800:

Hewlett-Packard has the right to use submitted suggestions without obligation, with all such ideas becoming property of Hewlett-Packard.



NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 37 LOVELAND, COLORADO



POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

Hewlett-Packard Company
Attn: Learning Products Center
3404 East Harmony Road
Fort Collins, Colorado 80525-9988



Manual Part No.
98615-90037

Copyright © 1991
Hewlett-Packard Company
Printed in USA 12/91